

THE ARDEN SHAKESPEARE  
GENERAL EDITOR: W. J. CRAIG  
1899-1906: R. H. CASE, 1909

THE TRAGEDY  
OF  
KING RICHARD THE THIRD



THE WORKS  
OF  
SHAKESPEARE

THE TRAGEDY OF  
KING RICHARD THE THIRD

EDITED BY  
A. HAMILTON THOMPSON

METHUEN AND CO. LTD.  
36 ESSEX STREET STRAND  
LONDON

*Third Edition*

*First Published*  
*Second Edition*  
*Third Edition*

*August 22nd 1907*  
*August 1917*  
*1918*

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	VII
THE TRAGEDY OF KING RICHARD THE THIRD	7
APPENDIX I.	211
APPENDIX II	213
APPENDIX III	215
APPENDIX IV	220



## INTRODUCTION

SIX quarto editions of *The Life and Death of Richard III* were published before the appearance of the folio of 1623. The title of the first quarto is THE TRAGEDY OF | King Richard the third | Containing, | His treacherous Plots against his brother Clarence | the pittiefull murder of his innocent nephewes | his tyrannicall vsurpation with the whole course | of his detested life, and most deserued death | As it hath beene lately Acted by the | Right honourable the Lord Chamber- | laine his seruants | AT LONDON | [Pri]nted by Valentine Sims, for Andrew Wise, | dwelling in Paules Chuch-yard [sic], at the | Signe of the Angell | 1597

In the title of the second quarto (1598), printed for Wise by Thomas Creede, the words "By William Shake-speare" occupy a new line after "seruants". The fourth, fifth, and sixth quartos also spell the author's name with a hyphen. The third quarto (1602), also printed by Creede, gives it as "Shakespeare," and adds, in a line above, the words "Newly augmented" followed by a comma, which appear in the titles of the remaining quartos. The fourth (1605) and the fifth (1612) were printed by Creede for "Mathew Lawe, dwelling in Paules Church-yard, at the Signe of the Foxe, neare S. Austin's Gate". The title of the fifth alters the title of the actors to "the Kings Maesties seruants". As the licence by virtue of which the Lord Chamberlain's players became the King's bears date 19 May, 1603, this alteration probably should have appeared in the previous quarto. It occurs in the rest. The sixth quarto (1622) was printed for Law by Thomas Purfoot, the seventh (1629) and eighth (1634) by John Norton.

The title of the play in the first folio (1623) is The

Tragedy of Richard the Third | with the Landing of Earle Richmond, and the | Battell at Bosworth Field The pages are headed *The Life and Death of Richard the Thirde* The play is divided into acts and scenes The fourth scene of Act III includes scenes IV-VII as at present arranged In Act IV there are four scenes instead of five, scenes II and III being treated as one The second scene of Act V embraces scenes II-V of the modern editions

While the quarto editions present many internal variations, they form one text of the play which was derived originally from Q 1, and in the remaining editions underwent steady degeneration Q 1 is the basis of the text of Q 2, Q 2 supplies a basis for Q 3, and transmits to it, as a general rule, its own characteristic errors and variations The rest of the quartos, with one possible exception, follow the same plan of reprinting the most recent edition, so that, in each, the accumulation of printer's errors and alterations grows The Cambridge editors hold that Q 5 was printed, not from Q 4, but from Q 3 For the present edition a minute examination has been made of Qq 1-4 and Q 6, but for Q 5 the editor has relied upon the Cambridge collation But his impression is that of Mr P A Daniel, who thinks that the Cambridge collation "suggests that Q 5 was printed from a copy made up of Q 3 and Q 4." It is sufficient to refer to the first scene of the play, where, at lines 8, 14, 39, 48, 71, the debt of Q 5 to the errors of Q 4 is perfectly manifest Very probably, as the play advanced, the printer realised that he had been guilty of heinous mistakes in Q 4, and, to avoid them, consulted the copy which in 1602 he had printed for another bookseller He may have referred, as at I 1 65, to Q 2, which he also had printed, to correct an error shared by Q 3 and Q 4 But the assumption that Q 5 was not, in the first place, printed from Q 4, involves a number of undesigned coincidences in error between the two editions, which are quite improbable

A point of greater textual importance is the statement, in Q 3 and its successors, that the play had been "newly augmented." The possible bearing of these words on its authorship will be discussed later As a matter of fact, the text received no

augmentation in the later quartos Q 3 is indeed responsible for numerous variations from its predecessors many of these, where they happen to agree with readings in the folios, have taken their place in both the established versions of the text, and it has been a very general opinion that Q 3 was used as one of the authorities for the first folio But, even if we allow the highest importance to these readings, they cannot be described as "augmentations" It seems unjust to conclude that the printer wished to attract fresh customers by false pretences Nor have we any evidence that the author, having guaranteed some additions, failed to make good his promise, and that the title-page, printed in anticipation of the fulfilment of that promise, could not be cancelled The most probable sense which the words can be made to bear is, that the Q text in all its forms is an augmentation of some earlier play, and that these words should have appeared on the title-pages of Q 1 and Q 2, as well as of the later quartos

The F text, which is common to all the folios, leaves the general form of the play unaltered, but the variations from the Q text which it contains are so many and important, that the question of its derivation and independent value becomes a most intricate problem The discrepancies between F and Q (as it is convenient, for the sake of brevity, to call the two versions of which F 1 and Q 1 are the original forms) may be summed up under the following general heads —

- (1) Lines or passages peculiar to F,
- (2) Lines or passages peculiar to Q,
- (3) Variations in lines, phrases, or single words, pointing to a possible revision of one version by the other,
- (4) Variations in stage-directions.

The problem which these points raise is concerned with the priority of the texts Is F a revised and lengthened form of Q, or is Q a revised and shortened form of F? Or, supposing them to be independent revisions of a common original, which should we prefer as the basis for a modern text of the play?

(1) There are in F about 196 lines of ordinary length, 15 short lines, and 17 half-lines or parts of lines, which are additions to the text as represented by Q In some cases the omission

of these passages from Q can be accounted for quite simply, *e.g.* at I iv 36, 37, where the first printer of Q evidently has united the beginning of one line to the end of the next, by a careless, but quite intelligible mistake, which the printer of F has not made. But there are many passages which, if they existed in the original text, cannot have been overlooked accidentally by the original editor or printer of Q. At I ii 155-66, II ii. 89-100, III vii 144-53, IV i 97-103, IV iv 222-35, the F additions are of some length and importance, while at IV iv 291-345 the new matter amounts to 55 lines. It is obvious that, at the first appearance of Q in 1597, these passages either did not exist, or were omitted deliberately by the editor. In the first case, they must be later additions, forming part of a revision the result of which was F, in the second case, they must have formed part of the original text, and, as such, establish a claim for F to represent the play as written by the author.

(2) On the other hand, Q contains twenty-three ordinary and nineteen short lines which are not to be found in F. Of these, fourteen ordinary and four short lines occur in a single passage, *viz.* IV ii 98-115. When this is deducted from the rest, the matter peculiar to Q is seen to be inconsiderable. Either the editor of F omitted these lines, in some cases wilfully, in others perhaps accidentally, or he had access to a text of the play which supplied the authority for their omission. That text, it is clear, either was revised by Q, or was itself a revision of Q. On the first supposition, these additions are easily explained. On the second, it is hard to see on what principle the reviser, while adding so much, cut out so little, and that little so unimportant, while it is impossible to account for his omission of the one important passage in IV ii.

(3) The numerous minor differences between Q and F are recorded in the collation which accompanies this text. No attempt at their classification can be wholly satisfactory. In general, they are variations on words and phrases, and indicate that a very minute revision has been exercised, either on Q by the editor of F, or by the editor of Q on the text of which F is representative. Certain systematic differences may be noticed. For "which" in Q, we usually find "that" in F.

Where Q has "betwixt," F has "between" In F we find greater metrical consistency throughout lines which, in Q, are irregular or hypermetric, become smooth and regular The passage at I iv 84-159, which is printed by Q in a kind of spurious verse, is arranged in F as prose F also avoids repetitions, which occur in Q, of the same word in a few lines, or transposes words from their arrangement in Q The student who compares the two texts for himself can hardly fail to recognise that, in point of regularity and order, the balance is in favour of F

(4) The stage-directions in F are fuller and more perfect than those in Q Certain minor parts appear in F, which Q either neglects or partly suppresses The result is a gain in clearness to F, although, in one case, the duplication of the part of Brakenbury in I iv by that of the Keeper, the alteration seems unnecessary It is of course possible that the addition of entrances, exits, and other more minute directions may be entirely due to the editor of F, and the utmost that they can be made to prove is his zeal for accuracy and definiteness

From the dates of publication, it is obvious that F, as a *printed* text, is later than Q Probably it was never edited for the press until a little before its appearance in 1623 Appearing at that time, it is probably a revision, to a certain extent, of Q, the hitherto accepted text of the play There are three main possibilities with regard to the genesis of this revision It may have been the arbitrary work of the editor It may have been derived from an original source which was either inaccessible to the editor of Q, or was used by him with arbitrary alterations Or, thirdly, it may represent a personal revision of the text by the author, after the appearance of the play on the stage and the publication of Q 1

This third view is substantially the view taken by Pope and Johnson It involves the existence in 1623 of a MS of the play, or, at least, an annotated copy of one of the quartos, containing the author's final alterations of his original text, with additions and a few excisions It seems certain, if this corrected text existed, that the editor of F compared it with Q The result would be a text which, depending for the most part on

this conjectural document, would accept here and there a reading of *Q* whose origin is probably to be found in the later quartos. Oversights on the part of the editor, and mistakes on the part of the printer, must be allowed for in this as in all other theories.

Many editors, in more recent times, have taken the clearly defined view that *Q* is a revision, for dramatic purposes, of an original text represented by *F*. Howard Staunton regarded the long passages peculiar to *F* as deliberately omitted "to accelerate action," and to "afford space for the more lively and dramatic substitutions which are met with in the quartos alone." For the first of these statements there is much to be said: the omission of such passages as those in *IV iv* for this purpose, is more credible than their subsequent addition for no apparent purpose at all. But the presence of those substitutions which Staunton praised is very questionable. As we have seen, the additions in *Q* are, with one exception, insignificant and immaterial.

The authority of *Q* was asserted on other grounds by the Cambridge editors. In their view both *Q* and *F* are of Shakespearean origin. Of the author's original MS, which they called *A 1*, a transcript (*B 1*) was made for the theatre library, and from this transcript, with its accidental faults and omissions, *Q 1* was printed. However, at some unspecified time, the author undertook a complete revision of the play, correcting the original MS with marginal notes and interlineations, and adding new matter here and there on inserted leaves. At some time, probably after the author's death, this corrected MS. (*A 2*) was taken in hand by a transcriber, whose copy of it (*B 2*) was intended probably to take the place of *B 1*, now worn and tattered, in the theatre library. To judge from the internal evidence of *F 1*, which was printed from this new transcript, the transcriber "worked in the spirit, though not with the audacity, of Colley Cibber," altering words, even where it was unnecessary, to avoid their recurrence, or to correct a supposed metrical defect, or now and then modifying a word that, in the course of time, was become obsolete. The editor of *F 1*, therefore, in addition to some unique Shakespearean matter, accepted much that is

non-Shakespearean It follows that the Cambridge editors, while admitting all the additions (two lines excepted) which are peculiar to F, took Q 1 as the basis of their text

The cardinal point of the Cambridge theory is the existence of the lawless transcriber In 1872, Delius, writing in the *Jahrbuch* of the German Shakespeare Society, brought forward his theory that Q 1 was nothing more than a pirated edition of the play, in which an unknown editor mangled the original text at his own discretion Delius' contempt for this "poetaster" surpassed in measure the Cambridge editors' allusions to their "nameless transcriber" For his theory there is one strong argument, to be derived from the preface to F 1 His hypothesis makes good the editors' statement that they were restoring the plays "cur'd, and perfect of their limbes, and absolute in their numbers," to a public that hitherto had been "abus'd with diuerse stolne, and surreptitious copies"

Spedding's exhaustive paper, read before the New Shakespeare Society in 1875, maintained the case for F against the Cambridge editors The most interesting part of his argument is his enumeration of alterations in F which, in his judgment, could not have been made by the author, but were due, for the most part, to editorial and press misunderstandings of marginal corrections, etc., in the MS from which F 1 was prepared In a detailed criticism of Spedding's paper, Mr E H Pickersgill supported the main contentions of the Cambridge editors He definitely regarded the author's final version of his MS as anterior to the publication of Q 1, which was founded on the actors' copy of the play, omitting the long passages, afterwards inserted in F, for the sake of shortening the dramatic representation He admitted the presence of a number of blunders in Q, which were afterwards corrected or avoided in F But the "nameless transcriber" was still made responsible for much tampering with the text The theory advanced by Koppel, in his *Textkritische Studien über Shakespeare's Richard III* (1877), is similar in detail to Pickersgill's, but does not adopt the conclusion as to the "nameless transcriber"

The exceptional scholarship and judgment of the Cambridge editors gives much weight to their elaborate theory But very

few students of the two texts, even while admitting the traces of a corrector's hand in F, will agree with their low estimate of his skill. His text is more smooth and regular, but very seldom is it noticeably less vigorous on that account. Where single words differ, there is generally nothing to choose between the texts. No one has put down the additions in F to the credit of a corrector other than the author himself. As to the omissions in F, when we have deducted the long passage in IV ii., the rest are of so little importance that it is impossible to discover the grounds on which Staunton characterised them as "terse and vigorous bits of dialogue." And, after a careful and prolonged study of the texts, the present editor, while giving full weight to the editor or editors' and printer's responsibility for errors in F, is unable to distinguish its debt to a "nameless transcriber" from that which it may owe to the author's original version of the play. In short, he sees nothing in F which precludes it from consideration as a return, in the main faithful and accurate, to the author's own text, containing passages that had been omitted in Q, and superseding Q as a trustworthy and definite version of the play. On the other hand, the source of Q seems to him to be the stage version of the play, shortened at certain points from the original text, and garnished here and there with a line which breaks up the dialogue or illustrates the action of the play more fully. It is possible, too, that the editor of Q revised his text by comparing it with a performance of the play on the stage, or with his reminiscences of such a performance, for several of his readings are best explained as slips of memory or free interpolations on the part of an actor. When the editors of F I charged themselves with curing and perfecting the received text, they doubtless compared one or more editions of Q with a MS—either the original or a careful transcript—of the play as originally written.

Mr. P. A. Daniel, in his preface to Mr. Griggs' facsimile of Q I, has given an explanation of this process which sets the whole matter in a very clear light. He believes F to represent the author's text of the play. Q to be a shortened and revised copy of that text. The editor of F carefully revised the text

of one of the quartos by the original MS, and sent the corrected volume, with his deletions, interlineations, and marginal additions, to the printer. Comparing F 1 with the quartos, Mr Daniel finds that, for two doubtful readings shared by it with Q 1, and for one shared with each of the editions Q 3, Q 4, and Q 5, nine, at least, are shared with Q 6. These nine may be increased to twelve, by adding three probable cases. It is thus probable that Q 6 was the copy corrected by the editor of F, who overlooked a few words or wrong letters. The printer took over this copy, and brought F into being, with a certain number of errors and misunderstandings due to the crowded state of the revised page.

To almost every case of difficulty which meets the textual student, Mr Daniel's hypothesis may be applied with a more than plausible result, and, in the text which the present editor has followed, he has endeavoured to act on the principles laid down by Mr Daniel as a corollary to his proposition. At the same time, in examining the several variations between the texts, the editor has tested them by the other theories that have been put forward for their solution. While founding his text on F, he has accepted such readings from Q as seem to him to be deliberate improvements, and at II 1 66-8 and II iv 1, 2, both highly debateable passages, he has ventured to retain the Q readings which have been rejected, on grounds which appear to him not sufficiently strong, by many editors.

Special instances will be found fully treated in the notes which supplement the text. One point, however, calls for further mention. The collation shows that, for the first 150 lines or so of III 1, and from about v iii 80 to the end of the play, the editor of F 1 found little to alter in his copy of Q. Where he made alterations, it is highly probable that he made them on his own responsibility. Reference to Q 1 or Q 2 at these passages shows us several times that, where the latter quartos are wrong, the earlier contain a satisfactory reading, which, we cannot doubt, he would have adopted had he possessed authority to guide him. The inference is that his MS was wanting at these points, and that he had to depend on a later quarto and his own instinct. Again, in I 1, where

the variations between the texts are very few, the readings of the earlier quartos in several cases have a weight that cannot be attributed to F. A case in point is I 1 65, where F reads "That tempts him to this harsh Extremity." This is an obvious correction of a reading common to Qq 2, 5, and 6, "That tempts him to this extreamitie." We might assume, as we can assume in most cases, that the editor of F 1 found the omitted word "harsh" in the original MS, and inserted it accordingly. But, in Q 1, we find a better and more satisfactory reading, "That tempers him to this extremity," which needs no alteration. It seems likely that, in the MS from which Q 1 was derived, "tempers" was written in its abbreviated form "temps," and that Q 2, not noticing the abbreviation, took the word from the same MS as "tempts." Q 3 likewise used the MS, and printed it "temps," without regard to sense. In Q 5, this meaningless word was altered to the more obvious "tempts," and so F 1 found it printed in Q 6. Nothing is more likely than that the opening pages of the authentic MS. were torn or illegible from use and the lapse of time. Finding no help here, the editor emended the metre of the line by inserting the word "harsh." To judge from the reading, the early leaves of the MS. were wanting or illegible in part, while the closing leaves, and a leaf or two in the middle, were totally illegible or had perished. There has been a very general opinion that, in passages where original authority was wanting, the editor of F 1 resorted to a copy of Q 3. This may have been the case, but there is no circumstance which tends to show that, to his copy of Q 6, he added in these instances anything more than a talent for cautious emendation.

*Richard III*, dramatically as well as historically, is a sequel to the three parts of *Henry VI*, in which Shakespeare's share is generally admitted to have been that of a reviser. The question naturally arises whether Shakespeare was the author of *Richard III*, or merely the editor and reviser of a sequel to those plays on which he had been engaged previously. Mr. Daniel holds that the play was really the work of the author or authors of the *Henry VI*. plays, and was revised by Shakespeare. Mr. Fleay looks upon it as a Shakespearcan recension

and completion of an unfinished play by Marlowe, so thorough that any distinction between the original text and the revision is impossible. The only considerations on which an answer can be founded depend upon the style and date of the drama.

(1) The evidence of style places *Richard III*, beyond all doubt, among Shakespeare's earliest plays. Apart from the ordinary metrical tests, which, applied whether to Q or F, do not differ materially in the result, the verse has everywhere that rhetorical accent with which Marlowe had stamped the language of the stage. The spirit of the verse is in keeping with its accent. No passage can be singled out as an example of that vein of reflective sentiment which, at a not much later date, Shakespeare expressed with so great a command of imagery. The most striking passages, Clarence's account of his dream in I iv, and Tyrrel's narrative of the murder of the princes in IV iii, are little more than evenly written pieces of description,\* with a certain amount of smooth eloquence and picturesque colour. Richard's soliloquies in I i and I ii are clearly the work of the hand which was responsible for his soliloquies in 3 *Henry VI* III ii and v vi. He declares his aims in the vigorous rhythm which Marlowe makes his heroes use, explicit in sense and full of sound. These speeches, indeed, might have been written by Marlowe in a restrained mood, in which his habitual rhetoric was sobered by a consciousness of his dramatic purpose. If the programme which they reveal is outrageous, their actual words are free from the grotesqueness with which Marlowe's Barabas relates his iniquities, and from the extravagance of the wildly poetic "lunes" of Tamburlaine. On the other hand, they have not that depth of living passion which Marlowe sounds in Tamburlaine's rhapsody on Divine Zenocrate, or in the last soliloquy of Faustus. And, as a matter of fact, where Marlowe worked, as in *Edward II*, with greater self-restraint, his style has not much in common with that of *Richard III*. The classical allusions, which fill *Edward II*, and are very noticeable in the *Henry VI* plays, are nearly absent from *Richard III*. The formal tragic style of such a passage as the lamentation of the women in *Richard III* IV iv, has a stateliness which we miss in *Edward II*.

but it has not that lyric fervour which give certain passages of *Edward II* a pathos that redeems their crudeness. It is conceivable, in short, that Marlowe may have written much of *Richard III*, but we have nothing from his hand which goes to prove that he must have had a part in it. It may be said that the style of the play is a distinct advance on the style of *Titus Andronicus*, which is closely akin to the style of Marlowe's most literal imitators. The individual quality of its rhetoric has been trained by previous work on the *Henry VI.* plays, while probably the congeniality of a tragic figure like Richard to a taste founded on Marlowe's models has given an opportunity for the independent expression of that quality. Any tendency to exaggeration is softened by an increasing sense of the relation between the dramatist's art and life itself. If we allow Shakespeare to have had any part in the play, then *Richard III*, whatever may be its debt to older material, shows witness of his hand, at a time when he has reached the stage of untrammelled expression of his meaning, but is still partly dependent on his models for the form that his work takes, and has yet to handle the highest gifts of poetry. The declamatory vigour of *Richard III* gathers fresh life in the complaints of Constance and the ecstasies of Romeo and Juliet. Its echo is still audible in the balanced melody of the plays of Shakespeare's middle life. And, tame as it is in comparison, it is the first sign of the possibility of that eloquence, compact of fire and air, and pregnant with "immortal longings," which is the case for the huge spirits of his great tragedies.

(2) In date, then, *Richard III* probably follows immediately upon the third part of *Henry VI*. No allusion exists to settle the year in which the play was first produced. John Weever's epigram to "home-tong'd Shakespeare," which selects the poems of 1593-4 and the characters of Romeo and Richard for praise, was not published till 1599. It may have been written, as has been conjectured, as early as 1595, but this cannot be proved. All that can be said is that Weever probably chose the names of Romeo and Richard for mention, on account of their popularity on the stage. A book of *Epigrammes and*

*Elegies* by J D and C M, first published about 1596, contains lines which were probably imitated from Richard's opening soliloquy on his want of polite accomplishments —

I am not fashion'd for these amorous times,  
To court thy beauty with lascivious rhymes,  
I cannot dally, caper, dance, and sing,  
Oblige my saint with supple sonnetting

Collier found, in *The Rising to the Crown of Richard the Third*, appended to Giles Fletcher's *Licia* (1593), evidence that Richard had not yet appeared as a hero on the stage, when the poem was written. Fletcher makes Richard complain of "the Poets of this Age,

Like silly boats in Shallow rivers tost,  
Losing their pains, and lacking still their wage,  
To write of Women, and of Women's falls "

But the dramatists of 1593 could not be charged with exclusive attention to female misfortune. And if the third part of *Henry VI* had appeared before September, 1592, as is probable from the famous allusion in Greene's *Groat's-worth of Wit*, *Richard III*, in which the strong outlines of the character of Gloucester are developed directly from the earlier play, must have followed soon after, probably in the course of 1593. It is the most natural thing to conclude that Shakespeare, having revised the plays which dealt with the tragedy of the house of Lancaster, and having set his own mark on the revision, with increasing certainty of touch as the work proceeded, should continue the series, whether as author or reviser, to the culminating tragedy in which the house of York pays the penalty of its vengeance, and the destroyer of his own family is himself exterminated. And naturally, again, when *Richard III* had proved a success on the stage, the dramatist would see what could be done with the original events that were the prime cause of all these sorrows, and so undertook the tragedy of *Richard II*. The relative chronology of *Richard III* and *Richard II* is an unsettled question, it is true, but it is difficult to disprove the patent fact that *Richard II* shows just that degree of advance on *Richard III* in poetic, if not in

metrical and dramatic skill, which we might expect. There is nothing in *Richard III* which can compare, on grounds of poetry, with the dialogue between John of Gaunt and Bolingbroke in *Richard II* I iii 275-303, Gaunt's dying speech (II i 31-68), the King's reflections (III ii 144-77, III iii 143-75), or York's description of Richard's captive entry into London (V ii 7-40). In these passages the rhetoric of *Richard III* has lost self-consciousness and has acquired fresh grace. If the date of *Richard II* is not later than 1594, as is generally acknowledged, it may be assumed that *Richard III* was Shakespeare's chief work of 1593.

May it be taken, then, as Shakespeare's own unaided work? His authorship of the play cannot be denied positively. We have no traces of any play on which he could have exercised his revision—not even of any play from which the text that he revised, like that of *Henry VI*, could have been derived. The comparative evenness of the style shows that the revision, if revision it was, was performed with great skill. There is a concentration and liveliness in the action, which are less noticeable in such hurried chronicles of events as the three parts of *Henry VI*. The occasional humour of the *Henry VI* plays is certainly almost wanting in *Richard III*, but they are far surpassed by *Richard III* in point of dramatic irony. Certain weaknesses which may be detected here and there—for example, Richard's soliloquy on waking from his dreams, in V iii.—may be explained by the probability that Shakespeare was attempting more than a young dramatist might be expected to achieve on his own account. Such points of style as the abandonment of classical similes favour the supposition that the reviser of the earlier plays was now working as an independent author. The theory that the origin of *Richard III* was similar to that of the three parts of *Henry VI* is attractive and not improbable. But, on the other hand, if we recognise that there is such a thing in Shakespeare's work as a current of development and improvement, we cannot surrender whatever seems feeble or commonplace in it to other authors, unless probability is supported by something stronger than itself. *Richard III.*, inferior though it is to Shakespeare's more mature writings, is nevertheless far

from being feeble or commonplace. On the contrary, it is conspicuous, among the plays of Marlowe's followers, for its dramatic skill and interest.

There doubtless was an existing play on the same subject, when *Richard III* appeared on the stage for the first time. *The True Tragedie of Richard III*, published in 1594, "as it was played by the Queenes Maiesties Players," covers much the same ground as the Shakespearean play, but there is no textual connexion between the two. Possibly the *True Tragedie* was an earlier play, whose publication as the "only original" *Richard III* was intended to steal a march upon its successful younger rival. But, if Shakespeare simply revised an older drama, the text and original sources of that drama have disappeared altogether. The chief argument in favour of the revised play may be found, perhaps, in the words "newly augmented," which were prefixed to Shakespeare's name for the first time in Q 3. It has been shown already that these words are not true, if applied merely to the editions in which they occur. But it is possible that they supply an omission which had been made in the title-pages of the earlier quartos. Q 1 had been printed without the author's name. In Q 2 Shakespeare had been introduced as the author. Four years later, when Q 3 appeared, his true relation to the play may have been discovered, and it is not unlikely that the words "newly augmented" were inserted to rectify the impression, created by Q 2, that he was the original author. Nothing is more probable than that the publisher of an unauthorised edition of the play should be insufficiently informed as to its true authorship. The word "newly," which was continued on the title-pages of the later quartos, might easily be applied to work which had been done some years before the publication of Q 3. In short, Q, from this point of view, may be regarded as the text of an earlier play augmented by Shakespeare. We might even go further, and surmise that many of the roughnesses of Q were left unsmoothed from the original drama, and that the process of augmentation came before that of revision, which eventually was accomplished in the text represented by F. This view would not diminish, but corroborate the im-

portance of F as the true basis of a text of the play. It is, however, a mere conjecture, and the only conclusions at which we can arrive safely are, that the text as we have it is substantially Shakespeare's, and that either, as in the *Henry, VI* plays, he embroidered skilfully upon an older text, or wrote an entirely new play in a style to which, by practice, his own was become assimilated.

Beside the *True Tragedie of Richard the Thirde*, there was a Latin play on the same theme by Thomas Legge, Master of Carus, which had been acted at Cambridge in 1579. But the real source of the material used for *Richard III.* was Holinshed's *Chronicles of England*, in which Halle's earlier chronicle and the *History of Richard III.* by Sir Thomas More were embodied almost literally. A reading at v iii 325, which is shared by all the printed editions of the play, shows that the second edition of Holinshed (1586-7) must have been used in the preparation of *Richard III.* the passage at iv ii 98-115, peculiar to Q, depends on an insertion added to the same edition. It goes without saying that the treatment of the historical sources in *Richard III.* is free in general, but faithful in minor details. To form a connected action, the events of several years are brought together into a space of time which Mr. Daniel has estimated at eleven days with certain intervals. Thus the imprisonment and death of Clarence (i. i and iv) took place in 1478. The events of i ii, if they were historically possible, would belong to 1471. From ii i. to iv iv, the events of 1483 follow one another in rapid succession. At the end of iv iv, the interval between Richmond's separate expeditions of 1483 and 1485 is annihilated, and the drama moves on to its climax at Bosworth. The dramatic convenience of these alterations is obvious. accuracy of date is incompatible, in the space of five acts, with striking presentation of character. The main object of the play is to give bold dramatic relief to the figure of Richard III, whose traits were ready to hand in Holinshed. This is the object of the liberty which is taken with history in the famous scene between Richard and Lady Anne—a scene which has no foundation in fact, but is a most powerful demonstration of the personal influence of the hero on

those round him. The interview with the Queen-dowager in IV iv, where Richard again exercises his faculty of persuasion, is a free deduction from history for the same purpose. Richard's connivance, at the death of Clarence, which the historical authorities merely insinuate, becomes in the play a positive fact. The impression of subtlety and wickedness, which is left by the chroniclers, is repeated by Shakespeare in the higher key and more emphatic tone which are required by drama. Now and then, the Shakespearean estimate of a particular character departs slightly from the estimate suggested by Holinshed. The Hastings of the play, vindictive, but gay and imprudent, is a more foolish person than the Hastings of history, who is more closely related to the Shakespearean Buckingham. Even Buckingham is represented as less cautious than he actually was. His bragging, melodramatic words in III v 5-11 amount to a confession of imbecility. Hastings and Buckingham, however, are merely dramatic foils to the figure of Richard, and, as such, the depreciation of their characters is unavoidable. Finally, some of the doubtful minor details of history become, where it is necessary in the play, actual facts. This is the case with the confidences of Richard to Buckingham, for which there is only historical probability, while the manner of Clarence's murder is related in accordance with likelihood rather than with ascertained truth.

The treatment of history in *Richard III* is guided everywhere by loyalty to the traditional principles of tragedy. The irresistible power of Nemesis overrules the actions of every one of the characters. In the great tragedies of Shakespeare's later life, the misfortunes of the heroes compel our sympathy and regret, while we acknowledge that they are inevitable. But in *Richard III* the inevitable nature of the tragedy precludes us from sympathy. We are passionless spectators, standing outside the drama. It is true that the *dramatis personæ* interest us more nearly than any persons in the *Henry VI* plays. Richard himself is a powerful study in sustained villainy. Hastings, his credulous dupe, and Buckingham, his short-sighted fellow-conspirator, although they are merely foils to him, are skilfully drawn as such. There is a pathetic humour

in the precocious taunts of young York the lamentations of the women and children whom Richard has bereaved have real pathos beneath their outward formality. But the abiding power of the tragedy lies in its clear presentation of the moral significance of the events which it relates. *Raro antecedentem sceleris deserti pede Poena claudo* are words which would suggest themselves as a fit motto for the play, were it not that here vengeance follows at the very heels of crime. Richard has not had time to enjoy his triumph, when the first blow of vengeance strikes him. Hastings, in the moment of exultation at the death of his enemies, finds himself a partaker in their fate. Buckingham hastens his own downfall by hesitating at the last crime by which he can ensure temporary success. The ruin of Rivers and his friends, the helpless misery of the women, are hurried on by their selfish ambition and intrigue.

It would be inaccurate to say that the author of *Richard III* was profoundly moved by the spectacle of sin and its punishment in history. The doctrine was the conventional foundation of the tragic art which he practised. Expressed with pious conviction or reluctant acquiescence by the great Athenian dramatists, it had been accepted as an artificial principle by the author of the Senecan tragedies. In the dawn of the Renaissance, the "harm of hem that stode in heigh degree" was a favourite theme of prose and poetry, of which, in England, *The Myrroure for Magistrates* was the crowning example. The frigid atmosphere of that grave poem was the atmosphere of tragedy on the early Elizabethan stage, where Seneca was the formal model of drama. The tragic propriety of *Gorboduc* stirs no emotion of sympathy or horror, beyond the natural repugnance which we feel towards its fatal catastrophes. The crimes and punishment of Queen Eleanor in Peele's *Edward I* are merely grotesque. In Lodge and Greene's *Looking-Glasse for London*, a certain sincerity of feeling underlies the artless machinery of the story. But, in plays like *The Wounds of Civil War*, Greene's *James IV*, or the three parts of *Henry VI*, the tragic groundwork is a matter of course, and our estimate of such works depends on the degree of skill with which their leading principle is developed. The same

thing, allowing for the exceptional horrors of the action, may be said of *Titus Andronicus* *Richard III* is almost the first tragedy of the school of Marlowe, in which the conventional element, used and developed with great clearness, is invested with a real human interest. The characters are something more than mere stage dolls, moved to and fro as the action of the play prescribes. Yet their sin and fate, if they compel our interest, leave our deeper emotions untouched. They are still matters of course. The dramatist has not won as yet that insight into the springs of human sin and folly which gives *Othello* or *King Lear* their eternal pathos. His characters are drawn in simple outline and with uniform colouring. They are good or bad without compensation. They sin without reflection: their punishment is purely mechanical. Richmond, the ultimate avenger, is the most lifeless figure of the play: he is merely the instrument of justice. To the author, in fact, the whole course of such a tragedy was perfectly obvious. It would have been impossible for him, at this date, to make Hastings say, in the hour of his misfortune —

As flies to wanton boys, are we to the gods,  
They kill us for their sport

Margaret or Elizabeth could not yet acknowledge that —

The gods are just, and of our pleasant vices  
Make instruments to plague us

Richmond could not yet confess, over the body of his slain adversary —

This shows you are above,  
You justicers, that these our nether crimes  
So speedily can venge

In *Richard III*, as in *King Lear*, the wheel comes full circle, but the dramatist watches its revolution with imperfect experience, and, as a consequence, with little emotion.

His artistic sympathy is concentrated on the figure of his hero. Every actor in the story receives his degree of life from association with Richard and contact with his malignant influence. But, when we speak of the character of the hero and its effect on the play, we recognise in its design the same simplicity which

distinguishes the author's perception of the tragic principle Richard is an ideal conception after the pattern of Marlowe's heroes. Already his audacity, his determination to stick at nothing, have given him heroic prominence in the third part of *Henry VI*—a prominence which leaves Warwick, the real hero of the piece, in the background. This preliminary revelation of his remorseless nature, devoid of pity, love, and fear, glorying in its powers of dissimulation and treachery, must have whetted the appetite of an Elizabethan audience for a further development of the theme. The key is maintained in *Richard III*. Like Tamburlaine or Barabas, Richard is absolutely consistent to his character and aims. There is no room for any real development of character. No chastening of experience can modify the superhuman passion for self-aggrandisement at any price, the ready-made standard to which Richard's every action must conform. His opening soliloquy lays down his motives and plan of campaign. He follows out all his designs with swiftness and eminent success. Relying on his force of will, he removes his enemies one by one, uses his adherents as his tools, and accomplishes feats like the wooing of Anne and the persuasion of the Queen-dowager to further his plans. It is only when he has done everything that he possibly can do, that Nemesis falls upon him. Even so, he is loyal to his part, and goes to ruin with the callous assurance that has been the keynote of all his actions. No compunction visits him. Once, when he hears of the first serious opposition to his career, the defection of Buckingham and Richmond's invasion, he falters, chides the messengers furiously, and issues contradictory orders to his lieutenants. But, a moment later, he recovers his courage. Once again, after his last night of visions, he wakes with the agonised cry, "Have mercy, Jesu!" and turns to a self-questioning, which, however, compared with his earlier soliloquies, is lifeless and perfunctory. On the field of battle, there is no place for his usual weapons of hypocrisy and treachery. Courage and physical force alone are possible; and in these he is still superhuman, fighting to the end with entire consistency to those early glimpses of his character in the third part of *Henry VI*, when, after St Albans, he flung down Somerset's

head on the ground with a savage gibe, or when, at Towton, he and his brother Edward, "like a brace of greyhounds, having the fearful flying hare in sight," chased the Lancastrians from the field .

Selfish ambition, physical courage, absolute want of moral scruple and human kindness, are the fundamental qualities on which the character of Richard is built up. The figure is imposing, because the villainy embodied in its conception is on so large a scale, and is worked out so thoroughly. At the same time, the conception itself is mechanical. The character is made to order, to fulfil an ideal plan. As a study in selfish wickedness, it is far behind such a study as that of Iago. Exceptional though he is, Iago compels our belief by virtue of the complexity of his motives, and of the mind that dwells in him and admits us to its secrets. Richard's motive is simple, he has no individual mind, he is merely an artistic conception of a gigantic villain with no redeeming quality, worked out with great power, and impressive chiefly because of the bulk of the design. Not very long before, Marlowe had made a similar attempt in the Jew of Malta, in whom malevolence and avarice exclude all other qualities. If Barabas supplied some hints for Shylock at a later date, he can hardly have been overlooked in the work of creating or transforming the character of Richard III. Richard is the most striking stage-villain of the type of which Barabas is the most grotesque example. He possesses in an eminent degree those Machiavelian tricks of which Barabas furnishes a shameless demonstration. To "count religion but a childish toy" is one of the fundamental tenets of this statesman who had boasted, in an earlier play, that he was able to "set the murderous Machiavel to school." He steals "odd old ends" from Holy Writ to deceive the ears of those who suspect him. It is by an unblushing parade of piety that he gains his object, in the critical scene where he accepts the crown from the citizens. He is an adept in the art of moralising "two meanings in one word." Examples of the Machiavelian tradition in English drama recur to the mind of every student. Richard, with his ambition, his fearlessness, his unscrupulousness, his calculating hypocrisy, his never-failing irony,

his natural defects redeemed by his gifts of insinuation and persuasion, is the *beau idéal* of the Machiavelian, to whom *virtù*, prompt and unscrupulous energy, is indispensable, with whom the semblance of religion must take the place of the reality, in whom the highest perfection of bestial qualities, the cunning of the fox and the courage of the lion, must be combined

To discuss the relation of this dramatic ideal to its real origin in Machiavelli, or, more properly, in the ideas of the "Englishman Italianate" about Machiavelli, is not to the present purpose. Nor is it necessary to enter into the relationship between the Richard of the drama and the real Richard of history. Something has been said of the minor characters, of the would-be Machiavelian Buckingham, and of the frivolous, sensual Hastings. In the case of Hastings, the dramatic irony of the tragedy, its most distinguishing excellence, is at its best Richard, and even Buckingham, are too thoroughly alive to their own villainy, and too obviously self-devoted to destruction, to be altogether blind to a possible reversal of their fortunes, or to lend their words that terrible significance with which the thoughtless sinner bears witness on the stage to his real insecurity or prophesies his own downfall. The cynicism with which Richard says of Clarence's murder, "God will revenge it," disarms the situation of half its irony. When Buckingham sets aside Margaret's warning, it is not because he feels himself secure from the necessity to "take heed of yonder dog," but because he thinks himself competent to take care of himself and foresee all means of self-preservation. Hastings, on the other hand, has full confidence in the good faith of the protector. He laughs at Stanley's dreams and caution, he exults in the news of the execution of his enemies, the meeting with the pursuivant, though it recalls an unhappy day in his life, gives him no foreboding qualm. His meeting with the priest fills him with no sense of ill to come: he can laugh over it with Buckingham, and answer his sinister jests with a jeer at the unhappy lords at Pomfret. At the council in the Tower he boasts of his intimate friendship with Gloucester, and praises his friend's simplicity of heart and face, of which he is doubtless ready to take the first advantage. But, in a moment, the fatuous self-

complacence that has held us in suspense for two scenes, crumbles to pieces, when the protector, frowning and biting his lip, bursts into the council chamber, and Hastings, at close quarters with death, realises what the conceit was that had given so cheerful a seeming to his grace's good-morrow, and how ill his face had accorded with the thoughts of his heart

More pathetic is the irony with which Anne, in her repulsion from the murderer of Henry VI and of his son, curses the woman who may become Richard's wife, and then, almost in the same breath, yields to his mastery, and consents to be that woman. The scene is a *tour de force*, and the illusion which it produces is rather too violent to be entirely successful. But we are reminded of it at that later date, when Anne, the "woeful welcomer of glory," discloses to the other hapless women who have felt the influence of the "unavoided eye" of the royal basilisk, the fulfilment of her imprecation on herself. Of those women, whose part is almost that of a chorus to the play—a chorus whose personal concerns are most deeply implicated by its events—Anne is the most blameless and the most attractive. The widowed Duchess of York, broken by grief, is surrendered to passionate despair. For Queen Elizabeth in her helplessness we have less sympathy. She has played an ambitious and domineering part in the past; she has been a sharer in that hollow reconciliation by her husband's death-bed, the manifest insincerity of which prejudices us against all concerned in it; her self-interest persuades her to sacrifice her daughter to Richard, at a time when his villainies are no longer any secret. Much praise has been given to the character of Margaret, whose kinship to the models of antique tragedy is become a commonplace of criticism. The sudden appearances of the wrinkled beldame to gloat over the misfortunes of her foes, and the dialogue in which Richard, by his sudden interjection of her own name, diverts the current of her curses, are highly effective from a theatrical point of view. She is little more, however, than a shadowy phantom, the survivor of Richard's early experiments in crime, and her real use, like that of the funeral of her husband in I. ii, is to connect the events of the new play more closely with those of its predecessor, and to

add the weight of Richard's past exploits to the load of guilt which he has piled up more recently. When we look forward to *Lear*, or *Coriolanus*, or *Lady Macbeth*, it seems needless to single out Margaret for comparison with the tragic figures of the Athenian stage.

Early records of the stage history of *Richard III* are connected chiefly with the performance by Burbage of a part which, without involving great intellectual effort in the actor, calls forth his most striking powers of action and declamation. Manningham notes in his diary for 13th March, 1601, a story of a trick played on Burbage by Shakespeare, "vpon a tyme when Burbidge played Richard III." In the same year, the authors of the third part of *The Returne from Parnassus* introduce Burbage catechising Philomusus thus: "I like your face and the proportion of your body for *Richard* the 3. I pray M. *Phil* let me see you act a little of it." Whereupon Philomusus quotes the opening lines of the play. A third allusion is contained in Bishop Corbet's *Iter Boreale*, written before 1635, in which he describes his visit with a loquacious host to Bosworth Field. The host showed him the position of the armies and the very spot of Richard's death —

Besides what of his knowledge he could say,  
He had authenticke notice from the Play,  
Which I might guesse, by 's mustring up the ghosts,  
And policyes, not incident to hosts,  
But cheifly by that one perspicuous thing,  
Where he mistook a player for a king,  
For when he would have sayd, King Richard dyed,  
And call'd—A horse! a horse! he Burbidge cry'de

It was Burbage, no doubt, who gave the famous line "A horse! a horse! my kingdom for a horse!" its vogue, attested by many allusions in the plays and poems of the earlier part of the seventeenth century. But, although there is ample evidence of the early popularity of *Richard III*, no allusion to a definite performance is found before 1633, when Sir Henry Herbert notes in the Office-book which he kept as Master of the Revels, that the play was acted at St James's before Charles I. and Henrietta Maria, soon after the birth of the future James II.

Its popularity seems to have waned after the Restoration. Betterton does not seem to have included Richard in his *répertoire* of Shakespearean characters. Pepys makes no mention of the play, and no dramatist adapted it for the stage until Colley Cibber brought out his famous version early in the eighteenth century. For more than a century and a half this mutilated edition became the playgoer's text of the drama. It was as Cibber's Richard that Garrick made his first appearance at Goodman's Fields, 19th October, 1741. It remained one of his favourite parts until his retirement in June, 1776. In May of that year, Mrs Siddons, then a member of Garrick's company at Drury Lane, made one of her earliest appearances in London as Lady Anne. Her brothers, John Philip and Charles Kemble, produced a revision of Cibber's version, in which they took the parts of Richard and Richmond, at Covent Garden in 1811. Edmund Kean played Richard with great success at Drury Lane in the seasons of 1813-4 and 1814-5. Macready, who made his fame in the same part about 1819, was the principal actor in the restoration of the Shakespearean text which took place at Covent Garden, 12th and 19th March, 1821. The public, long accustomed to Cibber's adaptation, received this change for the better without enthusiasm. Later actors, like Charles Kean, returned to the mutilated text, and it was not till 29th January, 1877, when Henry Irving produced the play, "arranged for the Stage exclusively from the author's text," at the Lyceum, that Cibber's book was ousted from the boards. Among the famous actors whose *débuts* are connected with the drama, may be mentioned Richard William Elliston, who appeared as a youth at the Bath Theatre in 1791, taking the very minor part of Tressel in the second scene of this play.

From the notes to the present volume it will be seen how much the editor owes to the freely-given help and friendship of the late Mr Craig. He is also indebted to Mr P. A. Daniel for advice and suggestions communicated through Mr Craig. All references to other plays of Shakespeare follow the numbering of lines in the Globe edition of the plays.



THE TRAGEDY  
OF  
KING RICHARD THE THIRD

## DRAMATIS PERSONÆ

KING EDWARD *the Fourth*  
 EDWARD, *Prince of Wales, afterwards King*  
     *Edward V ,*  
 RICHARD, *Duke of York,*  
 GEORGE, *Duke of Clarence,*  
 RICHARD, *Duke of Gloucester, afterwards*  
     *King Richard III ,*  
     *A young son of Clarence*  
 HENRY, *Earl of Richmond, afterwards King Henry VII*  
 CARDINAL BOURCHIER, *Archbishop of Canterbury.*  
 THOMAS ROTHERHAM, *Archbishop of York*  
 JOHN MORTON, *Bishop of Ely.*  
 DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM  
 DUKE OF NORFOLK.  
 EARL OF SURREY, *his son.*  
 EARL RIVERS, *brother to Elizabeth.*  
 MARQUESS OF DORSET and LORD GREY, *sons to Elizabeth*  
 EARL OF OXFORD.  
 LORD HASTINGS.  
 LORD STANLEY, *called also EARL OF DERBY.*  
 LORD LOVEL  
 SIR THOMAS VAUGHAN  
 SIR RICHARD RATCLIFF  
 SIR WILLIAM CATESBY  
 SIR JAMES TYRREL  
 SIR JAMES BLOUNT.  
 SIR WALTER HERBERT.  
 SIR ROBERT BRAKFNBURY, *Licutenant of the Tower*  
 CHRISTOPHER URSWICK, *a priest*  
*Another Priest.*  
 TRESSSEL and BERKELEY, *gentlemen attending on the Lady Anne.*

*DRAMATIS PERSONÆ*

3

*Lord Mayor of London*

*Sheriff of Wiltshire*

ELIZABETH, *queen to King Edward IV*

MARGARET, *widow of King Henry VI*

DUCHESS OF YORK, *mother to King Edward IV.*

LADY ANNE, *widow of Edward, Prince of Wales, son to King  
Henry VI , afterwards married to Richard*

*A young daughter of Clarence*

*Ghosts of those murdered by Richard , Lords and other Attendants ,  
a Pursuivant , a Scrivener , Citizens, Murderers, Messengers,  
Soldiers, etc*

SCENE *England*

## NOTES ON *DRAMATIS PERSONÆ*

*A young son of Clarence*] Edward, Earl of Warwick, born 1475 kept in custody at Sheriff Hutton during the reign of Richard III, but knighted during the King's visit to York, 1483. Removed by order of Henry VII to the Tower of London, 1485, where he was shut up, "out of all compaignie of men & sight of beasts, insomuch that he could not discern a goose from a capon" (Holinshed, iii 787, where five years are added to his age). In iv ii 55 below, this simplicity is slightly anticipated. Executed 28th November, 1499, on the charge of conspiracy with Perkin Warbeck and connivance at his escape from the Tower.

CARDINAL BOURCHIER] Thomas, son of William Bouchier, Earl of Eu, by Anne, elder daughter of Thomas, Duke of Gloucester, sixth son of Edward III. His brother Henry, created Earl of Essex, 1461, was an uncle by marriage of Edward IV and Richard III. By their mother's first marriage, the Bouchiers were half brothers to the first Duke of Buckingham, grandfather of the Buckingham of the play. The Cardinal was born 1404: he was Chancellor of Oxford and Bishop of Worcester, 1434-5, Bishop of Ely 1443-4, Archbishop of Canterbury, 1454, Lord Chancellor, 1455-6, Cardinal with title of San Ciriaco in Terme, 1467-8. At first a Lancastrian, he declared for the house of York, 1460. He crowned Edward IV. Queen Elizabeth Woodville, Richard III, and Henry VII, and married Henry VII to Elizabeth of York. He died at Knoles, 30th March, 1486.

THOMAS ROTHERHAM] or Scott, born at Rotherham, 1423. Nominated Bishop of Rochester and Keeper of the Privy Seal, 1467, Chancellor of Cambridge, 1469-71, 1473-8, Bishop of Lincoln, 1472; Archbishop of York, 1480, Lord Chancellor, 1474-83, Master of Pembroke Hall, Cambridge, c. 1480-6. For his part in the play see Appendix II. He was arrested and imprisoned after the council of 13th June, 1483, at which Hastings was entrapped, but seems to have made his peace with Richard, and to have held office as Lord Treasurer for a short time under Henry VII. He died at Cawood in May, 1500. He founded the College of Jesus at Rotherham, and is regarded as the second founder of Lincoln College, Oxford.

JOHN MORTON] Born c. 1420, lawyer and diplomatist, Bishop of Ely, 1479, for his imprisonment and escape see notes on iv iv 470-1 and 512-6, rewarded for his services to Richmond with the archbishopric of Canterbury, 1486, Lord Chancellor, 1487, created Cardinal, 1493. Chancellor of Oxford, 1495, died 1500. It is probably from him, through Sir Thomas More, that we derive the traditional account of the character and reign of Richard III.

DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM] Henry Stafford, born c. 1454, succeeded his grandfather as second Duke, 1460, executed at Salisbury, 1483. For his descent see note on iii. i. 195. His son, Edward, third Duke, is the Buckingham of *Henry VIII*.

DUKE OF NORFOLK] John Howard, born before 1430, created Duke of Norfolk and Earl Marshal by Richard III, 1483, killed at Bosworth, 1485.

EARL OF SURREY] Thomas Howard, born 1443, fought at Bosworth, imprisoned by Henry VII, but gained distinction afterwards in the service of the Tudors, won battle of Flodden, 1513; created Duke of Norfolk, 1514, died 1524. He is the Norfolk of *Henry VIII*.

## NOTES ON *DRAMATIS PERSONÆ* 5

EARL RIVERS] Anthony Woodville, born c 1442, K G, 1466, executed 1483. His translation, *The Dictes and Sayings of the Philosophers*, was the first book printed by Caxton, 1477. See also Appendix II.

MARQUESS OF DORSET] Thomas Grey, born 1451, succeeded his father as ninth Baron Ferrars of Groby, 1461, Earl of Huntingdon, 1471, Marquess of Dorset, 1475, K G, 1476, escaped to Brittany, 1483, confirmed in his titles by Henry VII; died 1501.

LORD GREY] more correctly Lord Richard Grey, executed 1483.

EARL OF OXFORD] John de Vere, born 1443, succeeded his father as thirteenth Earl, 1462, a consistent Lancastrian. His abortive attempt to hold St Michael's Mount in 1473 led to his attainder and imprisonment at Hammes, 1474-84. He returned with Richmond to England, and died 1513.

LORD HASTINGS] William Hastings, created Baron Hastings of Ashby de-la-Zouch and Lord Chamberlain, 1461. He was a prominent antagonist of the Woodville faction, but his imprisonment in the Tower, referred to in I i and III ii is merely an inference drawn by the author of the play from Holinshed, III 723, where it is said (following More) that Hastings was "accused vn'o King Edward by the Lord Ruers in such wise, as he was for the while (but it lasted not long) farre fallen into the kings indignation, & stood in great feare of himselfe." Executed 1483.

LORD STANLEY] Thomas Stanley, born c 1435, succeeded his father as second Baron Stanley, 1459, became third husband of Lady Margaret Beaufort, mother of Henry VII, created Earl of Derby, 1485, died 1504. Strictly speaking, the use of the title "Derby," where it occurs in this play, is wrong, as Stanley was not yet created Earl of Derby at the time of the action. Theobald used "Stanley" throughout, on the ground that the author was not responsible for the inaccuracy. The Cambridge editors retain Derby where both Qq and Ff agree in the reading, and their custom has been followed in the present edition.

LORD LOVEL] more usually Lovell. Francis Lovell, ninth Baron Lovell of Tichmarsh, Northants, created Viscount Lovell and K G, 1483, Lord Chamberlain to Richard III, died after fighting for Lambert Simnel at Stoke, 1487.

SIR THOMAS VAUGHAN] Chamberlain to Edward, Prince of Wales (Edward V), 1471, executed 1483.

SIR RICHARD RATCLIFF] or Radcliffe, knighted at Tewkesbury, 1471, K G, 1484, killed at Bosworth, 1485, the "Rat" of Colyngborne's couplet.

SIR WILLIAM CATESBY] A lawyer, and *protege* of Hastings, whose service he forsook for that of Gloucester. Under Richard III he became Chancellor of the Exchequer, and in 1484 was knight of the shire for Northants and Speaker of the House of Commons. He was taken at Bosworth, and beheaded at Leicester. The "Cat" of Colyngborne's satire. The knighthood given him here is purely a courtesy title.

SIR JAMES TYRRELL] more correctly Tytrel or Tyrell, knighted after Tewkesbury, 1471, Master of the Horse to Richard III, pardoned and made Lieutenant of Guisnes Castle by Henry VII, beheaded 1502. See note on IV ii 36.

SIR JAMES BLOUNT] son of Sir Walter Blount, Baron Montjoy of Mountjoy, Lieutenant of Hammes Castle, 1476, where he was custodian of the Earl of Oxford, knighted 1485, died 1493.

SIR WALTER HERBERT] See note on IV v 10 18.

SIR ROBERT BRAKENBURY] Appointed Constable of the Tower, 1483, so that his connexion with the murder of Clarence (1478) has no warrant in history, killed at Bosworth.

CHRISTOPHER URSWICK] A member of a northern family, confessor to the Countess of Richmond Henry VII's mother, Archdeacon of Richmond, employed in diplomatic missions by Henry VII, Dean of York, 1488, Dean of Windsor, 1495, died 1522.

TRESSSEL and BERKELEY] Names probably chosen by Shakespeare at random.

LORD MAYOR OF LONDON] Sir Edmund Shaw. See note on III v 103.

ELIZABETH] Born c 1437, daughter of Sir Richard Woodville (Baron Rivers, 1448, Earl Rivers, 1466) by Jacquetta of Luxemburg, widow of John, Duke of Bedford, married (1) Sir John Grey, eighth Baron Ferrers of Groby, (2) Edward

## 6 NOTES ON *DRAMATIS PERSONÆ*

IV, 1464-65, died 1492 Her complicity in the designs of Richard III (see iv iv) brought her out of favour with her son-in-law, Henry VII

MARGARET] See note on iv iv 6

DUCHESS OF YORK] Born 1415, daughter of Sir Ralph Nevill, first Earl of Westmorland, the "cousin Westmoreland" of *Henry V* iv iii 19, married Richard, Duke of York, 1438, died 1495 See notes on iii vii 179 82, iv i 95

LADY ANNE] Born 1456, younger daughter of Richard Nevill, the great Earl of Warwick, betrothed, but never married, to Edward, son of Henry VI, 1470, married Richard, Duke of Gloucester, 1474, died March, 1485 In *3 Henry VI* iii iii 242 she is wrongly called Warwick's "eldest daughter" (see also *ibid* iv i 118) Her elder sister and co-heiress, Isabella, married George, Duke of Clarence, and a dispute over her inheritance was one of the causes of ill-feeling between Clarence and his brothers

*A young daughter of Clarence*] Margaret Plantagenet, born 1473, married to Sir Richard Pole, restored to the title and possessions of the earldom of Salisbury by Henry VIII, 1513, attainted for her suspected complicity in the intrigues of her son, Reginald Pole, and others, 1539, executed 27th May, 1541 At iv iii 37 she is probably confused with her first cousin, Princess Cicely, whom Richard III married "to a man found in a cloud, and of an unknown lineage and familie" (Holinshed, iii 752), probably a member of the Lincolnshire family of Kyme

*A Pursuivant*] See note on iii ii 94

# THE TRAGEDY OF KING RICHARD THE THIRD

## ACT I

### SCENE I—*London A street*

*Enter* RICHARD, *Duke of Gloucester, solus*

*Glow* Now is the winter of our discontent  
Made glorious summer by this sun of York,  
And all the clouds that lour'd upon our house  
In the deep bosom of the ocean buried  
Now are our brows bound with victorious wreaths,       5  
Our bruised arms hung up for monuments,

*London A street*] Capell, omitted Qq, Ff       1 *our*] Qq 1, 2, Ff, omitted  
Qq 3-8       2 *sun*] Rowe, *sonne* Qq, *son* Ff

2 *this sun of York*] Compare 3  
*Henry VI* v iii 4, 5 Edward IV  
assumed a sun for his badge, in conse-  
quence of the vision which appeared to  
him 2nd February, 1461, the day before  
the battle of Mortimer's Cross See  
3 *Henry VI* ii 1 25-40, Holinshed,  
*Chronicles*, 2nd ed 1587, iii 660 The  
legend is referred to by Drayton,  
*Miseries of Queen Margaret*, st 134,  
and *Poly-Olbion*, 1622, xxii 762-84  
Aldis Wright quotes from Stow the  
incident at Barnet, where Warwick's  
forces, in the mist, took the "starre  
with streames" on the coats of Lord  
Oxford's men, their friends, for the sun  
worn by the supporters of Edward  
The readings of Qq and Ff bring out a  
common play on the words "sun" and  
"son" compare below, i iii 266, 267,  
and Tourneur, *Revenger's Tragedy*,  
1607 —

"The mother's curse is heavy, where  
that fights,  
Sons set in storm, and daughters  
lose their lights"  
In Shakespeare's account of the vision  
mentioned above Edward divines the  
three ominous suns joined in one as an  
emblem of the three "sons of brave  
Plantagenet"  
6 *monuments*] Compare Massinger,  
*Great Duke of Florence*, 1635, ii 1 —  
"his arms

And his victorious sword and shield  
hung up  
For monuments"  
A M (ap Hakluyt, *Principal Navi-  
gations* 1599, ii 135) "They kept  
there the sword wherewith John Fox  
had killed the Keeper and hanged  
it up for a monument" The phrase is  
sometimes taken as referring to the  
armour hung up over tombs, like those

Our stern alarums chang'd to merry meetings,  
 Our dreadful marches, to delightful measures  
 Grim-visag'd War hath smooth'd his wrinkled front,  
 And now, instead of mounting barbed steeds, . 10  
 To fright the souls of fearful adversaries,  
 He capers nimbly in a lady's chamber,

7 *alarums*] *alarmes* Q 1    8 *measures*] Qq 1-3, Ff, *pleasures* Qq 4 8

of the Black Prince or Henry V. Such armour, however, was usually made for the funeral ceremonies, and could not come under the category of "bruised arms", nor were the members of the house of York at present in need of funeral armour. The allusion, if any is needed, is simply to the custom of ornamenting a hall with the disused armour of the family, like the armour "Hugh's at Agincourt and old Sir Ralph's at Ascalon" in Iennyson's *Princess*, 1847, prol. lines 25, 26, or Mr Chainmail's "rusty pikes, shields, helmets, swords, and tattered banners" in Peacock's *Crochet Castle*, 1831, chap 5.

8 *measures*] slow and solemn dances. Sir John Davies, *Orchestra*, 1596, st 65, says of Love, who had taught the multitude lighter dances —

"But after these, as men more civil grew,

He did more grave and solemn

*Measures* frame,

With such fair order and proportion true,

And correspondence every way the same,

That no fault finding eye did ever blame",

and st 66 —

"Yet all the feet whereon these *measures* go

Are only Spondees, solemn, grave, and slow"

Decker, *Bel-Man of London*, 1608, has "I neither wonder at the stately *measures* of the clouds, the nimble galliards of the water, nor the wanton trippings of the wind" (ed Smeaton, 1904, p. 71). There is a close parallel between the present passage and Lyly, *Alexander and Campaspe*, 1584, ii 2 and iv 3. Shakespeare seems to have had both these passages in mind. In

iv 3 we find "But let us draw in, to see how well it becomes them to tread the *measures* in a dance, that were wont to set the order for a march." Shakespeare's alliteration of "dreadful marches" and "delightful measures" is a trick learned in the school of Lyly.

9 *Grim visag'd War*] Mr Craig calls my attention to the recurrence of the same phrase in Drayton, *Poly Olbion*, 1613, viii 181 "Yet with *grim-visag'd war* when he her shores did greet," and to the reminiscence in Gray, *Ode on a Distant Prospect of Eton College*, 1797, st vii "*Grim-visaged* comfortless despair."

10 *barbed*] armed for war. So Lyly, *Alexander and Campaspe*, ii 2 "Is the war like sound of drum and trumpet turned to the soft noise of lyre and lute? the neighing of *barbed* steeds . converted to delicate tunes and amorous glances?" The word is a corruption of the proper term "barbed", *barbs* is a general term for horse-armour in French. Cotgrave, *Dictionnaire*, 1611, gives "Bardé barbed or trapped, as a great horse. Bardes f Barbes, or trappings for horses of service, or of shew." "Barbed steeds" occurs again in *Richard II* iii iii 117 "Unbarbed," in *Coriolanus*, iii ii 99, is usually taken to mean "unarmoured." The substantive "barb" is used for horse-armour by Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, 1590, ii ii 11 "goodly gorgeous *barbes*." For "barbed" see Berners' *Froissart*, 1523 141. "It was a great beauty to behold the . horses *barbed*." "Barbed" is sometimes used, e.g. by Stow, of men as well as horses. The application of the term "barbed" to the walls of a hall hung with armour (*Fillis*, line 219) was one of the signs that betrayed Chatterton's forgeries.

To the lascivious pleasing of a lute  
 But I, that am not shap'd for sportive tricks,  
 Nor made to court an amorous looking-glass, 15  
 I, that am rudely stamp'd, and want love's majesty,  
 To strut before a wanton ambling nymph,  
 I, that am curtail'd of this fair proportion,  
 Cheated of feature by dissembling Nature,  
 Deform'd, unfinish'd, sent before my time 20  
 Into this breathing world, scarce half made up,  
 And that so lamely and unfashionable,  
 That dogs bark at me as I halt by them,  
 Why, I, in this weak piping time of peace,  
 Have no delight to pass away the time, 25

13 *lute*] Ff, *lute* Qq 14 *shap'd for*] Ff, *shap'te for* Qq 1 3, *sharpe for* Qq  
 4, 5, *sharpe of* Qq 6 8 21 *scarce*] Qq 1, 2, *scarse* Ff, omitted Qq 3-8

13 *pleasing*] evidently used here for "pleasure" No parallel example is forthcoming

17 *ambling*] used of leisurely or easy motion, as *Romeo and Juliet*, I iv 10, *Hamlet*, III i 151 *New Eng Dict* quotes an apposite passage from Addison, *The Drummer*, 1716, I i "She has play'd at an assembly, and ambled in a ball or two" Mr Craig suggests that "wanton-ambling" is possibly one of the double epithets so common in this play

18 *proportion*] regularity of figure Compare Greene, *Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay*, 1594 (ed Dyce, p 158) — "Proportion'd as was Paris, when, in grey,

He courted CEnon in the vale by Troy",

Decker, *Guls Horn Booke*, 1609 (ed Smeaton, 1904, p 30) "a head al hid in haire gives even to a most wicked face a sweet *proportion*"

19 *feature*] outward appearance (Lat *factura*, Fr *figure*), as Kyd, *Spanish Tragedy*, c 1588, act II "My *feature* is not to content her sight", Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, I viii 49, *Two Gentlemen of Verona*, II iv 73 "Feature" and "proportion" occur together again in Fletcher, *False One*, 1647, I 2 —

"Cæsar is amorous,

And taken more with the title of a queen, .

Than *feature* or *proportion*"

Shakespeare does not here imply beauty of appearance it is the shape of his body of which Richard has been cheated Its "feature" is imperfect as he explains lower down, he is "scarce half made up"

*dissembling Nature*] The idea of cheating is probably emphasised in "dissembling" Warburton explained the phrase as meaning "Nature that puts together things of a dissimilar kind, as a brave soul and a deformed body," i.e. disassembling Nature But this idea seems rather far-fetched

21 *this breathing world*] Compare Sonnet lxxxii 12 See also 2 *Henry VI* I ii 21 (Craig)

22 *lamely and unfashionable*] For this double adverb with a single termination compare Ben Jonson, *Poetaster*, 1601, I i "What, hast thou buskins on, Luscus, that thou swearest so tragically and high" Sometimes the adverbial termination is given to the second of the two words, as Fletcher, *False One*, IV 2 —

"we make louder prayers to die nobly,

Than to live high and wantonly"

24 *piping*] The pipe was an instrument proper to times of peace, as the fife to times of war Compare *Much Ado About Nothing*, II iii 13-15

Unless to spy my shadow in the sun,  
 And descant on mine own deformity  
 And therefore, since I cannot prove a lover,  
 To entertain these fair well-spoken days,  
 I am determined to prove a villain, 30  
 And hate the idle pleasures of these days.  
 Plots have I laid, inductions dangerous,  
 By drunken prophecies, libels, and dreams,  
 To set my brother Clarence and the king  
 In deadly hate the one against the other 35  
 And if King Edward be as true and just,  
 As I am subtle, false, and treacherous,  
 This day should Clarence closely be mew'd up,  
 About a prophecy, which says that G

26 *spy*] *spsie* Qq, see Ff 39 *a prophecy*] *aiurohesse* Qq 4, 5

27 *descant*] The usual meaning of "descant" in music was the art of constructing variations on a simple melody called the "ground" or "plain-song." Richard's deformity is the plain song of his descant *New Eng Dict* quotes Cotgrave, *s v Contre*, "To sing . the Plain-song whercon another descants" Compare below, III vii 49, Edwards, *Damon and Pithias*, 1571, refers to the jests passed on ladies by Aristippus "They are your playne song to singe *descant* upon", Lyly, *Euphues*, 1579 (ed Arber, p 137) "He that alwayes singeth one note without *deskant* breedeth no delight" In *Eastward Ho*, 1605, Wolf the prison keeper answers to Touchstone's puns, "Sir, your worship may *descant* as you please o' my name"

29 *entertain* *days*] Compare *Measure for Measure*, III. i 75, Sonnet XXXIX 11. Shakespeare uses the word in this act with three different senses, (1) as here, (2) as in I ii 257, with which compare *King Lear*, III vi 83; (3) as in I. iii 4, where it corresponds to our phrase "to entertain a hope"

30 Gloucester has expressed this intention previously, *3 Henry VI*. v. vi 78 9 The soliloquy of the Duke of Epire in Machin and Markham, *Dumb Knight*, 1608, act 1., is a recollection of this passage —

"I am resolv'd, since virtue hath disdain'd

To clothe me in her riches, hence forth to prove

A villain fatal, black and ominous"

32 *inductions*] beginnings, preparations, as below, IV iv 5 Compare *1 Henry IV* III i 2, Cook, *Green's Tu Quoque*, c 1599 "false dice say amen for that's my induction." In drama, the "induction" is the scene or scenes preparatory to a play, like the inductions to *Taming of the Shrew*, or Jonson's *Cynthia's Revels*, or Webster's induction to Marston's *Malcontent*

38 *mew'd up*] confined, properly of a hawk while mewing (*muer*) or moulting its feathers It is used again below, line 132 and I. iii 139 Compare Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, II. iii 34, *Midsummer-Night's Dream*, I. i 71, Beaumont and Fletcher, *Woman Hater*, 1607, III i "Is this your mewing up, your strict retirement?" The cage was called a "mew" see Chaucer, *Canterbury Tales*, A 349, *Troilus and Criseyde*, III 602 In London, the fact that the royal stables originally were built on the site of the king's mews for hawks, gave rise to the name commonly applied to stables of town houses

39 *a prophecy*] Compare Halle (ap Holinshed, II. 703), "a foolish prophesie,

Of Edward's heirs the murderer shall be 40  
 Dive, thoughts, down to my soul ! here Clarence comes

*Enter CLARENCE, guarded, and BRAKENBURY*

Brother, good day what means this armed guard  
 That waits upon your grace ?

*Clar* His majesty,  
 Tendering my person's safety, hath appointed  
 This conduct, to convey me to the Tower 45

*Glou* Upon what cause ?

*Clar* Because my name is George

*Glou* Alack, my lord, that fault is none of yours,  
 He should for that commit your godfathers  
 O, belike his majesty hath some intent  
 That you shall be new-christ'ned in the Tower 50  
 But what's the matter, Clarence ? may I know ?

*Clar* Yea, Richard, when I know, for I protest  
 As yet I do not but, as I can learn,  
 He hearkens after prophecies and dreams,  
 And from the cross-row plucks the letter G, 55

40 *murderer*] *murtherer* Qq 3-8, Ff, *murtherers* Qq 1, 2 41 *Dive*  
*comes*] one line as Ff, two lines Qq, divided after *soule* *Enter Braken-*  
*bury*] Rowe, *Enter Clarence with a guard of men* Qq, *Enter Clarence and*  
*Brakenbury, guarded* Ff 42 *day*] Ff, *dayes* or *daies* Qq 43-45 *That*  
*wasts* *the Tower*] arranged as Pope, *That wasts* *Grace?* *His*  
*appointed This* *the Tower* (3 lines) Qq, *That wasts* *Grace?* *His*  
*safety, Haik* *th' Tower* Ff 48 *godfathers*] Qq 1-3, Ff 1, *good fathers*  
 Qq 4 6, *grandfathers* Ff 2-4 50 *shall be*] Qq 2-8, *shalbe* Q 1, *should be* Ff  
 51 *what's*] Ff, *whats* Qq 1, 2, *what is* Qq 3 8 52 *know*] *doe know* Q 6  
*for*] Qq, *but* Ff

which was, that, after K Edward, one should reigne, whose first letter of his name should be a G" Q 5 follows Q 4 in the extraordinary misprint "ad-rohesie"

44 *tendering*] having regard to The word is used about twenty times by Shakespeare, *eg* II iv 72 below, *Richard II* I i 32, *Hamlet*, I iii 107, *Tempest*, II i 270 compare I *Henry IV* v iv 49 See also Lyly, *Euphues* (Arber, 147) "When as I see many fathers more cruell to their children then carefull of them, which thinke it not necessarye to haue those about them, that most *tender* them", Lodge and Greene, *Looking Glass*

for London and England, 1594 (Dyce, 124) "the duty of lawyers in *tendering* the right cause of their clients"

54 *hearkens after*] Compare *Much Ado About Nothing*, v 1 216 *New Eng Dict* quotes Berners' *Froissart*, I 303 "There abode styll the Englyssh-men to *hearken after* other newes"

*prophecies*] Malone notes the statements of Philippe de Communes "that the English at that time were never unfurnished with some prophecy or other, by which they accounted for every event"

55 *cross-row*] the alphabet or Christ-cross row, so-called from the cross which was placed before the alphabet

And says, a wizard told him that by G  
His issue disinherited should be  
And, for my name of George begins with G,  
It follows in his thought that I am he  
These, as I learn, and such like toys as these, 60  
Have mov'd his highness to commit me now

*Glou* Why, this it is, when men are rul'd by women  
'Tis not the king that sends you to the Tower,  
My Lady Grey his wife, Clarence, 'tis she  
That tempers him to this extremity 65  
Was it not she, and that good man of worship,  
Anthony Woodville, her brother there,  
That made him send Lord Hastings to the Tower,  
From whence this present day he is deliver'd?  
We are not safe, Clarence, we are not safe 70

*Clar* By heaven, I think there is no man secure  
But the queen's kindred and night-walking heralds

61 *Havc*] Qq, F 4, *Hath* Ff 1 3 65 *tempers*] Q 1, *tempts* Qq 2, 5 8, Ff,  
*tempts* Qq 3, 4 *this*] Qq, *this harsh* lf 71 *secur*] Ff, *is secur* de Qq 1 3,  
*secur* de Q 4, *seurde* Q 5, *seur* d Q 6

in horn books Cotgrave gives "*I a cross de par Dieu* The Christ's cross row, hornebooke wherein a child learns it" The sixteenth century screen in the tower arch of Probus Church, Corn wall, is ornamented with a series of small shields in its lower panels, the first of which bears a cross, and the rest the opening letters of the alphabet cut in relief *New Eng Dict* quotes a formula repeated before the alphabet from Motley, *Plaine and Easie Introduction to Practicall Musicke*, 1597 "Christ's crosse be my speede, in all vertue to proceede, A, b, c," etc Halliwell, s v *Christ-Cross*, notes a variant beginning "Christe cross me spede in all my worke." Skelton refers to one or other of these formulas, *Against Venemous Tongues*, ant 1529 (Chalmers, *English Poets*, II 235) "In your *cross rowe*, nor Christ *crosse* you spede"

60 *toys*] trifles, idle fancies; very common in all writers of this age Compare Lyly, *Euphues* (Arber, 206) "They that inuented this *toie* were unwise, and they that reported it vnkinde."

65 *tempers*] Reasons for adopting this reading, peculiar to Q 1, have been given in the Introduction The queen tempers Edward's will as one tempers or moulds wax, compare for the metaphor *Henry IV* IV III 140 "I have him already *tempering* between my finger and thumb, and shortly will I seal with him" I or "temper" in the sense of "govern, control," see Greene, *Friar Bacon* (Dyce, 178) — "mine art,

Which once I *temper'd* in my secret cell"

67 *Woodville*] pronounced as a trisyllable The name originally was spelt Wydeville, and a full syllabic value given to the middle *e* Steevens mentions that, in his day, one of the bearers of the name Woodville pronounced it in this way, "England" and "Henry," among other words, are often found in places where it is necessary to pronounce them as trisyllables, as in Qq readings of IV IV 264, IV II 94 below Compare Chaucer, *Canterbury Tales*, A 16 "ngelond," A 389 "Dertemouthe."

- That trudge betwixt the king and Mistress Shore  
 Heard you not what an humble suppliant  
 Lord Hastings was to her for his delivery? 75
- Glou* Humbly complaining to her dety  
 Got my lord chamberlain his liberty  
 I'll tell you what, I think it is our way,  
 If we will keep in favour with the king,  
 To be her men and wear her livery 80  
 The jealous o'er-worn widow and herself,  
 Since that our brother dubb'd them gentlewomen,  
 Are mighty gossips in this monarchy
- Brak* I beseech your graces both to pardon me,  
 His majesty hath straitly given in charge, 85  
 That no man shall have private conference,  
 Of what degree soever, with his brother
- Glou* Even so, an't please your worship, Brakenbury,  
 You may partake of any thing we say

74 you] Ff, Qq 7, 8, ye Qq 1-6 75 was to her for his] Qq, was, for her  
 F 1, was, for his Ff 2, 3, was for his F 4 83 this] Qq, our Ff 87 his]  
 Qq, your Ff 88 an't] Pope, and Qq 1, 2, Ff, & Qq 3-6 Brakenbury]  
 Ff, Brokenbury Qq

73 *Mistress Shore*] Jane Shore was daughter of a Cheapside mercer and wife of a goldsmith in Lombard Street More says that she used her influence with the king "to manie a mans comfort and releefe Where the king tooke displeasure, shee would mitigate and appease his mind where men were out of fauour, she would bring them in his grace" In 1483 Gloucester, as Protector (see below, III iv) accused her of sorcery against his person No proof being found against her, she was condemned to do penance in St Paul's for incontinency She died in poverty c 1527

75 *to her for his*] Qq, although adding an extra foot to the line, have the better reading "For her delivery" in Ff can mean only "for delivery at her hands," which is strained and awkward

81 *o'erworn*] Compare Chapman (?), *Alphonsus Emperor of Germany*, 1654, 1 2 "Joachim Carolus, Marquess of Brandenburg, o'erworn with age"

82 *gentlewomen*] There was no question of Elizabeth's gentry Richard

brackets her name with that of Mistress Shore in a spirit of malicious insinuation That erroneous accounts of her origin were current appears from a phrase in the translation of Polydore Vergil (ed Ellis, 1844, p 117), where the king is said to have kept his marriage secret "because the woman was of meane caulynge"

83 *gossips*] familiar acquaintances So *Gammer Gurton's Needle*, 1575, "mother Chat, my gossip", *Midsummer Night's Dream*, II 1 47, *Merchant of Venice*, III 1 9, Jonson, *Bartholomew Fair*, 1614, 1 1 "All the poets and poet-suckers in town are the players' gossips" Nares quotes Verstegen for the origin of the word, "Such as undertooke for the child at baptisme, called each other by the name of *Godsib*, that is, of kin together through God" The sense of vulgar familiarity implied by Richard is found in *Piers the Plowman*, B text, v 310 (A text, 152), and Chaucer, *Canterbury Tales*, D 548 Compare Fr *compère commere*.

We speak no treason, man, we say the king 90  
 Is wise and virtuous, and his noble queen  
 Well struck in years, fair, and not jealous,  
 We say that Shore's wife hath a pretty foot,  
 A cherry lip, a bonny eye, a passing pleasing tongue,  
 And that the queen's kindred are made gentle-folks 95  
 How say you, sir? can you deny all this?

*Brak* With this, my lord, myself have nought to do

*Glou* Naught to do with Mistress Shore? I tell thee, fellow,

He that doth naught with her, excepting one,

Were best to do it secretly alone 100

*Brak* What one, my lord?

*Glou* Her husband, knave wouldst thou betray me?

*Brak* I beseech your grace to pardon me, and withal

Forbear your conference with the noble duke

92 *jealous*] Qq, *zealous* Ff 97 *nought*] Qq 1, 6, Ff, *naught* Qq 2 5  
 98-100 *Naught* alone] arranged as Qq 1 7, Ff, Q 8 divide thus, *Naught*  
*Shore?* I tell with her (*Excepting one*) alone 100 to do]  
 Ff, Q 8, he do Qq 1-7 101, 102 *What one* betray me? omitted Q 1  
 103 *beseech*] Qq, do beseech Ff 103, 104 I beseech noble duke]  
 arranged as Capell, Qq divide thus, I beseech forbear Your Duke,  
 Ff thus, I do beseech your Grace To pardon forbear Your Duke  
 (3 lines)

92 *struck in years*] Aldis Wright points out that this phrase means "well gone" or "far run" in years "Struck" is from AS *strican* = to go, run compare Ger *streichen* "Strike" is used with this meaning in a lyric poem on *Springtime*, c 1300 (Morris and Skeat, *Spectemans*, new ed 1879, II 48) "Asse streime þat strikeþ stille" Halliwell, *sub* Strike (2) and Streke, gives thirteenth and fourteenth century examples See *George a Greene*, 1599 "Three men come *striking* through the corn, my love," and *Eastward Ho*, I 1 —

"prouder hopes, which daringly o'erstrike

Their place and means"

Elizabeth could not be said to be "struck in years" or "o'erworn" (line 81) She was about thirty seven when Edward IV died All Richard's remarks are coloured by insinuation

*jealous*] a trisyllable Ff print "jealous" Compare Drayton, *Eng Her Epp* 1597, Mary of France to Charles Brandon, 72 "That we by

nature all are *jealous*," where the same pronunciation is necessary

94 Steevens emended the metre by giving a whole line to "A cherry lip" Pope omitted "a bonny eye" Is it not possible that the line is a snatch from some old song in "fourteen" metre?

94 *bonny*] Compare 2 *Henry VI* v 11 12, *Much Ado About Nothing*, II III 69, Greene, *Frisar Bacon* (Dyce, 174) —

"May it please your highness give me leave to post

To Fresingfield, I'll fetch the bonny girl"

100 *Were best to do it*] The ordinary phrase would be "he . . . were best do it" Compare *Taming of the Shrew*, v 1 15, Lyly, *Alexander and Campaspe*, iv 1 "You were as good eat my master" The earliest example cited in *New Eng Dict* belongs to 1483. Before that time the pronoun was in the dative, "him were best" The reading in Qq is confused and ungrammatical, and I have found no parallel for it.

*Clar* We know thy charge, Brakenbury, and will obey 105

*Glow* We are the queen's abjects, and must obey

Brother, farewell I will unto the king,

And, whatsoever you will employ me in,

Were it to call King Edward's widow sister,

I will perform it to enfranchise you. 110

Meantime, this deep disgrace in brotherhood

Touches me deeper than you can imagine.

*Clar* I know it pleaseth neither of us well

*Glow* Well, your imprisonment shall not be long,

I will deliver you, or else lie for you 115

Meantime, have patience

*Clar* I must perforce farewell.

[*Exeunt Clarence, Brakenbury, and guard*]

*Glow* Go, tread the path that thou shalt ne'er return,

Simple, plain Clarence!—I do love thee so,

That I will shortly send thy soul to heaven,

If heaven will take the present at our hands 120

But who comes here? the new-delivered Hastings?

*Enter* LORD HASTINGS

*Hast* Good time of day unto my gracious lord!

*Glow* As much unto my good lord chamberlain!

Well are you welcome to this open air

How hath your lordship brook'd imprisonment? 125

*Hast* With patience, noble lord, as prisoners must,

But I shall live, my lord, to give them thanks

That were the cause of my imprisonment.

108 *whatsoever*] *whatsoever* Ff, *whatsoever* Qq 115 *or else*] Ff, or Qq  
*Exeunt guard*] Capell, *Exit Clar* (or *Cla*) Qq, Ff 124 *this*] Qq 3-8,  
 Ff, the Qq 1, 2

106 *abjects*] used in an exaggerated sense for "subjects" Monck Mason and others explain, "the most servile of her subjects" So Lyly, *Alexander and Campaspe*, 1. 1 "You shall not be as *abjects* of war, but as subjects to Alexander" There is a similar play between "object" and "object" in *Henry VIII* 1. 1. 127

109 *King Edward's widow*] i. e. the widow whom King Edward has made his wife

115 *lie for you*] On their face, the words mean, "lie in prison instead of you" But Gloucester, no doubt, uses "lie" in a double sense He really means "I will deliver you, or else will tell falsehoods about you" See below, lines 147, 148

116 *patience perforce*] Steevens sees an allusion to the proverb "*Patience perforce* is a medicine for a mad dog"

*Glou* No doubt, no doubt, and so shall Clarence too,  
 For they that were your enemies are his, 130  
 And have prevail'd as much on him as you.  
*Hast* More pity that the eagle should be mew'd,  
 While kites and buzzards prey at liberty  
*Glou.* What news abroad?  
*Hast* No news so bad abroad as this at home 135  
 The king is sickly, weak, and melancholy,  
 And his physicians fear him mightily.  
*Glou* Now, by Saint Paul, that news is bad indeed!  
 O, he hath kept an evil diet long,  
 And overmuch consum'd his royal person: 140  
 'Tis very grievous to be thought upon  
 What, is he in his bed?

*Hast* He is

*Glou* Go you before, and I will follow you [*Exit Hastings*]  
 He cannot live, I hope, and must not die 145  
 Till George be pack'd with post-horse up to heaven  
 I'll in, to urge his hatred more to Clarence,  
 With lies well steel'd with weighty arguments;  
 And if I fail not in my deep intent,  
 Clarence hath not another day to live; 150  
 Which done, God take King Edward to his mercy,  
 And leave the world for me to bustle in!

132 *eagle*] Qq, *Eagles* Ff 133 *While*] Qq, *Whiles* Ff *prey*] Qq, *play*  
 Ff 138 *Saint Paul*] Qq, S. *John* Ff. *that*] Ff, *this* Qq 142 *What*,  
 is *he*] Qq, *Where is he*, Ff

136 *sickly*] See below, II III 30,  
 "this *sickly* land," and compare Lyly,  
*Euphues* (Arber, 227) "Cassander  
 being both aged and *sickly*, found such  
 weakness in himselfe, that he thought  
 nature would yeeld to death"

137 *fear*] fear for *New Eng Dict*  
 suggests that the pronoun may origin-  
 ally have been in the dative, like *Lat*  
*timere alius*, and quotes Berners, *Hys-*  
*torye of the moost noble and valiaunt*  
*Knyght Arthure of lytell Brytayne*, c  
 1530 (ed 1814, p 213) "Arthur tered  
 his horse, lest that the lyon sholde haue  
 slayne him" See also *Merchant of*  
*Venice*, III v 3, 33, *1 Henry IV* IV  
 1 24

139 *evil diet*] So More (ap Holin-  
 shed, III 712) "The king his brother  
 (whose life he looked that *euill diet*  
 should shorten)"

148 *steel'd*] pointed with steel, like  
 a lance, and so, armed, fortified  
 Compare *2 Henry VI* III 1 331  
 "Now, York, or never, *steel* thy fearful  
 thoughts," where, however, "*steel*"  
 approximates more nearly to the sense  
 of "harden," as "the *steeld* gaoler"  
 in *Measure for Measure*, IV II 90

152 *bustle*] busy myself energeti-  
 cally Compare Lyly, *Alexander and*  
*Campaspe*, IV 1 "See, they begin to  
 flock, and behold my master *bustles*  
 himself to fly", *Merry Devil of Ed-*

For then I'll marry Warwick's youngest daughter  
 What though I killed her husband and her father?  
 The readiest way to make the wench amends 155  
 Is to become her husband and her father  
 The which will I, not all so much for love  
 As for another secret close intent,  
 By marrying her which I must reach unto  
 But yet I run before my horse to market 160  
 Clarence still breathes, Edward still lives and reigns,  
 When they are gone, then must I count my gains [Exit

SCENE II — *The same Another street*

*Enter the corpse of KING HENRY VI, Gentlemen with halberds  
 to guard it, LADY ANNE being the mourner*

Anne Set down, set down your honourable load—

If honour may be shrouded in a hearse—

Whilst I awhile obsequiously lament

The untimely fall of virtuous Lancaster

Poor key-cold figure of a holy king! 5

SCENE II *The same Another street* Capell *Enter mourner* Enter  
*the Coarse of Henry the sixt with Halberds to guard it Mourner Ff,*  
*Enter Lady Anne, with the hearse of Harry the 6 Qq 1 load] Ff, l [rest*  
*imperfect] Q 1, lord Qq 2-8*

monton, 1617 "Let us alone to bustle 158 *secret close*] The second ad  
 for the set" In the same play, the jective intensifies the first compare  
 keeper Brian uses the word thus — "secretly alone" above, line 100 For

"Let me alone to bustle with your fathers, "close" compare below, IV 11 35

I warrant you that I will keep them  
 play

Till you have quit the Chase"

154 *her husband and her father*  
 For the traditional part taken by  
 Richard in the slaying of Prince Ed-  
 ward after Tewkesbury, see below, I 11  
 242, and 3 *Henry VI* v v 39 "Her  
 father" cannot mean Warwick Glou-  
 cester commanded the vanguard at  
 Barnet, where Warwick fell, but only  
 in this general sense could he be called  
 Warwick's murderer On the other  
 hand, he was credited with the murder  
 of Henry VI, Anne's father in law  
 The later Qq use "father" for "father-  
 in-law" below, I 11 231, and compare  
*Romeo and Juliet*, IV 1 2, etc

## Scene II

3 *obsequiously*] as befits a funeral,  
 mournfully Compare 3 *Henry VI* II  
 v 118 For the more usual and modern  
 sense, see *Merry Wives of Windsor*,  
 IV 11 2, and *Othello*, I 1 46

5 *key-cold*] as cold as a key, &c  
 very cold Aldis Wright quotes Gower,  
*Confessio Amantis*, VI 244-7 —

"For certes there was never here

Ne frozen is vpon the walle

More inly cold, than I am alle"

Compare *Lucrece*, 1774, Decker, *Seven  
 Deadly Sinnes of London*, 1606 (Arber,  
 p 19) "Such fellows [the porters at  
 the city gates] are *key cold* in their  
 comming downe to Strangers except

Pale ashes of the house of Lancaster!  
 Thou bloodless remnant of that royal blood!  
 Be it lawful that I invoke thy ghost,  
 To hear the lamentations of poor Anne,  
 Wife to thy Edward, to thy slaught'ed son, 10  
 Stabb'd by the selfsame hand that made these wounds!  
 Lo, in these windows that let forth thy life  
 I pour the helpless balm of my poor eyes  
 O cursed be the hand that made these holes!  
 Cursed the heart that had the heart to do it! 15  
 Cursed the blood that let this blood from hence!  
 More direful hap betide that hated wretch,  
 That makes us wretched by the death of thee,  
 Than I can wish to adders, spiders, toads,  
 Or any creeping venom'd thing that lives! 20

11 hand] Ff, hands Qq wounds] Ff, holes Qq 12 these] Ff, those Qq  
 14 O cursed] Ff, Curs'd Qq these] Ff, these fatall Qq 1, 2, the fatall Qq  
 3-8 15 Curs'd] Ff, Curs't be Qq 16 Curs'd hence!] Ff, omitted  
 Qq 19 adders] Qq, Wolues, to Ff

they be brybed" The earliest example in *New Eng Dict* is of 1529 Mr Craig furnishes several examples, e.g. John Heywood, *Proverbs*, 1546 (ed Sharman, 1876, p 121) "Hot as a toste, it grew cold as a kay", Fletcher, *Wild Goose Chase*, 1652, iv 3 "till they be key cold dead, there's no trusting of 'em"

8 *invoke*] invoke, as I Henry VI i 1 52 *New Eng Dict* quotes *Institution of a Christian Man*, 1537 "Whensoever I do *invoke* and call upon him in right faith and hope" Compare Milton, *Samson Agonistes*, 1671, 1146 —

"Go to his Temple, *invoke* his aid  
 With solemnest devotion"

11 *hand*] In line 92 below, Ff apparently fall into the error of printing "hands" for "hand," which in this line they correct

19 *adders*] In favour of Ff it may be conceded that "any creeping venom'd thing" in the next line does not necessarily refer to the creatures mentioned in this. At the same time, "wolves" is incongruous with "spiders, toads" The alteration in Ff could hardly be a mere editorial conjecture, for which no reason could be alleged but the recur-

rence of the same syllable in "adders" and "spiders" If, as is likely, the editor of F 1 was conservative in his emendations, the probability is that some intended alteration, begun, but not extended to the whole line, had found its way into the margin of the corrected Q which he used, and was embodied by him in his new text with out question Spedding's view was that Shakespeare had begun such an alteration, intending to change "creeping venom'd things," significant of treacherous and underhand dealing, into words compatible with acts of open violence This theory is somewhat discounted by the fact that "open violence" is hardly characteristic of a wolf's behaviour Pickersgill thought that Ff represented Shakespeare's original text, and thus expressed the "blood-thirsty ferocity" of Gloucester by "wolves," and by the rest the loathing which Anne felt for him For Richard's biting, wolfish nature is insisted upon in these plays But Qq give us a more consistent reading, whether it be due to Shakespeare or not, which is also more in keeping with the general sense of the passage.

If ever he have child, abortive be it,  
 Prodigious, and untimely brought to light,  
 Whose ugly and unnatural aspect  
 May fright the hopeful mother at the view,  
 And that be heir to his unhappiness ! 25  
 If ever he have wife, let her be made  
 More miserable by the death of him  
 Than I am made by my young lord and thee !  
 Come now towards Chertsey with your holy load,  
 Taken from Paul's to be interred there, 30  
 And still, as you are weary of this weight,  
 Rest you, whiles I lament King Henry's corse

*Enter GLOUCESTER*

*Glou* Stay, you that bear the corse, and set it down !  
*Anne* What black magician conjures up this fiend,  
 To stop devoted charitable deeds ? 35  
*Glou* Villains, set down the corse ! or, by Saint Paul,  
 I'll make a corse of him that disobeys !  
*Gent* My lord, stand back, and let the coffin pass

25 *And that* unhappiness !] Ff, omitted Qq 26 *made*] *mad* Q 6  
 27 *More*] Ff, As Qq 28 *Than*] *Then* Ff, As Qq *young*] Ff, *poore* Qq  
 31 *weary*] Qq 1, 2, Ff, *a wearie* Qq 3 6 *this*] Ff, *the* Qq 36 *Villains*] *Villaines* F 1, *Villaine* Qq 38 *My Lord*] omitted Q 6

22 *prodigious*] monstrous, unnatural  
 Compare *King John*, III 1 46

25 *unhappiness*] capacity for working mischief "Unhappy" is mischievous see *All's Well that Ends Well*, IV v 66, and compare Skelton, *Against Venemous Tongues* "Such tongues unhappy hath made great division" Compare Lyly, *Alexander and Campaspe*, v 4 "I am no thought catcher, but I guess unhappily", Fletcher and Massinger, *Elder Brother*, 1637, III 5 "He speaks unhappily", Wilkins, *Miseries of Injurious Marriage*, 1607, act v "I am sure they are greater sinners that made this match, and were unhappy men", Psalm xiv 7 (Prayer-Book version) "Destruction and unhappiness is in their ways"

29, 30 See Holinshed, III 690, 691  
 The body of Henry VI was "conueied

with biles and glaues pompouslie (if you will call that a funerall pompe)" from the Tower to St Paul's on Ascension Eve, 22nd May, 1471. It remained in St Paul's during Ascension Day "on a beire or coffin bare faced," where it was reported to have bled in the presence of spectators. It was then taken to the Blackfriars, "and bled there likewise." Next day, it was taken by boat to Chertsey "without priest or clerke, torch or taper, singing or saieing," and was buried in the abbey. Richard III, in August, 1484, removed the body to St George's Chapel at Windsor. Henry VII strove to obtain leave from Pope Julius II for the removal of the body from Windsor to Westminster.

36 *by Saint Paul*] Richard's favourite oath, as above, I 1 138, below, line 41, III. IV 78, etc

*Glou* Unmanner'd dog, stand thou when I command!

Advance thy halberd higher than my breast, 40

Or, by Saint Paul, I'll strike thee to my foot,

And spurn upon thee, beggar, for thy boldness!

*Anne* What, do you tremble? are you all afraid?

Alas, I blame you not, for you are mortal,

And mortal eyes cannot endure the devil 45

Avaunt, thou dreadful minister of hell!

Thou hadst but power over his mortal body,

His soul thou canst not have, therefore be gone

*Glou* Sweet saint, for charity, be not so curst

*Anne* Foul devil, for God's sake, hence, and trouble us not! 50

For thou hast made the happy earth thy hell,

Fill'd it with cursing cries and deep exclams

If thou delight to view thy heinous deeds,

Behold this pattern of thy butcheries

O gentlemen, see, see! dead Henry's wounds 55

39 *Unmanner'd* command] one line as Qq, two lines Ff, divided after  
dog stand] Qq 1-7, Ff 2 4, stand'st F 1, Q 8 50 *Foul devil* us not]  
one line as Qq, two lines Ff, divided after devil

39 *Unmanner'd*] unmannerly So Beaumont and Fletcher, *Faithful Shepherdess*, c 1609, ii 4 "I fear I am too much *unmanner'd*, far too rude." Forms of this kind are common in Shakespeare Compare above, line 20, "venom'd" for "venomous", *Measure for Measure*, iii 1 121, "delighted" for "delightful", *ibid* iii 1 62, "unshunned" for "unavoidable", *ibid* iv 1 13, "unpitied" for "pitiless" 49 *curst*] spiteful, cantankerous *New Eng Dict* quotes Coverdale, *Spirit Perle*, 1550, who calls Xanthippe Socrates' "*curst* and shrewd wife," a phrase repeated by Shakespeare, *Taming of the Shrew*, i 1 70 Compare Lodge, *Wounds of Civil War*, 1594, act ii —

"No, Sylla, my discourse is resolute,

Not cou'd to please thy fond and *curst* thoughts";

Marlowe, *Edward II*, 1594, v 2

"Speak *curstly* to him" The proverb "God sends a *curst* cow short horns" is quoted in *Much Ado About Nothing*, ii. i. 25. Mr. Craig furnishes several

instances of references to this proverbial use, e.g. North's Plutarch, 1579, *Life of Crassus* (ed Rouse, 1899, vi 13) "The manner was then at Rome, if any man had a *curst* bullock that would strike with his horn, to wind hay about his head"

50 *exclams*] Compare *Richard II*. i 1 2, *Troilus and Cressida*, v 111. 91, Kyd, *Spanish Tragedy*, act iii — "Mine *exclams*, that have surcharg'd the air

With ceaseless plants"

54 *pattern*] Compare *Othello*, v 11. 11, Haughton, *Grim the Collier of Croydon*, c 1599, act 1 "Stand forth, thou ghastly *pattern* of despair" The use may be illustrated by Machin and Markham, *Dumb Knight*, act iii "Ascend, poor model [of] calamity"

55 The current legend was (see note on lines 29, 30) that Henry VI's corpse bled in the presence of eye-witnesses Shakespeare, for dramatic purposes, combines this legend with the common superstition that dead bodies bled in the presence of their murderers Instances are given by Brand, *Pop*.

Open their congeal'd mouths and bleed afresh  
 Blush, blush, thou lump of foul deformity!  
 For 'tis thy presence that exhales this blood  
 From cold and empty veins where no blood dwells  
 Thy deed, inhuman and unnatural, 60  
 Provokes this deluge most unnatural  
 O God, which this blood mad'st, revenge his death!  
 O earth, which this blood drink'st, revenge his death!  
 Either heav'n with lightning strike the murderer dead,  
 Or earth, gape open wide and eat him quick, 65  
 As thou dost swallow up this good king's blood,  
 Which his hell-govern'd arm hath butchered!

*Glou* Lady, you know no rules of charity,

Which renders good for bad, blessings for curses

*Anne* Villain, thou know'st no law of God nor man 70

No beast so fierce but knows some touch of pity

*Glou* But I know none, and therefore am no beast

*Anne* O wonderful, when devils tell the truth!

*Glou* More wonderful, when angels are so angry

Vouchsafe, divine perfection of a woman, 75

60 *deed*] Qq, *deeds* Ff 70 *no*] Qq, *nor* Ff 73 *truth*] *troth* Q 1

*Antiquities*, ed Ellis, new ed 1901, iii 229-32 Steevens quotes *Arden of Feversham*, 1592 —

"The more I sound his name, the more he bleeds

This blood condemns me, and in gushing forth

Speaks as it falls, and asks me why I did it"

Aldis Wright notices Scott's use of the tradition in *Fair Maid of Perth*, 1828, ch xxiii See Scott's note on his employment of the legend

58 *exhales*] draws out Compare line 165 below For the simplest sense of the word see Jonson, *Poetaster*, iii 1

"Nay, I beseech you, gentlemen, do not *exhale* me thus", and Pistol, *more suo*, in *Henry V* ii 1 66 The true sense of the Latin derivation, "to breathe out," is overlooked by Shakespeare and his contemporaries Shakespeare usually applies the word to a meteor or "bright exhalation" *drawn out* of matter by the sun, not *breathed out* in vapour Compare Lodge and

Greene, *Looking Glass for London* (Dyce, 123) —

"These are but common *exhalations*, Drawn from the earth",

Decker, *Bel Man of London*, pref (Smeaton, 68) "But of such rare temper are your eyes, that (as if they had sunbeames in them) they are able to *exhale* up all these contagious breathes which poison a kingdom"

75 80 Qq seem preferable to Ff The parallelism of lines 75-77 and 78-80 requires "evils" in line 76, and "a man" in line 78, to give the passage its full weight and balance On the other hand, Ff, by substituting "Of" instead of "For" in line 79, preserve the balance at the expense of grammar Either the editor of Ff was misled by his MS, or attempted in lines 76, 78 metrical emendations on his own account "Evils," in the first case, has a monosyllabic value in the second, there was no necessity for giving "infection" its full value of four syllables by cutting the indefinite article out of

Of these supposed evils, to give me leave,  
By circumstance but to acquit myself

*Anne* Vouchsafe, defus'd infection of a man,

For these known evils, but to give me leave,

By circumstance to curse thy cursed self 80

*Glou* Fairei than tongue can name thee, let me have

Some patient leisure to excuse myself

*Anne* Fouler than heart can think thee, thou canst make

No excuse current, but to hang thyself

*Glou* By such despair, I should accuse myself. 85

*Anne* And, by despairing, shouldst thou stand excus'd

For doing worthy vengeance on thyself,

That didst unworthy slaughter upon others

*Glou* Say that I slew them not?

*Anne* Why, then they are not dead

But dead they are, and, devilish slave, by thee 90

*Glou* I did not kill your husband

*Anne.*

Why, then he is alive.

*Glou.* Nay, he is dead, and slain by Edward's hand

76 evils] Qq, crimes Ff 78 a man] Qq, man Ff 79 For] Qq, Of Ff  
83, 84 Fouler . hang thyself] two lines as Qq, three lines Ff, divided after  
thee, current 86 shouldst] Qq, shalt Ff 88 That] Ff, Which Qq 89  
Why, then they are not dead] Qq, Then say they were not slain Ff 92 hand]  
Qq, hands Ff

the line In line 79 the MS is probably entirely to blame, but the editor, if this is the case, ought to have detected its error Spedding suggested that "curse" in line 80 was to have been altered into "accuse," thus explaining the variation in line 79, but this conjecture applies merely to his own general theory

77 By circumstance] by detailed argument, circumstantially Compare *Two Gentlemen of Verona*, I i 36, 37, *Trinities and Cressida*, III iii 114, *Cymbeline*, II iv 61

78 defus'd] diffused i.e. spread abroad (compare Milton, *Samson Agonistes*, 118), and so, shapeless See Mr Craig's note on *King Lear*, I iv. 2, and Mr Hart on *Merry Wives of Windsor*, IV iv 55 [54]

78 infection] a retort to "perfection" in line 75 The original sense of the word is a "corrupted or diseased con-

dition" *New Eng Dict* quotes Burton, *Anatomy of Melancholy*, 1621, I. § 1 3 1 (ed Shilleto, 1896, I 193) [Melancholy is, according to Galen] "a privation or infection of the middle cell of the head"

82. patient] tranquil Compare the verbal use of "patient" in *Titus Andronicus*, I i 121

89 dead] Qq add to the force of "dead they are" in the next line, and so to that of the whole passage

92 Holinshed's account (taken from Halle) of Prince Edward's murder (III 688) is that Edward IV "thrust him from him, or (as some saie) stroke him with his gantlet, whom, incontinentlie, George duke of Clarence, Richard duke of Gloucester, Thomas Greie marquisse Dorset, and William lord Hastings, that stood by, suddenlie murdered" See below, lines 241, 242, I III 210-12; I IV 52-57. Also compare the scene of

*Anne* In thy foul throat thou liest Queen Margaret saw  
 Thy murderous falchion smoking in his blood,  
 The which thou once didst bend against her breast, 95  
 But that thy brothers beat aside the point  
*Glou* I was provoked by her slanderous tongue,  
 That laid their guilt upon my guiltless shoulders  
*Anne* Thou wast provoked by thy bloody mind,  
 That never dreamt on ought but butcheries 100  
 Didst thou not kill this king?  
*Glou* I grant ye  
*Anne* Dost grant me, hedge-hog? Then God grant me too  
 Thou may'st be damned for that wicked deed!  
 O, he was gentle, mild, and virtuous!  
*Glou* The better for the King of heaven, that hath him 105  
*Anne* He is in heaven, where thou shalt never come  
*Glou* Let him thank me, that help to send him thither,  
 For he was fitter for that place than earth  
*Anne* And thou unfit for any place but hell  
*Glou* Yes, one place else, if you will hear me name it 110  
*Anne* Some dungeon  
*Glou* Your bed-chamber

93 *In thy saw*] one line as Qq, two lines Ff, divided after *ly'st* 94  
*murderous*] *murderous* Ff, *bloody* Qq 1, 2, *bloody* Qq 3 6 98, 100 *That*] Ff  
*Which* Qq 100 *dreamt*] Qq, *dream'st* Ff 101 *ye*] Ff, *ye* Qq 3 8, *yea*  
 Qq 1, 2 102 *Dost grant me too*] one line as Qq, two lines Ff, divided  
 after *hedge hog* 103 *may'st be damned*] Ff *maiest be damnd* Qq 1, 2, *maiest*  
*be damned* Qq 3-6 105 *better*] Ff, *fitter* Qq 110 *you*] Qq 1, 2, 6-8, Ff,  
 106 Qq 3 5

the murder, *3 Henry VI* v v 38 40  
 In *The True Tragedie of Richard Duke*  
*of Yorke*, sc xxi, Edward is the murder-  
 er. From the same source, and  
 from no historical authority, comes the  
 story, repeated in *3 Henry VI*, and  
 below, line 95, that Gloucester threat-  
 ened Queen Margaret's life on the same  
 occasion

101 Gloucester's admission is in  
 entire keeping with the audacity of his  
 character as Shakespeare designed it.  
 It need hardly be said that it rests on  
 no historical basis. The only authority  
 for Richard's guilt in the case of Henry  
 VI was "constant fame" (Holinshed,  
 iii 690)

107 *help*] For the strong preterite,

compare *King John*, i 1 240, *King*  
*Lear*, iii vii 62. Pope altered it here  
 to "help'd." Kyd, *Spanish Tragedy*,  
 act iii, uses "help" as past participle,  
 "He runs to kill, whom I have *help* to  
 catch." Tennyson is fond of this form  
 of the preterite, e.g. *Princess*, i 198,  
 "and himself *help* to lace us up."

111 The broken metre emphasises  
 the brevity of Anne's taunt and Glou-  
 cester's retort. There is room for a  
 pause between the two, to allow him  
 to recover from the stinging severity  
 of her answer. The proposed emenda-  
 tions—e.g. Steevens, "Some dungeon  
 perhaps *Glou*, Your bed chamber," in  
 which "dungeon" is a trisyllable—  
 seem to be unnecessary.

*Anne* Ill rest betide the chamber where thou liest!

*Glou* So will it, madam, till I lie with you.

*Anne* I hope so

*Glou* I know so But, gentle Lady Anne,  
To leave this keen encounter of our wits 115  
And fall something into a slower method,  
Is not the causer of the timeless deaths  
Of these Plantagenets, Henry and Edward,  
As blameful as the executioner?

*Anne* Thou wast the cause and most accurs'd effect 120

*Glou* Your beauty was the cause of that effect,  
Your beauty, that did haunt me in my sleep  
To undertake the death of all the world,  
So I might live one hour in your sweet bosom

*Anne* If I thought that, I tell thee, homicide, 125

These nails should rend that beauty from my cheeks

*Glou* These eyes could not endure that beauty's wrack,  
You should not blemish it, if I stood by  
As all the world is chcered by the sun,  
So I by that, it is my day, my life 130

115 *keen*] Q 1, Ff, *kind* Qq 2-8 116 *something*] Ff, *somewhat* Qq  
120 *wast*] Ff, *art* Qq 122 *that*] Ff, *which* Qq 124 *live*] Ff, *rest* Qq  
126 *rend*] Qq, *rent* Ff 127 *not*] Ff, *neuer* Qq *that*] Ff, *sweet* Qq  
128 *it*] Ff, *them* Qq

116 *slower method*] Steevens explains as "more serious," i.e. slow as opposed to "quick" in the sense of "lively" Perhaps "more deliberate" is a better interpretation

117 *timeless*] untimely Aldis Wright notices Shakespeare's use of the word in his earliest plays and poems e.g. *Richard II* iv 1 5, *Romeo and Juliet*, v iii 162, *Lucrece*, 44 Compare Marlowe, *Tamburlaine*, 1590, v 3 "Let Earth and Heaven his *timeless* death deplore" R C Browne, on Milton, *Death of Fair Infant*, line 2 (Clar Press ed 1 250), refers to Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, vi 2 14, where "knightlesse" = unknighly

120 *effect*] efficient power, agent Richard is at once the causer and the executioner of the deaths of Henry and Edward Malone understood the passage thus "Effect," meaning "agency, operative influence," is used

by Marlowe, *Doctor Faustus*, c 1588, sc x "none . . . can compare with thee for the rare *effects* of magic", and *New Eng Dict* gives a more recent instance from Sir David Brewster's *Natural Magic*, 1833 "It will act like a concave when the cooling *effect* has reached the axis" In the present line both "cause" and "effect" are used in a concrete sense, to be retorted in the next with their ordinary abstract meaning Warburton explained "effect" as "executioner," which amounts to the same as Malone's reading, Steevens and Johnson took the word in its usual sense Hanmer proposed "Thou wast the cause and most accurs'd th' *effect*"

128 *blemish it*] i.e. your beauty, referring to line 126 Qq "them" refers, of course, to "cheeks" in line 126, but Gloucester's mention of his eyes in the previous line makes such a reference ambiguous.

*Anne* Black night o'ershade thy day, and death thy life!  
*Glou* Curse not thyself, fair creature, thou art both  
*Anne* I would I were, to be reveng'd on thee  
*Glou* It is a quarrel most unnatural,  
 To be reveng'd on him that loveth thee 135  
*Anne* It is a quarrel just and reasonable,  
 To be reveng'd on him that kill'd my husband  
*Glou* He that bereft thee, lady, of thy husband,  
 Did it to help thee to a better husband  
*Anne* His better doth not breathe upon the earth 140  
*Glou* He lives that loves thee better than he could  
*Anne* Name him  
*Glou* Plantagenet  
*Anne* Why, that was he  
*Glou* The self-same name, but one of better nature  
*Anne* Where is he?  
*Glou* Here [She spitteth at him  
 Why dost thou spit at me?  
*Anne* Would it were mortal poison, for thy sake! 145  
*Glou* Never came poison from so sweet a place,  
*Anne* Never hung poison on a fouler toad  
 Out of my sight! thou dost infect mine eyes  
*Glou* Thine eyes, sweet lady, have infected mine  
*Anne* Would they were basilisks, to strike thee dead! 150

131. *o ershade*] *ore-shade* Ff, *ouershade* or *ouershad* Qq 132 *Curse not both*] one line as Qq, two lines Ff, divided after *creature* 135 *thee*] Ff, you Qq 137 *kill'd*] Ff, *slew* Qq 141 *He*] Ff, *Go to, he* Qq *thee* Ff, you Qq 142 *that*] Qq 1, 2, Ff, *what* Qq 3-8 148 *mine*] Ff, *my* Qq,

141 *He loves*] Qq "go to" at the beginning of the line may have been an ejaculation added on the stage, which found its way into theatrical MSS and so into the text In Qq, the murderers' conversation in I iv is full of such expletives and interjections See also line 187 below

150 *basilisks*] In popular superstition, the basilisk was a creature "with legs, wings, a serpentine and winding tail, and a crest or comb somewhat like a cock" It was the offspring of a cock's egg, hatched under a toad or serpent, and had the power of killing at a distance with the poison of its eye

See Sir T Browne, *Pseud Epid*, 1646 iii 7, where also the real basilisk is described, a small serpent distinguished by its habit of "advancing his head," and by "some white marks or coronary spots on the crown," which gave it its name of *basiliscus* (Vulgate, Ps xci 13) or *regulus* (Prov xxiii 32) Gloucester (3 *Henry VI* iii 11 187) says he will "slay more gazers than the *basilisk*" See also 2 *Henry VI* iii 11 52, 324, *Cymbeline*, ii iv 107, *Winter's Tale*, i ii 388 Compare Jonson, pref. speech to *Postaster* —

"Are there no players here? no poet apes,

*Glou.* I would they were, that I might die at once,  
 For now they kill me with a living death  
 Those eyes of thine from mine have drawn salt tears,  
 Sham'd their aspects with store of childish drops—  
 These eyes, which never shed remorseful tear, 155  
 No, when my father York and Edward wept  
 To hear the piteous moan that Rutland made  
 When black-fac'd Clifford shook his sword at him,  
 Nor when thy warlike father like a child  
 Told the sad story of my father's death, 160  
 And twenty times made pause to sob and weep,  
 That all the standers-by had wet their cheeks,  
 Like trees bedash'd with rain—in that sad time  
 My manly eyes did scorn an humble tear,  
 And what these sorrows could not thence exhale 165  
 Thy beauty hath, and made them blind with weeping  
 I never sued to friend nor enemy,  
 My tongue could never learn sweet smoothing word  
 But, now thy beauty is propos'd my fee,  
 My proud heart sues, and prompts my tongue to  
 speak [She looks scornfully at him. 170  
 Teach not thy lip such scorn, for it was made  
 For kissing, lady, not for such contempt.

154 aspects] Ff, aspect Qq 155-166 These eyes weeping] Ff, omitted  
 Qq 168 smoothing] Ff, Qq 7, 8, soothing Qq 1 6 word] Ff, words Qq  
 170 She looks ] Ff, omitted Qq 171 lip] Ff, lips Qq it was]  
 Ff, they were Qq

That come with *basilisk's* eyes,  
 whose forked tongues  
 Are steep'd in venom, as their  
 hearts in gall",

Fletcher, *False One*, iv 2 —

"I will put a look on, arm'd  
 with all my cunning,  
 Shall meet him like a *basilisk*, and  
 strike him"

Lodge, *Wounds of Civil War*, act II,  
 speaking of the kind of cannon called,  
 for obvious reasons, a *basilisk*, carries  
 out the metaphor in detail —

"these Roman *basilisks*,

That seek to quell us with their  
 currish looks"

157 Rutland] second son of Richard,  
 Duke of York For his supposed murder

by John, Lord Clifford, after the battle  
 of Wakefield, see *3 Henry VI* I III  
 York's tears at the news (line 156) are  
 recorded *ibid* I IV 147 The tidings  
 were brought to Edward and Gloucester  
 on the field of Mortimer's Cross (*ibid*  
 II 1) Warwick (line 159) does not  
 bring them in Shakespeare, but enters  
 after they have been told Gloucester's  
 indignation at the news forbade him to  
 weep Once, however, in *3 Henry VI*  
 (II III 46) he is allowed to "shed re-  
 morseful tear," when the prospect at  
 Towton is unpromising for the Yorkist  
 party

168 smoothing] flattering See be-  
 low, I. III 48, and *2 Henry VI* I I  
 156

If thy revengeful heart cannot forgive,  
 Lo, here I lend thee this sharp-pointed sword,  
 Which if thou please to hide in this true breast, 175  
 And let the soul forth that adoreth thee,  
 I lay it naked to the deadly stroke,  
 And humbly beg the death upon my knee

*[He lays his breast open she offers at it  
 with his sword]*

Nay, do not pause for I did kill King Henry,  
 But 'twas thy beauty that provoked me 180  
 Nay, now dispatch 'twas I that stabb'd young Edward,  
 But 'twas thy heavenly face that set me on

*[Here she lets fall the sword]*

Take up the sword again, or take up me  
*Anne* Arise, dissembler though I wish thy death,  
 I will not be thy executioner 185

*Glou* Then bid me kill myself, and I will do it

*Anne* I have already

*Glou* That was in thy rage  
 Speak it again, and, even with the word,  
 This hand, which, for thy love, did kill thy love,  
 Shall, for thy love, kill a far truer love 190  
 To both their deaths shalt thou be accessary

*Anne* I would I knew thy heart

*Glou* 'Tis figur'd in my tongue.

*Anne* I fear me, both are false

175 *breast*] Ff, *bosom* Qq 177 *the*] *thy* Qq 68, F3 aft 178 *He lays*  
*at it sword*] F (at F 1), omitted Qq 179 *for I Henry*] Ff,  
*'twas I that kild your husband* Qq 181 *stabb'd young Edward*] Ff, *kild*  
*King Henry* Qq aft 182 *lets fall*] Qq, *fals* Ff 185 *thy*] Ff, *the* Qq  
 187 *That*] Ff, *Tush, that* Qq *thy*] *the* Qq 3-7 189 *This*] Ff, *That* Qq  
 191 *shalt thou*] Q 1, Ff, *thou shalt* Qq 2-8

178 *the death*] death after judicial sentence, as St Mark vii 10 "He that curseth father or mother, let him die the death" See *Henry V* iv 1 181, *Measure for Measure*, ii iv 165, Chapman (?), *Alphonsus*, v 2 "Thou shalt obtain thy boon and die the death"  
 183 The line recalls the first part of *Ferrommo*, c 1587 (Dodsley, 1825, iii 68) "Take up thy pen, or I'll take up thee"  
 192-201 Steevens arranged these lines in more or less regular blank verse, his lines end "figur'd in man sword know men ring" (Camb) His divisions are out of keeping with those characteristic of this period of Shakespeare's work, and their metrical accuracy is open to criticism

*Glou* Then never man was true 195  
*Anne* Well, well, put up your sword  
*Glou* Say then my peace is made  
*Anne* That shalt thou know hereafter  
*Glou* But shall I live in hope?  
*Anne* All men, I hope, live so 200  
*Glou* Vouchsafe to wear this ring.  
*Anne* To take is not to give  
*Glou* Look, how my ring encompasseth thy finger  
 Even so thy breast encloseth my poor heart,  
 Wear both of them, for both of them are thine 205  
 And if thy poor devoted servant may  
 But beg one favour at thy gracious hand,  
 Thou dost confirm his happiness for ever  
*Anne* What is it?  
*Glou* That it may please you leave these sad designs- 210  
 To him that hath most cause to be a mourner,  
 And presently repair to Crosby Place,  
 Where, after I have solemnly interr'd  
 At Chertsey monast'ry this noble king,

195. *man was*] Qq 3-8, Ff, *was man* Qq 1, 2. 198 *shalt thou*] Ff, *shall you*  
 Qq 199 *shall I*] Q 1, Ff, *I shall* Qq 2-8 201 *Glou*] Qq, omitted Ff  
 202 *Anne. To . give*] La To *give* Qq, omitted Ff 203 *my*] F 1,  
 this Qq, thy Ff 2-4 thy finger] Qq, F 1, my finger Ff 2 4. 206 *devoted*]  
 Q 1, Ff, omitted Qq 2 8 servant] Ff, suppliant Qq 210 *may*] Ff, *would*  
 Qq you] Ff, *these* Qq 211 *most*] Ff, *more* Qq 212 *Place*] Qq,  
 House Ff

201 Ff continue this line from Anne's speech in the line before, and omit line 202 altogether This omission may be attributed to a quite comprehensible printer's error The passage, as printed, would have read thus —

*An* All men, I hope, live so  
*Rich.* Vouchsafe to wear this ring  
*Rich.* Look, how my ring, etc

In the final revision of F 1, it seems probable that the error was altered summarily the first *Rich* was struck out, and the line was set back so that the V of "Vouchsafe" ranged immediately below the A of "An" The sense was confused by this hasty emendation

212 *presently*] immediately, as III 1 34 below, *Julius Caesar*, III. 1 28,

Philippians II. 23 "Him therefore I hope to send *presently*"

212 *Crosby Place*] See Stow, *Survey*, ed Strype, 1720, I pt II p 106 The site of Crosby Place or House (now called Crosby Hall) was leased in 1466 to Sir John Crosby by the prioress and convent of St Helen's The house, fronting on Bishopsgate Street Within, was built by Sir John, "of stone and timber, very large and beautiful, and the highest at that time in London" Sir John was alive at the time of the burial of Henry VI Later, "Richard, Duke of Gloucester, and lord protector, was lodged in this house," which, in Shakespeare, is the centre from which he works his plots See below, I III 345, etc

And wet his grave with my repentant tears, 215  
 I will with all expedient duty see you  
 For divers unknown reasons, I beseech you,  
 Grant me this boon  
*Anne* With all my heart, and much it joys me too  
 To see you are become so penitent 220  
 Tressel and Berkeley, go along with me  
*Glou* Bid me farewell.  
*Anne* 'Tis more than you deserve,  
 But, since you teach me how to flatter you,  
 Imagine I have said farewell already  
 [Exeunt Lady Anne, Tressel, and Berkeley  
*Glou* Sirs, take up the corse 225  
*Gent* Towards Chertsey, noble lord?  
*Glou* No, to White-Friars, there attend my coming  
 [Exeunt all but Gloucester  
 Was ever woman in this humour woo'd?  
 Was ever woman in this humour won?  
 I'll have her, but I will not keep her long 230  
 What! I, that kill'd her husband and his father.  
 To take her in her heart's extremest hate,  
 With curses in her mouth, tears in her eyes  
 The bleeding witness of her hatred by,

aft 224 *Exeunt* ] *Exit two with Anne* Ff, *Exit* Qq 225 *Glou*  
*Sirs corse*] Qq, omitted Ff aft 227 *Exeunt* ] *Exit* Coarse Ff,  
*Exeunt* *Manet Glo* Qq (aft 228) 231 *What! I*] *What?* I Ff, *What I*  
 Qq 1, 2, 5, 6, *What I?* Qq 3, 4 *his*] Qq 1, 2, Ff, *her* Qq 3-8 232 *hate*]  
 Q 1, Ff, *heate* Qq 2-8 234 *her*] Qq, *my* Ff

224 *farewell already*] After these words, Cibber, regarding the whole scene as in need of some safeguard against criticism, added a remark by Tressel —

“When future chronicles shall speak of this,

This will be thought romance, not history”

227 *White-Friars*] The chroniclers gave Blackfriars as the intermediate stage of Henry's obsequies

228, 229 Kindred passages are found in *Titus Andronicus*, II 1 82, 83, and I *Henry VI* v iii 77, 78 The origin of this effective dramatic tag may spring

from the earlier of these passages, or from some previous play See also the quotation from Greene in Mr Baldon's edition of *Titus Andronicus*, 1904, p 32

234 *her hatred*] Qq reading is preferable Henry's bleeding wounds bore witness to the justice of Anne's hatred Spedding defends Ff by saying that Henry's corpse was the “*motive or ground* of Anne's hatred of Richard, whereas it was really the *witness* of Richard's hatred of her father-in-law” The difference between the readings lies in the sense which “*witness*” is made to bear

Having God, her conscience, and these bars against  
 me, 235  
 And I no friends to back my suit withal  
 But the plain devil and dissembling looks—  
 And yet, to win her, all the world to nothing!  
 Ha!  
 Hath she forgot already that brave prince, 240  
 Edward her lord, whom I, some three months since,  
 Stabb'd in my angry mood at Tewkesbury?  
 A sweeter and a lovelier gentleman,  
 Fram'd in the prodigality of nature,  
 Young, valiant, wise, and, no doubt, right royal, 245  
 The spacious world cannot again afford  
 And will she yet abase her eyes on me,  
 That cropp'd the golden prime of this sweet prince,  
 And made her widow to a woful bed—  
 On me, whose all not equals Edward's moiety— 250  
 On me, that halt and am unshapen thus?  
 My dukedom to a beggarly denier,  
 I do mistake my person all this while!  
 Upon my life, she finds, although I cannot,  
 Myself to be a marvellous proper man. 255

236 *no friends* Ff, *nothing* Qq *withal* Qq 3 8, Ff, *at all* Qq 1, 2 24  
*abase* Ff, *debase* Qq 251 *halt* Qq, *halts* Ff 252 *to* *to be* Qq 5 8.

241 *three months since*] In reality, Tewkesbury was fought on 4th May, Henry was buried on 23rd May, 1471.

244 *the prodigality of nature*] nature's most prodigal mood Holinshed (iii 688) speaks of Prince Edward as "a faire and well proportioned yoong gentleman."

245 *valiant*] must be read as a full trisyllable for the sake of metre. For alterations like Pope's "wise and valiant" there is no need.

245 *royal*] "It is hard to believe that this is what Shakespeare wrote" (Aldis Wright). But why? Gloucester means that Edward no doubt was royal by nature, and not merely by birth—hand some, young, brave, wise, in every respect fit to be a king. Steevens' suggestion that the word contains a sneer

at Edward's legitimacy is possible, but is not needed to make sense, while Johnson's emendation "loyal" (*to his wife*) does not improve matters.

252 *denier*] A small copper coin, equivalent to the twelfth part of a sou or the "tenth part of an English pennie" (Cotgrave). Lat *denarius*. Compare *Taming of the Shrew*, Ind 1 9, Fletcher, *Monsieur Thomas*, 1639, i. 2 —

"No money, no more money, Monsieur Launcelot,

Not a *denier*, sweet signior"  
 The first quotation in *New Eng Dict* is c 1425 "Denier" is also equivalent to a pennyweight in Troy weight.

255 *proper*] handsome, well liking compare *Taming of the Shrew*, i 11 144, *As You Like It*, i 11 129

I'll be at charges for a looking-glass,  
 And entertain a score or two of tailors  
 To study fashions to adorn my body  
 Since I am crept in favour with myself,  
 I will maintain it with some little cost. 260  
 But first I'll turn yon fellow in his grave,  
 And then return lamenting to my love  
 Shine out, fair sun, till I have bought a glass,  
 That I may see my shadow as I pass [Exit

SCENE III — *The Palace*

Enter QUEEN ELIZABETH, LORD RIVERS, and LORD GREY.

Riv Have patience, madam there's no doubt his majesty  
 Will soon recover his accustom'd health

Grey In that you brook it ill, it makes him worse  
 Therefore, for God's sake, entertain good comfort,  
 And cheer his grace with quick and merry words 5

Q Eliz If he were dead, what would betide on me?

Riv No other harm but loss of such a lord

Q Eliz The loss of such a lord includes all harms

Grey The heavens have bless'd you with a goodly son,  
 To be your comforter when he is gone 10

Q Eliz Ah! he is young, and his minority

257 a] Ff, some Qq 258 adorn] adore Qq 3-6 260 some] a Qq 3 8

## Scene III

SCENE III The Palace ] Theobald Queen Elizabeth] Queens Qq, Queene  
 Mother Ff 5 words] Qq, eyes Ff 6 on] Ff, of Qq 8 harms  
 Ff, harme Qq 11 Ah] Ff, Oh Qq

256 at charges] at the expense  
 Compare Chapman, *An Humorous  
 Day's Mirth*, 1599 (ed Shepherd, 1874,  
 p 42) "Here's the poor man hath been  
 at great charges for the preparation of  
 a lottery" For the use of "charge,  
 charges," in the sense of "expense,  
 cost," see Jonson, *Cynthia's Revels*,  
 1600, 1 1 "Amo your travel is  
 your only thing that rectifies Aso  
 I think it be great charge though,  
 sir", Marston, *Malcontent*, 1604, act  
 III "Madam, I am going ambassador  
 for Florence, 'twill be great charges

to me", 1 Maccabees III 30 "He  
 feared that he should not be able to  
 bear the charges any longer"

## Scene III

5 quick] lively compare *Love's  
 Labour's Lost*, v II 283, *Antony and  
 Cleopatra*, v II 216, Jonson, *Cynthia's  
 Revels*, IV 1 "This t're, methinks,  
 makes me look very ingeniously, quick,  
 and spirited" See also line 196  
 below

Is put unto the trust of Richard Gloucester,

A man that loves not me, nor none of you

*Riv* Is it concluded he shall be protector?

*Q Eliz* It is determin'd, not concluded yet, 15

But so it must be, if the king miscarry

*Enter BUCKINGHAM and DERBY*

*Grey* Here come the lords of Buckingham and Derby.

*Buck* Good time of day unto your royal grace!

*Der* God make your majesty joyful as you have been!

*Q. Eliz* The Countess Richmond, good my lord of Derby, 20

To your good prayer will scarcely say amen

Yet, Derby, notwithstanding she's your wife

And loves not me, be you, good lord, assur'd

I hate not you for her proud arrogance.

*Der.* I do beseech you, either not believe 25

The envious slanders of her false accusers;

14 *Is it* [It is Q 6      aft 16 *Derby*] Stanley Theobald (*passim*) 17  
*come the lords*] Qq 1, 2, *comes the Lords* Qq 3 8, *comes the Lord* 1 f 21  
*prayer*] Ff, *prayers* Qq 24 *arrogance*] Qq 1, 2, Ff, *arrogance* Qq 3 8  
25 *do*] Qq 1, 2, Ff, omitted Qq 3 8      26 *false*] Qq 1, 2, Ff, omitted Qq 3 8

15 *determin'd, not concluded*] The matter is settled, but the official formalities are not completed Aldis Wright notes that at Trinity College, Cambridge, the official entries of decisions arrived at by the Master and Seniors are entered in a book called the Conclusion Book A treaty is determined before it is officially concluded So *Merry Devil of Edmonton* —

"After we'll conclude

"The cause of this our coming,"

16 *the betrothal*

16 *miscarry*] Compare *Measure for Measure*, III i 218, Chapman, *All Fools*, 1605, I i —

"How would his father grieve,  
 should he be maim'd,

Or quite miscarry in the ruthless  
 war"

17. *come the lords*] The Ff reading is either due to the printer, or, which is hardly credible, reintroduces an error of the MS which the editor employed It seems likely that the original reading had the old plural "comes the lords," like the quartos from Q 3 onwards, that the editor of F 1 found this both

in his Q and the MS by which he checked it, and that the printer eventually altered "lords" into "lord," perhaps assuming that Buckingham and Derby were two titles of the same person, and certainly anxious to get rid of the plural meaning of "comes"

20 *Countess Richmond*] Margaret Beaufort (1443-1509), daughter and heiress of John Beaufort, first Duke of Somerset, and great-grand-daughter of John of Gaunt She married in 1455 Edmund Tudor (d 1456), Earl of Richmond, son of Owen Tudor and Katharine, widow of Henry V By him she had Henry Tudor, afterwards Henry VII She married secondly, Lord Henry Stafford, a son of the first Duke of Buckingham, and uncle of the Buckingham of this play Her third husband was Thomas, Lord Stanley

25. *not believe*] Compare "not equals" above, I. ii 250.

26 *atonement*] reconciliation, setting at one (at-one-ment). Compare 3 *Henry IV* IV i 221, More (ap Holinshed, III 714) "hauling more regard to their old variance, than their new

Or, if she be accus'd on true report,  
 Bear with her weakness, which, I think, proceeds  
 From wayward sickness, and no grounded malice  
*Riv* Saw you the king to-day, my lord of Derby? 30  
*Der* But now the Duke of Buckingham and I  
 Are come from visiting his majesty  
*Q Eliz* What likelihood of his amendment, lords?  
*Buck* Madam, good hope, his grace speaks cheerfully  
*Q Eliz* God grant him health! Did you confer with him? 35  
*Buck* Ay, madam he desires to make atonement  
 Between the Duke of Gloucester and your brothers,  
 And between them and my lord chamberlain,  
 And sent to warn them to his royal presence  
*Q Eliz* Would all were well!—but that will never be. 40  
 I fear our happiness is at the height

*Enter* GLOUCESTER, HASTINGS, and DORSET

*Glou* They do me wrong, and I will not endure it  
 Who are they that complain unto the king,  
 That I, forsooth, am stein and love them not?  
 By holy Paul, they love his grace but lightly, 45  
 That fill his ears with such dissentious rumours!  
 Because I cannot flatter and look fair,  
 Smile in men's faces, smooth, deceive, and cog,

27 on] Ff, in Qq 32 *Are come*] Ff, *Came* Qq 33 *What*] Qq 3-8, Ff,  
*With* Qq 1, 2 36 *Ay, Madam*] I *Madam* Ff, *Madam we did* Qq 37  
*Between*] Ff, *betwixt* Qq 38 *between*] Ff, *betwixt* Qq 39 *to his*] of  
*his* Q 6 41 *height*] Ff, *highest* Qq 43 *are they*] Qq, *is it* Ff *com-*  
*plain*] Q 8, *complaines* Qq 1 7, Ff 47 *look*] Ff, *speak* Qq

*atonement* See also *Antony and Cleopatra*, II II 102, Fletcher and Massinger, *Spanish Curate*, 1622, III 4 "I have been atoning two most wrangling neighbours" For an intransitive use see *Coriolanus*, IV VI 72 —

"He and Aufidius can no more atone

Than violentest contrariety"

39 *warn*] summon, as *King John*, II I 201

43 "Complaines" in Qq 1-7 is not a singular, but the old plural form Ff seem to attempt to modernise the grammar This might be taken as a re-

turn to an original MS reading, but the tell tale "them," which has been overlooked in the next line, is against this theory

48 *Smooth*] See note on I II 168 above Theobald suggested "sooth" *cog*] used originally of cheating at dice A common word *New Eng Dict* quotes *Dice Play*, 1532 "There be divers kinds of cogging, but of all other the Spanish *cogg* bears the bell, and seldom raises any smoke" Compare *Love's Labour's Lost*, V II 235 "Since you can *cog*, I'll play no more with you" Mr Craig notes that, in Ireland, "to cog" is used by schoolboys

Duck with French nods and apish courtesy,  
 I must be held a rancorous enemy 50  
 Cannot a plain man live and think no harm,  
 But thus his simple truth must be abus'd  
 With silken, sly, insinuating Jacks?

*Grey* To whom in all this presence speaks your grace?

*Glou* To thee, that hast nor honesty nor grace 55  
 When have I injur'd thee? when done thee wrong?  
 Or thee? or thee? or any of your faction?  
 A plague upon you all! His royal person—  
 Whom God preserve better than you would wish!—  
 Cannot be quiet scarce a breathing-while, 60  
 But you must trouble him with lewd complaints

*Q Eliz* Brother of Gloucester, you mistake the matter  
 The king, on his own royal disposition,

52 *his* in Qq 5-8 53 *With* Ff, By Qq 54 *Grey* Ff (Gray Ff 3, 4),  
*R1* or *Ry* Qq *whom* who F 1, home Q 6 *all* omitted Qq 6-8 58  
*person* Qq, *grace* Ff 63 *on* Ff, of Qq

in the sense of "to copy work from another" at an examination, and that a "cog" is used of a translation from a classical author, like the English "crib"

49 *French nods and apish courtesy* In Decker, *Seven Deadly Sinnes of London* (Arber, 35), the fifth sin is "Apishnesse," the sin of "counterfetting or imitation" "Much about the year when *Monsieur* came in, was hee begotten, betweene a French Tayler, and an English Court-Seamster" François, Duke of Alençon, and, after 1574, Duke of Anjou and, by courtesy, Monsieur de France, the youngest son of Henry II and Caterina de' Medici, visited England in 1579 and 1581 as a suitor to Elizabeth, and was regarded for a time as her prospective husband The popular attitude to the foreign marriage is gauged by such allusions as these, which, written several years after the event, retain the deep impression which it created Compare *Eastward Ho* "dost thou think our Englishmen are so Frenchified, that a man knows not whether he be in France or in England, when he sees 'hem'?", Fletcher, *Monsieur Thomas*, 1 2 "Surrah, no more of your French shrugs, I advise you"

53 *Jacks* Used contemptuously

low-bred fellows Compare 1 *Henry IV* II iv 12, *Romeo and Juliet*, II iv 160, Wilkins, *Miseries of Inforst Marriage*, act 1 "Now death of me, shall I be crossed by such a *jack*?", act v "Peace, saucy *Jack*" See also the conversation in Martin Marprelate, *Epistle*, 1588 (Arber, 20), between John Aylmer, Bishop of London, and one Madox "That is my meaning, ka dumb Iohn, and I tell thee Madox that thou art but a *lacke* to use me so Master Madox replying sayd that in deed his name was Iohn, and if every Iohn were a *lacke*, he was content to bee a *lacke* (there he hit my L[jord] ouer the thumbs)"

63-69 *The king* . remove it] The meaning of the sentence is obvious, but the grammar is hopelessly confused The words "royal disposition" have deposed "the king" from its place as the true nominative The words "Aiming hatred" are intended to qualify "royal disposition", the "interior hatred" of Gloucester being the antithesis to the royal nature of the king Elizabeth goes on to explain how this hatred shows itself But she loses the thread of her sentence, and, when she comes to her verb, the "royal disposition" is

And not provok'd by any suitor else—

Aiming, belike, at your interior hatred, 65

That in your outward action shows itself

Against my children, brothers, and myself,

Makes him to send, that thereby he may gather

The ground of your ill-will, and so remove it

*Glou* I cannot tell the world is grown so bad, 70

That wrens make prey where eagles dare not perch

Since every Jack became a gentleman,

There's many a gentle person made a Jack

*Q* *Eliz* Come, come, we know your meaning, brother

Gloucester,

You envy my advancement and my friends' 75

God grant we never may have need of you!

*Glou* Meantime, God grants that we have need of you!

Our brother is imprison'd by your means,

Myself disgrac'd, and the nobility

Held in contempt, while great promotions 80

Are daily given to ennoble those

That scarce, some two days since, were worth a noble

66 *That* Ff, *Which* Qq *action* Ff, *actions* Qq 67 *children* Ff, *kindred* Qq *brothers* Ff, *brother* Qq 68, 69 *that thereby* *The ground so remove it* Steevens, *that thereby* *The ground to remove it* Qq 1-5, *that thereby* *The grounds to remove it* Q 6, *that he may learne the ground* Ff, *whereby* *The ground to remove it* Qq 7, 8 71 *make* Qq 1, 2, Ff, *may* Qq 3-6 75 *my* Q 1, Ff, *mine* Qq 2 8 77 *grants* Qq 1, 2, Ff, *grant* Qq 3-8 *we* Qq, I Ff 80 *while* Ff, *whilst* Qq *great* Ff, *many faire* Qq

uppermost in her mind, and becomes the subject of the sentence Abbott, *Shakespearean Grammar*, § 413, quotes *Cymbeline*, v v 344, 345 —

"Beaten for loyalty

Excited me to treason",

but the case does not seem exactly parallel. In behalf of Qq, Aldis Wright quotes the Prayer-Book version of Ps lxxxviii 81 "That they might put their trust in God, and not to forget," etc. Ff seem to adopt a summary method of emendation by removing the main difficulty. If, on Mr Daniel's theory, the editor of Ff used a copy of Q 6, the plural "grounds" in line 69 would have complicated the problem which he thus solved. Even if the involved construction of the speech is

due to hasty writing, it is exactly the agitated and incoherent defence which a woman would make, face to face with a dangerous enemy, and powerless against his insinuations

72 *every Jack* "Jack" (see note on line 53 above) is here used in the original sense of peasant compare John Heywood, *Proverbs* (Sharman, 61) "*Jacke* would be a gentleman, if he could speake French" (Craig)

77 *need of you* Gloucester plays on the double meaning of "need" Elizabeth has prayed that she and her family may never be under the necessity of asking his help. He rejoins that he and his friends are in necessity owing to her intrigues

- Q Eliz* By Him that rais'd me to this careful height  
 From that contented hap which I enjoy'd,  
 I never did incense his majesty 85  
 Against the Duke of Clarence, but have been  
 An earnest advocate to plead for him!  
 My lord, you do me shameful injury,  
 Falsely to draw me in these vile suspects
- Glou* You may deny that you were not the mean 90  
 Of my Lord Hastings' late imprisonment.
- Riv* She may, my lord, for—
- Glou.* She may, Lord Rivers! why, who knows not so?  
 She may do more, sir, than denying that  
 She may help you to many fair preferments, 95  
 And then deny her aiding hand therein,  
 And lay those honours on your high desert  
 What may she not? she may, ay, marry, may she,—
- Riv* What, marry, may she?
- Glou* What, marry, may she! marry with a king, 100  
 A bachelor and a handsome stripling too  
 I wis your grandam had a worser match
- Q Eliz* My Lord of Gloucester, I have too long borne  
 Your blunt upbraidings and your bitter scoffs  
 By heaven, I will acquaint his majesty 105  
 Of those gross taunts that oft I have endur'd!  
 I had rather be a country servant-maid

90 mean] Ff, cause Qq 92 lord, for—] Ff, Lord Qq 97 desert] Ff,  
 deserts Qq 98 ay] I Ff, yea Qq 101 and] Ff, omitted Qq 106 Of]  
 Ff, With Qq that oft I] Ff, I often Qq

83 careful] full of trouble Compare  
 Lyly, *Euphues* (Arber, 65) "Thou hast  
 hether to founde me a cheerefull com-  
 panion in thy myrth, and nowe shalt  
 thou finde me as carefull with thee in  
 thy moane", Lodge, *Wounds of Civil  
 War*, act v "the coverts of my care  
 full eyes"

89. draw me in] Compare Wilkins,  
*Miseries of Inforced Marriage*, act II  
 "Draw all her soul in th' compass of  
 an oath"

suspects] suspicions, as 2 *Henry VI*  
 III II. 139, Marlowe, *Edward II*  
 1394, act IV "Free from suspect, and  
 fell invasion"

90 deny that you were not] For the  
 intensified negative, *New Eng Dict*  
 quotes Captain Smith, *Virginia*, 1624,  
 IV 157 "Taxing the poore king of  
 treason, who denied to the death not  
 to know of any such matter"

102 I wis] certainly See Mr.  
 Pooler's note on *Merchant of Venice*,  
 II ix, 68 The O E form "iwis" (= A.S. *gewis* compare German *gewiss*)  
 is found as early as the twelfth century,  
 see Morris, *Specimens of E Eng.* 1 2nd  
 ed 1898, p 32 "Mi fleis is wis mete,  
 and mi blod iwis drinke"

102 worser] So *Hamlet*, III IV 157,  
 etc

Than a great queen, with this condition,  
 To be so baited, scorn'd, and stormed at  
 Small joy have I in being England's queen 110

*Enter QUEEN MARGARET, behind*

*Q Mar* And lessen'd be that small, God I beseech Him!

Thy honour, state, and seat is due to me

*Glou* What, threat you me with telling of the king?

Tell him, and spare not look, what I have said,

I will avouch't in presence of the king 115

I dare adventure to be sent to the Tower

'Tis time to speak, my pains are quite forgot

*Q Mar* Out, devil! I do remember them too well

Thou kill'dst my husband Henry in the Tower,

And Edward, my poor son, at Tewkesbury 120

*Glou* Ere you were queen, ay, or your husband king,

I was a pack-horse in his great affairs,

A weeder-out of his proud adversaries,

A liberal rewarder of his friends

To royalise his blood, I spent mine own 125

109 so basted] Ff, thus taunted Qq stormed] Ff, baited Qq aft 110  
 Enter behind] Enter old Queene Margaret Ff, Enter Queen Margaret Qq  
 (aft 109) 111 Him] Ff, thee Qq 113 of] or Q 2, omitted Qq 6-8  
 114 Tell him said] Qq, omitted Ff have] Qq 1, 2, omitted Qq 3-8  
 115 avouch't] Ff, avouch Qq 116 I dare Tower] Ff, omitted Qq 117  
 my] when Q 6 118 Out well] one line as Qq, two lines Ff, divided  
 after Druell do] Ff, omitted Qq 119 kill'dst] Ff, slewest Qq 121  
 Ere you king] one line as Qq, two lines Ff, divided after Queene ay] I  
 Ff, yea Qq 125 spent] Ff, spilt Qq

114-116] The omission of line 114 in Ff may be due to a printer's error. Its loss injures the emphasis, if not the sense the editor can hardly have missed it willingly. If he used Q 6 for his text, he would have found the line imperfect, but he could have corrected it from his MS copy or by mere conjecture. Of course, the MS may have omitted it by mistake, just as it probably supplied line 116. But Ff "avouch't" in line 115 does not necessarily imply such an omission, and it has been kept here as a mere repetition of the object after the verb, which F 1 probably borrowed from MS. The

omission of line 116 in Qq may have been either an error or an unnecessary piece of revision.

125 royalise] A word frequently used by Marlowe and his disciples, e.g. Marlowe, *1 Tamburlaine*, c. 1587, 113 —

"For fates and oracles of Heaven have sworn

To royalise the deeds of Tamburlaine"

Greene, *Friar Bacon* (Dyce, 169) —

"Rich Alexandria drugs Shall royalise the table of my king"

Peele, *Edward I* 1593 (*ibid* 377) —

*Q Mar* Ay, and much better blood than his or thine

*Glou* In all which time you and your husband Grey

Were factious for the house of Lancaster,

And, Riveis, so were you Was not your husband

In Margaret's battle at Saint Albans slain? 130

Let me put in your minds, if you forget

What you have been ere this, and what you are,

Withal, what I have been, and what I am

*Q Mar* A murd'rous villain, and so still thou art

*Glou* Poor Clarence did forsake his father, Warwick, 135

Ay, and forswore himself, which Jesu pardon!

*Q Mar* Which God revenge!

*Glou* To fight on Edward's party for the crown,

And for his meed, poor lord, he is mew'd up

I would to God my heart were flint, like Edward's, 140

Or Edward's soft and pitiful, like mine

I am too childish-foolish for this world

*Q Mar* Hie thee to hell for shame, and leave this world,

Thou cacodemon! there thy kingdom is

126 *Ay*] *I Ff*, *Yea Qq* *Ay* *thine*] one line as *Qq*, two lines *Ff*,  
divided after *blood* 131 *minds*] *minde Q 5*, *mind Qq 6 8* *you*] *Ff*, *yours*  
*Qq* 132 *this*] *Ff*, *now Qq* 136 *Ay*] *I Ft*, *Yea Qq* 142 *childish-*  
*foolish*] *Theobald*, *childish*, *foolish Qq 1, 2*, *childish foolish Qq 3 8*, *Ff* 143  
*this*] *Ff*, *the Qq*

"Illustrious England, ancient seat  
of kings,

Whose chivalry hath *royals'd* thy  
fame"

130 *Margaret's battle at St Albans*  
"Margaret's battle" may mean either  
(1) the battle in which Margaret was  
victorious at St Albans, i.e. the battle  
of Bernard's Heath, 17th February,  
1461, or (2) Margaret's army, as *I*  
*Henry IV* iv 1 129, and see note on  
v iii 11 below. Either is tenable,  
but, if Shakespeare is consistent to his  
error in *3 Henry VI* iii 11 6, the first  
is the more likely.

144 *cacodemon*] simply equivalent to  
"evil demon" *κακοδαίμων* means  
"possessed by an evil spirit", but  
Aristophanes once uses it (*Eq* 112) in  
the sense of "an evil genius". Decker,  
*Lanihorne and Candle-light*, 1608 (ed  
Smeaton, 235), has "The Under  
Sheriffe for the county of the *Caco-*

*demons*, knowing into what arrearages  
these Rank-riders were runne for horse-  
flesh to his maister, sent out his  
writs to attach them" *New Eng Dict*  
quotes Nashe, *Terrors of the Night*,  
1594 "Anie terror, the least illusion in  
the earth is a *Cacodæmon* unto him"  
C I Elton, *William Shakespeare*, 1904,  
pp 315, 316, notes Howell, *Epp Ho-*  
*El*, 1655, ii 76 "I fear, that while  
France sets all wheels a going, and  
stirs all the *Cacodæmons* of Hell to pull  
down the House of *Austria*, she may  
chance at last to pull it upon her own  
head", also *Diary of the Rev John*  
*Ward*, ed Severn, 1839, p 163 "It is  
said of the gunpowder plott, that it  
seemd a piece rather hammerd in hell  
by a conventicle of *cacodemons*, than  
traced by humane invention" In  
Fletcher, *Bloody Brother*, c 1624, iv 2  
(a scene sometimes ascribed to Jonson),  
the twelfth or lowest house in an astro

- Riv* My Lord of Gloucester, in those busy days, 145  
 Which here you urge to prove us enemies,  
 We follow'd then our lord, our sovereign king  
 So should we you, if you should be our king
- Glou* If I should be! I had rather be a pedlar  
 Far be it from my heart, the thought thereof! 150
- Q Eliz* As little joy, my lord, as you suppose  
 You should enjoy, were you this country's king,  
 As little joy you may suppose in me  
 That I enjoy, being the queen thereof
- Q Mar* A little joy enjoys the queen thereof, 155  
 For I am she, and altogether joyless  
 I can no longer hold me patient [Advancing  
 Hear me, you wrangling pirates, that fall out  
 In sharing that which you have pill'd from me!  
 Which of you trembles not that looks on me— 160  
 If not that, I being queen, you bow like subjects,  
 Yet that, by you depos'd, you quake like rebels?  
 Ah, gentle villain, do not turn away!
- Glou* Foul wrinkled witch, what mak'st thou in my sight?
- Q Mar* But repetition of what thou hast marr'd, 165  
 That will I make before I let thee go
- Glou* Wert thou not banished on pain of death?
- Q Mar* I was, but I do find more pain in banishment

147 sovereign] souveraigne Ff, lawfull Qq 148 we you] we now Q 6  
 150 thereof] Ff, of it Qq 151 Q Eliz] Qu Qq 1, 2, Ff, Q M Qq 3, 4,  
 Q Nar Q 5, Qu Mar Q 6 153 you may] Ff, may you Qq aft 157  
 Advancing] Capell 159 sharing] Q 1, Ff, sharing out Qq 2-6 161  
 being] Qq, am Ff 163 Ah] Ff, O Qq 167-69 Glou Wert thou  
 my abode] Ff, omitted Qq

logical scheme of the heavens is called  
 the "cacodeemon," as being significant  
 of misfortune to the native

153 in me] as regards me, in my case  
 158 you wrangling pirates] Mr  
 Craig notes a parallel from 2 Henry  
 VI 1:1 222

159 pill'd] robbed, pillaged Com-  
 pare Richard II 1:1 246 Halliwell  
 and Aldis Wright quote examples of  
 "to rob and pill" from Halle's chronicle  
 "To pill" is the same word as "to  
 pill," i.e. to strip clean Mr Craig  
 supplies an instance from Caxton,

Historye of Reynart the Foxe, 1481  
 (Arber, 114) "thyse false beests  
 whan they be myghty and doubted then  
 ben they extorcionners and scatte and  
 pylle the peple"

160 62 The construction is somewhat  
 involved and confusing "You all  
 tremble as you look on me, if not be-  
 cause, as subjects, you bow in awe of  
 me, your queen, at any rate because,  
 as rebels, you quake before me, the  
 sovereign whom you have deposed"  
 The sense is easy to see, and hard to  
 express

Than death can yield me here by my abode  
 A husband and a son thou ow'st to me, 170  
 And thou a kingdom, all of you allegiance  
 This sorrow that I have by right is yours,  
 And all the pleasures you usurp are mine

*Glou* The curse my noble father laid on thee,  
 When thou didst crown his warlike brows with paper, 175  
 And with thy scorns drew'st rivers from his eyes,  
 And then, to dry them, gav'st the duke a clout  
 Steep'd in the faultless blood of pretty Rutland—  
 His curses, then from bitterness of soul  
 Denounc'd against thee, are all fall'n upon thee, 180  
 And God, not we, hath plagu'd thy bloody deed

*Q Eliz* So just is God to right the innocent

*Hast* O, 'twas the foulest deed to slay that babe,

And the most merciless that e'er was heard of

*Riv* Tyrants themselves wept when it was reported 185

*Dor* No man but prophesied revenge for it

*Buck* Northumberland, then present, wept to see it.

*Q. Mar* What! were you snarling all before I came,

Ready to catch each other by the throat,

And turn you all your hatred now on me? 190

Did York's dread curse prevail so much with heaven,

That Henry's death, my lovely Edward's death,

Their kingdom's loss, my woful banishment,

Should all but answer for that peevish brat?

Can curses pierce the clouds and enter heaven? 195

Why then, give way, dull clouds, to my quick curses!

170 *ow'st to*] Ff, *owest to* Qq 1 5, *owest unto* Qq 6-8 172 *This*] Ff, *The*  
 Qq 173 *are*] Qq 1, 2, Ff, *is* Qq 3 8 176 *scorns*] Ff, *scorne* Qq 178  
*faultless*] omitted Qq 3 8 180 *all*] omitted Qq 3 8 184 *e'er*] *ere* Ff, *ever*  
 Qq 190 *all* *now*] Qq 1, 2, Ff, *now* *all* Qq 2-6 194 *Should*]  
 Ff, *Could* Qq

174 For York's curse see 3 *Henry*  
*VI* i iv 164-66

187 *Northumberland*] See 3 *Henry*  
*VI* i iv 150-51, 169-74 Sir Henry  
 Percy, third Earl of Northumberland,  
 grandson of Hotspur He was killed  
 at Towton, 29th March, 1461

194 *peevish*] childish, fretful Com  
 pare below, iv iv 420 See 3 *Henry*

*VI* v vi 18, Lodge, *Wounds of Civil*  
*War*, act ii "*peevish* eld discoursing  
 by a fire" Below, iii i 31, is an  
 example more nearly approximating  
 to our own use, as meaning "wayward  
 and querulous" "*Peevish*" is con-  
 stantly applied to a boy, as a con-  
 ventional epithet.

Though not by war, by surfeit die your king<sup>c</sup>  
 As ours by murder, to make him a king<sup>l</sup>  
 Edward thy son, that now is Prince of Wales,  
 For Edward my son, that was Prince of Wales, 200  
 Die in his youth by like untimely violence<sup>l</sup>  
 Thyself a queen, for me that was a queen,  
 Outlive thy glory, like my wretched self<sup>l</sup>  
 Long may'st thou live to wail thy children's loss,  
 And see another, as I see thee now, 205  
 Deck'd in thy rights, as thou art stall'd in mine!  
 Long die thy happy days before thy death,  
 And, after many lengthen'd hours of grief,  
 Die neither mother, wife, nor England's queen<sup>l</sup>  
 Rivers and Dorset, you were standeis-by, 210  
 And so wast thou, Lord Hastings, when my son  
 Was stabb'd with bloody daggers—God I pray Him,  
 That none of you may live his natural age,  
 But by some unlook'd accident cut off<sup>l</sup>

*Glou* Have done thy charm, thou hateful wither'd hag<sup>l</sup> 215

*Q Mar* And leave out thee? stay, dog, for thou shalt hear me<sup>l</sup>

If heaven hath any grievous plague in store,  
 Exceeding those that I can wish upon thee,  
 O, let them keep it till thy sins be ripe,  
 And then hurl down their indignation 220

197 *Though*] Ff, *If* Qq 198 *ours*] *our* Qq 3, 5, 6, *out* Q 4 199 *that*] Ff, *which* Qq 200 *my*] Qq, *our* Ff *that*] Ff, *which* Qq 204 *loss*] Qq, *death* Ff 206 *rights*] Q 1, Ff, *glorie* Qq 2-8 211 *wast*] Qq 1, 2, Ff, Q 8, *was* Qq 2 7 213 *his*] Ff, *your* Qq

206 *stall'd*] installed Aldis Wright quotes Greene, *Friar Bacon* (Dyce, 155) "A friar newly *stall'd* in Brazen-nose" Compare *1d*, *Orlando Furioso*, 1594 (Dyce, 95) —

"Nor can there sit within the sacred shrine

Of Venus more than one *installed* heart"

In Decker, *Bel Man of London*, 1608 (Smeaton, 83), a candidate for initiation in the ragged regiment of beggars is asked "if hee were *stalled* to the Rogue or no? the poore Hungarian answered, yes, *He was* then was he asked by Whom he was *Stalled*, and

where, and in what manner of complement it was done"

214 The sense is obvious, but the syntax is elliptic The construction of "cut off" is either (1) co ordinate with the wish in the previous line, "But [that you may be] cut off," or (2) proleptic, "But [that you may live until you are] cut off" This latter is the more probable

219 *them*] Notice the plural pronoun after "heaven," as though Margaret had said "the gods"

220 *elvish-mark'd*] Compare *King John*, III 1 47, and the lines immediately preceding For this malig-

On thee, the troubler of the poor world's peace!  
 The worm of conscience still begnaw thy soul!  
 Thy friends suspect for traitors while thou livest,  
 And take deep traitors for thy dearest friends!  
 No sleep close up that deadly eye of thine, 225  
 Unless it be while some tormenting dream  
 Affrights thee with a hell of ugly devils!  
 Thou elvish-mark'd, abortive, rooting hog!  
 Thou that wast seal'd in thy nativity  
 The slave of nature and the son of hell! 230  
 Thou slander of thy heavy mother's womb!  
 Thou loathed issue of thy father's loins!  
 Thou rag of honour! thou detested——

Glou Margaret!

Q Mar Richard!

Glou Ha!

223 *while*] *whilst* Q 6 226 *while*] Ff, *wholest* or *whilst* Qq 231 *heavy*  
*mother's*] Ff, *mothers heavy* Qq 233 *detested*—] Ff 1, 3, 4, *detested* F 2,  
*detested, &c* Qq

nant sense of "elvish" compare 1 *Boar* advanced his Armes thereon,  
*Jeronimo*, c 1587 —

"Oh fate thou elf!

To kill Andrea, which here kill'd  
 himself"

See also Chaucer, *Canterbury Tales*,  
 G 751 [of alchemy] "our *elvish*  
 craft"

228 *rooting hog*] Richard's badge  
 was a white boar, as below, III ii 11,  
 etc. Stevens cites the "Complaint of  
 Collingbourne" in *Myroure for Magis-  
 trates*, "For where I meant the king  
 by name of *hog*, I only alluded to his  
 badge the bore" In 1484, William  
 Colyngborne, a Wiltshire gentleman,  
 was executed for publishing the dog-  
 grel lines, "The Cat, the Rat, and  
 Louell our dog, Rule all England vnder  
 an *hog*"—"meaning," adds Hallie (ap  
 Holinshed, III 746), "by the *hog*, the  
 dreadfull wild boare, which was the  
 kings cognisance" Fuller, *Worthies*  
*of England*, 1662, p 214, refers to a  
 boar, one of the supporters of a rose in  
 the gateway to the Schools quadrangle  
 at Cambridge, built while Archbishop  
 Rotherham was chancellor of the uni-  
 versity "The truth is that *Rotherham*  
 having felt the Sharp Tuskes of that

meerly to engratiate himself"

230 *slave of nature*] Conjectural  
 emendations, such as "shame of  
 nature," quoted by Theobald, seem  
 unnecessary Aldis Wright explains  
 it as a term of contempt In Fletcher,  
*False One*, iv 2, Cleopatra refers con-  
 temptuously to "hated lucre," on  
 which Caesar has cast his eyes covet-  
 ously, as "the slave of nature" War-  
 burton and Malone both took the phrase  
 here as referring "to the ancient custom  
 of masters branding their profligate  
 slaves", and Malone notes the coup-  
 ling of a "slavish wipe" and "birth-  
 hour's blot" in *Lucrece*, 537 We may  
 compare the application of "stigmatic"  
 to Richard in 3 *Henry VI* v 1 215,  
 and 3 *Henry VI* ii 11 136 Nature,  
 in this sense, has sealed him her slave  
 in his nativity by branding him with  
 deformity

233 *rag*] Compare *Taming of the*  
*Shrew*, iv iii 112, and Mr Bond's note  
 on the passage See also below, v iii.  
 329, Jonson, *Cynthia's Revels*, v 2  
 "Heart! who let in that *rag* there  
 amongst us?" Warburton proposed  
 to read "wrack"

*Q Mar* I call thee not  
*Glou* I cry thee mercy then, for I did think 235  
 That thou hadst call'd me all these bitter names  
*Q Mar* Why, so I did, but look'd for no reply  
 O, let me make the period to my curse!  
*Glou* 'Tis done by me, and ends in "Margaret."  
*Q Elz* Thus have you breath'd your curse against your-  
 self 240  
*Q Mar* Poor painted queen, vain flourish of my fortune!  
 Why strew'st thou sugar on that bottled spider,  
 Whose deadly web ensnareth thee about?  
 Fool, fool! thou whet'st a knife to kill thyself  
 The day will come that thou shalt wish for me 245  
 To help thee curse that poisonous bunch-back'd toad  
*Hast* False-boding woman, end thy frantic curse,  
 Lest to thy harm thou move our patience

235 *I cry* then] *Ff*, *Then I cry thee mercy* *Qq* *did think*] *Ff*, *had*  
*thought* *Qq* 236 *That thou*] *Q* 1, *Ff*, *Thou* *Qq* 2 6 237 *look'd*] *looke*  
*Q* 6 239 *in*] *by* *Q* 6 245 *day*] *Ff*, *time* *Qq* *that*] *Q* 1, *Ff*, *when* *Qq*  
 2 8 246 *poisonous*] *Q* 1, *Ff*, *poisoned* *Qq* 2-8

238 *period*] the conclusion, which  
 rounds off my curse See below, II 1  
 44, *Antony and Cleopatra*, IV xiv  
 107, and compare Fletcher and Mas-  
 singer, *Spanish Curate*, I 3 "The  
*period* of human happiness", *Elder*  
*Brother*, I 2 —

"I might well conclude  
 My name were at a *period*"

241 *painted*] counterfeit So *Ham-  
 let*, III 1 53, refers to fair seeming  
 speeches which are really hollow and  
 empty Compare *Eastward Ho*, act II  
 "marriage is but a form in the school of  
 policy, to which scholars sit fastened  
 only with *painted* chains"

241 *vain flourish*] empty decoration  
 of a fortune which is mine by right We  
 still speak of "flourishes" in connec-  
 tion with ornamental handwriting or a  
 highly decorated speech Compare  
*Hamlet*, V II 187 Steevens quotes  
 Massinger, *Great Duke of Florence*, III  
 1 —

"I allow these  
 As *flourishes* of fortune, with  
 which princes  
 Are often sooth'd"

See also Wilkins, *Miseries of Inforst  
 Marriage*, act III "How ill it will  
 stand with the *flourish* of your reputa-  
 tions," and act V "Who bear a  
*flourish* in the outward show",  
*Fletcher, False One*, I 1 —

"To be honest,  
 Religious and thankful, in them-  
 selves  
 Are forcible motives, and can need  
 no *flourish*"

Or gloss in the persuader"

There is a good parallel to the present  
 line in *Love's Labour's Lost*, IV III  
 238 39 For the verbal use of "flourish"  
 see *Measure for Measure*, IV I 75

242 *bottled*] bottle shaped, swollen  
 applied again to Richard, IV IV 81 be-  
 low Steevens quotes the absurd  
 opinion of Robert Heron, that "a  
*bottled* spider is evidently a spider  
 kept in a bottle long fasting, and of  
 consequence the more spiteful and  
 venomous" Mr Craig ('Little  
 Quarto,' *Richard III* 1904, p 58)  
 notes that the bluebottle fly in North  
 Lincolnshire is called the "bottle  
 fly"

*Q Mar* Foul shame upon you! you have all mov'd mine

*Riv* Were you well serv'd, you would be taught your  
duty

250

*Q Mar* To serve me well, you all should do me duty,  
Teach me to be your queen, and you my subjects  
O, serve me well, and teach yourselves that duty!

*Dor* Dispute not with her, she is lunatic

*Q Mar* Peace, master marquess, you are malapert

255

Your fire-new stamp of honour is scarce current

O, that your young nobility could judge

What 'twere to lose it, and be miserable!

They that stand high have many blasts to shake them,

And, if they fall, they dash themselves to pieces

260

*Glou* Good counsel, marry learn it, learn it, marquess

*Dor* It touches you, my lord, as much as me

*Glou* Ay, and much more, but I was born so high,

Our aery buildeth in the cedar's top,

And dallies with the wind and scorns the sun

265

*Q Mar* And turns the sun to shade, alas, alas!

Witness my son, now in the shade of death,

Whose bright out-shining beams thy cloudy wrath

Hath in eternal darkness folded up

Your aery buildeth in our aery's nest

270

O God, that seest it, do not suffer it!

As it was won with blood, lost be it so!

*Buck* Peace, peace, for shame, if not for charity!

259 *blasts*] *blast* Q 1    262 *touches*] *Ff*, *toucheth* Qq    263 *Ay*] *I Ff*,  
*Yea* Qq    267 *son*] *sunne* Qq 5 8    272 *was*] Qq, *is* *Ff*    273 *Peace*,  
*peace*] *Ff*, *Have done* Qq

255 *malapert*] impudent An emphatic form of "apert," i.e. free-spoken, our modern "pert." Compare Chaucer, *Troilus and Criseyde*, iii 87 "Al nere he *malapert*, or made it tough", Chapman (?), *Alphonsus*, act 1 "What, boy, so *malapert*?", *Twelfth Night*, iv 1 47

256 *fire-new*] newly-coined, fresh from assay Dorset's title had been granted 18th April, 1475 Compare *Twelfth Night*, iii 11 23, 24, and see Mr Craig on *King Lear*, v iii 133

[132] *New Eng Dict* quotes Sylvester, *Hymn of Almes*, 1611, line 197 "Or *Five new* Fashion in a sleeve or slop" (*Works*, 1641, p 516)

264 *aery*] the brood of an eagle Compare *King John*, v 11 149, where *New Eng Dict* is surely wrong in taking "aery" to mean simply the nest For this latter sense compare Mas singer, *Maid of Honour*, 1632, 1 2 —

"One *aery* with proportion ne'er discloses  
The eagle and the wren."

- Q Mar* Urge neither charity nor shame to me  
 Uncharitably with me have you dealt, 275  
 And shamefully my hopes by you are butcher'd  
 My charity is outrage, life my shame,  
 And in that shame still live my sorrow's rage!  
*Buck.* Have done, have done!  
*Q Mar* O princely Buckingham, I'll kiss thy hand, 280  
 In sign of league and amity with thee  
 Now fair befall thee and thy noble house!  
 Thy garments are not spotted with our blood,  
 Nor thou within the compass of my cuse  
*Buck* Nor no one here, for curses never pass 285  
 The lips of those that breathe them in the air  
*Q Mar* I will not think but they ascend the sky,  
 And there awake God's gentle-sleeping peace  
 O Buckingham, take heed of yonder dog!  
 Look, when he fawns, he bites, and, when he bites, 290  
 His venom tooth will rankle to the death  
 Have not to do with him, beware of him!  
 Sin, death, and hell have set their marks on him,  
 And all their ministers attend on him  
*Glow* What doth she say, my Lord of Buckingham? 295  
*Buck* Nothing that I respect, my gracious lord  
*Q Mar* What, dost thou scorn me for my gentle counsel,  
 And soothe the devil that I warn thee from?  
 O, but remember this another day  
 When he shall split thy very heart with sorrow, 300  
 And say poor Margaret was a prophetess

276 *my hopes by you*] Ff, *by you my hopes* Qq 278 *that shame*] Ff, *my shame* Qq still] shall Qq 6 8 279 *Have done, have done*] Ff, *Have done* Qq 280 *I'll*] *Ile* Ff, *I will* Qq 282 *noble*] Ff, *princely* Qq 287 *I will not think*] Ff, *Ile not beleene* Qq 289 *take heed*] Ff, *beware* Qq 291 *rankle*] *rackle* Q 1 to the] Ff, *thee to* Qq 297 *What counsel*] one line as Qq, two lines Ff, divided after *scorne me*

291 *venom tooth*) "Venom" for "venomed" occurs also 3 *Henry VI* 11 77 "Soothing" for "flattery" 11 138, *Lucrece*, 850 Compare the occurs *ibid* 1 ix 44 See also Jonson, use of "honey" in Lodge, *Wounds of Poetaster*, iv 3 — *Civil War*, act v "honey words make foolish minds," and at iv 1 79 below. 4 thy violent wrong In *soothing* the declin'd affections Of our base daughter "

Live each of you the subjects to his hate,

And he to yours, and all of you to God's!

[Exit

*Hast* My hair doth stand an end to hear her curses

*Riv* And so doth mine I muse why she's at liberty 305

*Glou* I cannot blame her by God's holy mother,

She hath had too much wrong, and I repent

My part thereof that I have done to her

*Q Eliz* I never did her any, to my knowledge

*Glou* Yet you have all the vantage of her wrong 310

I was too hot to do somebody good,

That is too cold in thinking of it now

Marry, as for Clarence, he is well repaid,

He is frank'd up to fattening for his pains—

God pardon them that are the cause thereof! 315

*Riv* A virtuous and a Christian-like conclusion,

To pray for them that have done scathe to us \*

*Glou* So do I ever—[*Aside*] being well advis'd,

For, had I curs'd now, I had curs'd myself

302 subjects to] Ff, subjects of Qq 1-6 303 yours] Ff, your Qq 1, 2, you  
Qq 3 8 304 *Hast*] Qq, *Buc* Ff an] Ff, on Qq 305 muse why] Ff,  
wonder Qq 308 to her] Ff, omitted Qq 309 *Q Eliz*] Camb, *Qu* Qq  
1-5, *Hast* Qq 6 8, *Mar* Ff 1, 2, *Der* Ff 3, 4, *Dors* Rowe 310 Yet] Ff,  
But Qq her] Ff, this Qq 315 thereof] Ff, of it Qq 318 *Aside*  
Camb, omitted Qq, *Speakes to himselfe* Ff (after advis'd), Rowe marks both  
lines *Aside* 319 curs'd now, I] curs'd now, I Q 4, Ff, curs'd, now I Qq  
1-3, 5 8

305 I muse] I wonder Compare  
*George a Greene* (Dodsley, 1825, iii  
23) —

"I muse, if thou be Henry Momford,  
Kendall's earl,

That thou wilt do poor George a  
Greene this wrong"

Milton, *Of Reformation in England*,  
1641, book ii "How then this third  
and last sort that hinder reformation  
will justify that it stands not with reason  
of state, I much muse"

314. frank'd up] See also below, iv  
v. 3 Nares, after Cotgrave, gives  
"Frank A place to fatten a boar in,  
a sty," as *Henry IV* ii ii 160  
*New Eng Dict* quotes Holland's  
*Lucy*, 1600 "The Commons doe feed  
and franke vp, even for the shambles  
and butchers knife the fautors and

maintainers of their weale and libertie"  
Malone quotes Harrison, *Description  
of Britaine*, 1577 "The husbandmen  
and farmers never fraunke them above  
three or four months, in which time he  
is dyeted with otes and peason, and  
lodged on the bare planches of an  
uneasy cote"

317 scathe] injury The 13th cen-  
tury version of Genesis, printed in  
Morris, *Specimens of Early English*,  
part i (2nd ed p 164), has (line 2298)  
"Iosep ne ȝoht ȝor-of no scaðe," i e  
no harm See also Chaucer, *Canter-  
bury Tales*, A 446 "But she was  
som del deef, and that was scathe,"  
i e. a misfortune See *Romeo and  
Juliet*, i v 86, for "scathe" used as  
a verb

*Enter CATESBY*

*Cates* Madam, his majesty doth call for you, 320

And for your grace, and you, my noble lords

*Q Eliz* Catesby, we come Lords, will you go with us?

*Riv* We wait upon your grace [*Exeunt all but Gloucester*]

*Glou* I do the wrong, and first begin to brawl

The secret mischiefs that I set abroad 325

I lay unto the grievous charge of others

Clarence, whom I indeed have cast in darkness,

I do bewEEP to many simple gulls,

Namely to Derby, Hastings, Buckingham,

And tell them 'tis the queen and her allies 330

That stir the king against the duke my brother

Now they believe it, and withal whet me

To be reveng'd on Rivers, Vaughan, Grey

But then I sigh, and, with a piece of Scripture,

Tell them that God bids us do good for evil, 335

And thus I clothe my naked villainy

With odd old ends stolen forth of Holy Writ,

And seem a saint, when most I play the devil

*Enter Catesby* ] Ff, omitted Qq 321 *your grace*] Qq 1, 2, Ff, *your noble grace*, Qq 3-8 *you lords*] Capell, *you my noble Lo* Qq 1, 2, *you my noble Lord* Qq 3-6, *yours my gracious Lord* Ff 322 *we us*] Qq, *I mee* Ff 323 *We*] Ff, *Madam we* Qq *wait upon*] Ff, *will attend* Qq 324. *begin*] Ff, *began* Qq 325 *mischiefs*] *mischiefe* Qq 3 8 327 *whom*] *who* Ff 1 *cast*] Ff, *laid* Qq 329 *Derby, Hastings*] Ff, *Hastings, Darby* Qq 330 *tell them 'tis*] Ff, *say it is* Qq 1-7 332 *it*] Ff, *me* Qq 333 *Vaughan*] Qq, *Dorset* Ff 334 *I*] omitted Qq 3, 5-8 337 *odd old*] *odde old* Ff, *old odde* (or *od*) Qq *forth*] Ff, *out* Qq

325 *set abroad*] a common metaphor See *Romeo and Juliet*, I i 111, Lodge, *Wounds of Civil War*, act 1 "this discord, newly set abroad", Chapman, *All Fools*, act II —

"shall I be made

A foolish novice, my purse set a-broach

By every cheating come-you-seven"

337 *odd old ends*] For "odd old," compare Marston, *Malcontent*, act v "fables feign'd, odd old fools' chat", Beaumont and Fletcher, *Woman Hater*, II i "Any odd old gentlewoman, that mourns for the death of her hus-

band" "Old ends" occurs *Much Ado About Nothing*, I i 290, and Jonson, *Volpone*, 1607, pro 23 "Nor hales he in a gull old ends reciting" Milton has "odd ends," *Apology for Smectymnuus*, 1642 (Prose Works, ed. St John, III 110) "His odd ends, which from some penurious book of characters he had been culling out and would fain apply" "Ends" are tags, commonplace quotations, as in *Eastward Ho*, II i, where Touchstone rebukes his dissolute apprentice, "Well said, change your gold ends for play-ends"

*Enter two Murderers*

But soft! here come my executioners

How now, my hardy, stout, resolved mates! 340

Are you now going to despatch this thing?

*First Murd* We are, my lord, and come to have the warrant,

That we may be admitted where he is

*Glou* Well thought upon! I have it here about me

[*Gives the warrant*]

When you have done, repair to Crosby Place 345

But, sirs, be sudden in the execution,

Withal obdurate do not hear him plead,

For Clarence is well-spoken, and perhaps

May move your hearts to pity, if you mark him

*First Murd* Tut, tut, my lord, we will not stand to prate 350

Talkers are no good doers be assur'd

We go to use our hands, and not our tongues

*Glou* Your eyes drop mill-stones, when fools' eyes fall tears,

I like you, lads about your business straight!

Go, go, dispatch!

*First Murd* We will, my noble lord. [*Exeunt* 355

*Enter two Murderers*] Ff (*murtherers*), *Enter Executioners* Qq (aft 339)  
339 *come*] Q 1, Ff, *comes* Qq 2 8 341 *you now*] Qq 1, 2, Ff, *ye now* Qq  
3-5, *ye not* Q 6, *you not* Qq 7, 8 *thing*] Ff, *dead* Qq 342, 350 *First*  
*Murd*] 1 M Capell, *Execu* Qq [var], *Vil* Ff (and 355) 344 *Well*] Ff,  
*It was well* Qq *Gives the warrant*] Capell 350 *Tut, tut*] Ff, *Tush*  
*fears not* Qq, *Fear not* Pope 352 *go*] Ff, *come* Qq 353 *fall*] Ff, *drop*  
Qq 354 *straight*] Ff, omitted Qq 355 *Go, go* *lord*] Ff, omitted  
Qq *Exeunt*] Qq [aft 354], omitted Ff

346 *sudden*] hasty, immediate  
Chapman (?), *Alphonsus*, act v, has  
"Be therefore *sudden* lest we die our  
selves", and, almost a repetition of the  
present line, "I will be *sudden* in the  
execution" Compare below, iv ii 19  
348 *well spoken*] Compare Chap-  
man, *All Fools*, act 1 —

"I know he is *well spoken*, and may  
much prevail

In satisfying my father"  
In Beaumont and Fletcher, *Woman-  
Hater*, v 1, one of the intelligencers  
says of Lucio "He's excellently  
spoken"

351 *Talkers are no good doers*] Prob-  
ably proverbial Mr Craig found

"Talking pays no toll" in Grose's  
collection of proverbs

353 *mill-stones*] The expression was  
proverbial see *Troilus and Cressida*,  
i ii 158 Steevens quotes *Cæsar and*  
*Pompey*, 1607 "Men's eyes must *mill-  
stones* drop, when fools shed tears",  
and (on i iv 239 below) Massinger,  
*City Madam*, 1632, iv 3 —

"He, good gentleman  
Will weep when he hears how we  
are used

i *Sery* Yes, *mill-stones*"  
*fall tears*] let tears fall Compare  
stage-direction in Ff, i ii 182 above  
"She fals the Sword", *Measure for*  
*Measure*, ii 1, 6

SCENE IV—*London The Tower**Enter CLARENCE and BRAKENBURY**Brak* Why looks your grace so heavily to-day?*Clar* O, I have pass'd a miserable night,

So full of fearful dreams, of ugly sights,

That, as I am a Christian faithful man,

I would not spend another such a night, 5

Though 'twere to buy a world of happy days,

So full of dismal terror was the time!

*Brak* What was your dream, my lord? I pray you tell me*Clar* Methoughts that I had broken from the Tower,

And was embark'd to cross to Burgundy,— 10

And, in my company, my brother Gloucester,

SCENE IV] SCENE V Pope *Brakenbury*] *Brokenbury* Qq, *Keeper* Ff  
 1 *Brak*] *Brak* Qq, *Keep* Ff (and 34, 42, 64, 75) 3 *fearful* *sights*] Ff, *ugly sights, of gastly dreames* Qq 8 *my lord* *tell me*] Ff, *I long to heare you tell it* Qq 9 *Methoughts*] *Me thought* Qq 4-8 9, 10 *that I Burgundy*] Ff, *I was imbarkt for Burgundy* Qq

*Brakenbury*] In Ff *Brakenbury* does not enter till after line 75, and his part in the dialogue is assigned to a keeper. Possibly, in the original draft of the play, *Brakenbury* and the keeper were distinct persons, but were united for acting purposes, and so appeared in Qq as one. The editor of F 1 perhaps restored the double part from his MS. *Spedding* explained the absence of "Ext Keeper" at line 75 in Ff as an "error of press or pen, the context showing conclusively that the 'keeper' is supposed to retire on the entrance of his chief." The part of the keeper, however, is not necessary. *Clarence* is more likely to have told his story to *Brakenbury* than to a casual warder, and he might apply the term "keeper," as altered by Ff in lines 66, 73, to the Lieutenant of the Tower, in whose custody he was.

9 *Methoughts*] A corrupt form, evidently "on the false analogy of 'methinks'" (*Aldis Wright*). In line 18 below, all the printed copies read "me thought." In line 58, Q 1 alone reads "me thoughts," which the present editor has adopted in harmony with this passage. The form occurs in

*Winter's Tale*, 1 ii 154, and *Merchant of Venice*, 1 iii 70 (Q 2 and Ff, not Q 1).

10 *Burgundy*] = the Netherlands, part of the domains of the Valois Dukes of Burgundy. The princes of the house of York found a natural shelter in these provinces. After Wakefield, *Clarence*, then a child, resided under Burgundian protection in the episcopal city of Utrecht. In 1468, his sister Margaret became the second wife of Charles the Bold, last duke of his line. Edward IV, in 1470, took refuge in Holland from the coalition of Warwick and Clarence with Queen Margaret. Clarence had been a suitor for the hand of Mary, daughter of Charles the Bold by his first wife, and heiress of his duchy. Edward IV put his veto on Clarence's suit, this being one of the causes of discontent that led to the imprisonment of Clarence. The year before Clarence was murdered, Burgundy proper was seized by Louis XI of France, after the death of Charles the Bold, and the dominions of the Duchess were restricted to the Netherlands and the County of Burgundy (*Franche Comté*).

Who from my cabin tempted me to walk  
 Upon the hatches thence we look'd toward England,  
 And cited up a thousand heavy times,  
 During the wars of York and Lancaster 15  
 That had befall'n us As we pac'd along  
 Upon the giddy footing of the hatches,  
 Methought that Gloucester stumbled, and, in falling,  
 Struck me, that thought to stay him, overboard,  
 Into the tumbling billows of the main 20  
 Lord, Lord! methought what pain it was to drown!  
 What dreadful noise of waters in mine ears!  
 What ugly sights of death within mine eyes!  
 Methoughts I saw a thousand fearful wracks,  
 A thousand men that fishes gnaw'd upon, 25  
 Wedges of gold, great anchors, heaps of pearl,  
 Inestimable stones, unvalu'd jewels,  
 All scatter'd in the bottom of the sea  
 Some lay in dead men's skulls, and, in the holes  
 Where eyes did once inhabit, there were crept, 30  
 As 'twere in scorn of eyes, reflecting gems,  
 That woo'd the slimy bottom of the deep,  
 And mock'd the dead bones that lay scatter'd by.  
*Brak* Had you such leisure in the time of death  
 To gaze upon these secrets of the deep? 35  
*Clar* Methought I had and often did I strive

13 *thence*] Qq 1-5, *there* Qq 6-8, Ff 14 *heavy*] Ff, *fearefull* Qq 16  
*pac'd*] Ff, *pac't* Q 1, *past* Qq 2 8 18 *falling*] Ff, *stumbling* Qq 21  
*Lord, Lord*] Qq, O *Lord* Ff 22 *waters*] Qq 1-5, *water* Qq 6-8, Ff 22, 23  
*mine* *mine*] my my Q 1 23 *ugly sights of*] Qq, *sights of ugly* Ff  
 24 *Methoughts*] Ff, *Methought* Qq 25 *A thousand*] Ff, *Ten thousand* Qq  
 28 *All sea*] Ff, omitted Qq 29 *the holes*] Ff, *those holes* Qq 32  
*That*] Ff, *Which* Qq 35 *these*] Ff, *the* Qq 36, 37 *and often* *ghost*] Ff, omitted Qq

13 *thence*] Ff have "there" in common with Q 6 See also line 22 below, where both have "water" for "waters" Such errors may be mere coincidences due to printers, but they may point equally to the use of Q 6 as the printed foundation of the text of Ff

21 *Lord, Lord*] Qq may give the result of a stage alteration, but they have the advantage of emphasis over Ff, which may show an attempt to soften

the phrase in accordance with the act of 3 James I c 21, "To restraints the abuses of Players"

26 *anchors*] Aldis Wright mentions a conjectural emendation to "ingots" 27 *unvalu'd*] invaluable, as Marlowe, *I Tamburlaine*, c 1587, l 2, "this success and loss *unvalu'd*" "Unparagon'd" is used for "incomparable" in *Cymbeline*, i. iv 87, ll ii, 17 See note on l ii 39 above.

To yield the ghost, but still the envious flood  
 Stopt in my soul, and would not let it forth  
 To find the empty, vast, and wandering air,  
 But smother'd it within my panting bulk, 40  
 Which almost burst to belch it in the sea

*Brak* Awak'd you not in this sore agony?

*Clar* No, no, my dream was lengthen'd after life  
 O, then began the tempest to my soul,  
 Who pass'd, methought, the melancholy flood, 45  
 With that sour ferryman which poets write of,  
 Unto the kingdom of perpetual night  
 The first that there did greet my stranger-soul  
 Was my great father-in-law, renowned Warwick,  
 Who spake aloud, "What scourge for perjury 50  
 Can this dark monarchy afford false Clarence?"  
 And so he vanish'd then came wandering by  
 A shadow like an angel, with bright hair  
 Dabbled in blood, and he squeak'd out aloud,

37 *but*] Ff, for Qq 38 *Stop'd*] *Stop'd* Ff, *Kept* Qq 39 *find*] Ff, *seek*  
 Qq 1, 2, *keepe* Qq 3-8 *empty, vast, and*] Qq 2, 6-8, Ff, *emptie vast and* Qq 1,  
 3-5, *empty vast, and* Malone 41 *Which*] Qq, *Who* Ff 42 *in*] Ff, *with*  
 Qq 43 *No, no*] Ff, *O no* Qq 45 *Who*] Qq, *I* Ff 46 *sour*] Ff, *grim*  
 Qq 49 *renowned*] *renowned* Qq 1-5 50 *spake*] Ff, *cried* Qq 53  
*with*] Ff, *in* Qq 54 *squeak'd*] *squeak't* Qq 2 8, *squak't* Q 1, *shriek'd* Ff

37 *envious*] malicious Compare 8  
*Henry VI* iii ii 157, where the envy  
 or malice of Nature is transferred to the  
 defect which it causes

39 *empty, vast*] Malone suggested  
 that "empty vast" means "immense  
 vacuity," like Tennyson's "illimitable  
 inane" in *Lucretius*, line 40 Shake-  
 speare uses "vast" as a substantive in  
 the plays of his later and middle life,  
 see *Hamlet*, i ii 198, *Winter's Tale*, i  
 1 33, *Tempest*, i ii 327 In his earlier  
 plays it is an adjective, as *King John*,  
 iv iii 152 However, Lodge, *Wounds*  
*of Civil War*, printed 1594, but prob-  
 ably written some years earlier, has  
 (act 1) "Whose vows have pierc'd and  
 search'd the deepest *vast*," and (act  
 ii) —

"Those fatal fears  
 That dwell below amidst the dread-  
 ful *vast*"

Compare Tennyson, *In Memoriam*,  
 1850, epilogue, st 31 —

"A soul shall draw from out the *vast*  
 And strike his being into bounds"  
 40 *bulk*] the frame of the body, as  
*Hamlet*, ii 1 95 Compare first part of  
*Jeronimo* (Dodsley, 1825, iii 60) —

"I have a mischief  
 Within my breast, more than my  
*bulk* can hold"

Chapman (?), *Alphonsus*, act iv "Still  
 looking when his poison'd *bulk* would  
 break"

45 *Who pass'd*] Ff break up the  
 sentence too much, and Qq have the  
 better reading In line 41 above there  
 is nothing to choose between the read-  
 ings

45, 46 Compare the speech of An-  
 drea's ghost at the beginning of Kyd,  
*Spanish Tragedy*, act 1 —

"When I was slain, my soul de-  
 scended straight  
 To pass the flowing stream of  
 Acheron," etc

54 *squeak'd*] "Squeak," applied to

"Clarence is come, false, fleeting, perjur'd Clarence, 55  
 That stabb'd me in the field by Tewkesbury  
 Seize on him, Furies, take him unto torment!"  
 With that, methoughts, a legion of foul fiends  
 Environ'd me, and howled in mine ears  
 Such hideous cries, that with the very noise 60  
 I trembling wak'd, and for a season after  
 Could not believe but that I was in hell,  
 Such terrible impression made my dream  
*Brak* No marvel, my lord, though it affrighted you,  
 I am afraid, methinks, to hear you tell it 65  
*Clar* Ah, keeper, keeper! I have done those things,  
 That now give evidence against my soul,  
 For Edward's sake, and see how he requites me!  
 O God! if my deep prayers cannot appease Thee,  
 But Thou wilt be aveng'd on my misdeeds, 70  
 Yet execute Thy wrath in me alone,  
 O, spare my guiltless wife and my poor children!—

57 unto torment] Ff, to your torments Qq 58 methoughts] me thoughts  
 Q 1, me thought Qq 2-8, Ff 1-3 59 me, and] Ff, me about, and Qq 63  
 my] Ff, the Qq 64 my lord] Qq, Lord Ff 65 I am afraid methinks] Ff,  
 I promise you, I am afraid Qq 66 Ah keeper, keeper,] Ff, O Brokenbury Qq  
 those] Qq, these Ff 67 That] Ff, Which Qq give] Ff, beare Qq 69-72  
 O God children] Ff, omitted Qq 71 in me] on me Rowe

a voice "thin as voices from the grave,"  
 is found in *Hamlet*, i 1 116 [not in Ff]  
 Compare "squeal" in *Julius Caesar*,  
 ii 1 24, and Mr Macmillan's note in  
 Arden ed. In *Antony and Cleopatra*,  
 v 1 220, "squeaking" is used of a boy  
 actor's voice. Perhaps, in 1623, the  
 word was losing its application to  
 supernatural sounds, and the editor of  
 F 1 altered it on his own account.

55. *fleeting*] fickle, deceitful. Stee-  
 vens refers to *Antony and Cleopatra*, v  
 1 240, "the *fleeting* moon," which is  
 the same thing as "the inconstant  
 moon" of *Romeo and Juliet*, ii 1 109.  
 There are two examples in Lyly, *Eu-  
 phues* (Arber, 48) "Whom thou maist  
 make partaker of all thy misfortune  
 without mistrust of *fleeting*", and (p  
 106) "If Lucilla reade this trifle, shee  
 will . . . condemne mee of mischiefe in  
 arming young men against *fleeting*  
 mimons." The earliest example in  
*New Eng Dict* is from *Ancren Riwle*,

c 1225 "Mid te fleotunde word, to  
 fleoted þe heorte"

64. *marvel*] pronounced as a mono-  
 syllable, and often so spelt. Compare  
 J Cook, *Green's Tu Quoque* (Dodsley,  
 1825, vii 94) "I *marl'd* indeed that all  
 things were so quiet." The alteration  
 in Ff points to a growth of dissyllabic  
 pronunciation. For "no marvel  
 though" compare *Gammer Gurton's  
 Needle*, 1575, act v "Was it any  
*marvaile*, though the poor woman  
 arose"

71. *in me*] either "on me," or "in  
 respect of me" (as i 111 153 above).  
 Compare Ezekiel v 10 "I will exe-  
 cute judgments in thee," where, how-  
 ever, the meaning may be "in the  
 midst of thee" (LXX, *ἐν σοί*)

72. *my guiltless wife*] Clarence's  
 wife, Isabella Neville, died before his  
 imprisonment took place. By that  
 time he had attempted to win Mary of  
 Burgundy for his second wife.

Keeper, I prithee sit by me awhile,  
 My soul is heavy, and I fain would sleep  
*Brak* I will, my lord God give your grace good rest! 75  
*[Clarence sleeps]*

Sorrow breaks seasons and reposing hours,  
 Makes the night morning, and the noon-tide night  
 Princes have but their titles for their glories,  
 An outward honour for an inward toil,  
 And, for unfelt imaginations, 80  
 They often feel a world of restless cares  
 So that, between their titles and low name,  
 There's nothing differs but the outward fame

*Enter the two Murderers*

*First Murd* Ho! who's here?  
*Brak* What wouldst thou, fellow, and how cam'st thou  
 hither? 85  
*First Murd* I would speak with Clarence, and I came  
 hither on my legs  
*Brak* What, so brief?

73 *Keeper awhile*] Ff, *I pray thee gentle keeper stay by me* Qq, *I pray thee, Brakenbury, stay by me* Pope Capell adds *Retiring to a chair* aft, 75  
*Clarence sleeps*] Johnson, *Enter Brakenbury the Lieutenant* Ff 76  
*Bra* Ff 80 *imaginations*] Ff, *imagination* Qq 82 *between*] Ff, *betwixt*  
 Qq *their*] your Qq 3-8 *name*] Ff, *names* Qq 84, 85 *First Murd Ho!*  
*Brak*] Ff, omitted Qq 85 *What wouldst hither?*] Ff, *In God's*  
*name what are you and how came you hither?* Qq, *In God's name, what art thou?*  
*how cam'st thou hither?* Pope 86 *First Murd*] *Execu* Qq, 2 *Mur* Ff  
 88 *What, so brief*] Ff, *Yea, are you so brieft* Qq 1, 2, 8, *Yea, are ye so brieft*  
 Qq 3-7

78 *glories*] Johnson thought that "troubles" "would more impress the purpose of the speaker, and correspond better with the following lines"

80 *for unfelt imaginations*] instead of *imaginations* which cannot be gratified "Unfelt" is on a par with "unvalu'd," line 27 above

85 From this point to line 158, the discrepancies between Qq and Ff are more than usually numerous The bulk of the dialogue originally must have been written as prose The only lines that scan, with the exception of

line 89 (Ff), belong to Brakenbury Qq arrange the whole passage roughly in lines, without any attempt at scan-sion Ff print mainly as prose, with one or two exceptions The chief difference between the two versions is that the style of Ff is more set and literary, while Qq abound in ejaculations and colloquial forms which may have entered the text from the stage On the other hand, Ff have forms like "there's," "hee'l," "us," where Qq print "there is," "he will," "it is" See collation

*Sec Murd* 'Tis better, sir, than to be tedious

Let him see our commission, and talk no more 90

[*Brakenbury reads it*

*Brak* I am in this commanded to deliver

The noble Duke of Clarence to your hands

I will not reason what is meant hereby,

Because I will be guiltless from the meaning

There lies the duke asleep, and there the keys 95

I'll to the king, and signify to him

That thus I have resign'd to you my charge

*First Murd* You may, sir, 'tis a point of wisdom fare  
you well [Exit *Brakenbury*

*Sec Murd* What, shall we stab him as he sleeps? 100

*First Murd* No, he'll say 'twas done cowardly, when  
he wakes

*Sec Murd* Why, he shall never wake until the great  
judgment-day

*First Murd* Why, then he'll say we stabb'd him sleeping 105

*Sec. Murd* The urging of that word "judgment" hath  
bred a kind of remorse in me

89 *Sec Murd*] 2 *Exe Qq*, 1 *Ff* 'Tis tedious] *Ff*, O sir, it is  
better to be briefe then tedious *Qq* 1, 2, 7, 8, O sir, it is better be briefe then  
tedious *Qq* 3 6 90 Let him see] *Ff*, Shew him *Qq* 93 hereby] thereby  
*Qq* 3 8 94 from] *Ff*, of *Qq* 95 There keys] *Ff*, Here are the  
keys there sits the Duke asleepe *Qq* 96 I'll him] *Ff*, Ile to his Majesty,  
and certifie his Grace *Qq* 97 to you my charge] *Ff*, my charge to you *Qq*  
1, 2, my place to you *Qq* 3-8 99 You may, sir, 'tis] *Ff*, Doe so, it is *Qq*  
fare you well] *Ff*, omitted *Qq* 100 we] I *Qq* 1, 2 101 he'll] hee'l *Ff*,  
then he will *Qq* 103 Why] *Ff*, When he wakes, Why foole *Qq* 103  
until the great] *Ff*, till the *Qq* 105 he'll] hee'l *Ff*, he will *Qq*

89 "It is better to be brief than  
tedious" is possibly proverbial Mr  
Craig calls attention to *All's Well*  
*that Ends Well*, II III 33, 34 "that  
is the brief and the tedious of it"

96 It may be noted, in connection  
with *Qq* reading here, that Shakespeare,  
if he was responsible for it, used the  
terms "majesty" and "grace" with  
little discrimination The title of "ma-  
jesty" was first used by Charles V as  
King of Spain, after his election as  
Emperor, 1519, and was borrowed in  
imitation by Henry VIII and other  
princes What *Brakenbury* really  
would have said in 1478 would have  
been "I'll to the king, and certify his  
grace", and therefore it would be an

improvement to read it here But for  
an editor to do so would be to commit  
himself to a principle of arbitrary selec-  
tion between *Qq* and *Ff* The whole  
line in *Ff*, as it stands, is better than  
the line in *Qq*

101 cowardly] For adverbs of a  
similar kind, compare Marston, *Mal-  
content*, act v "she most courtly  
finds fault with them one after  
another", Fletcher, *False One*, III I  
"Let us consider timely what we must  
do", Suckling, *Upon the Lord*  
*Leppington*, c 1637 —

"Describes each thing so lively  
that we are  
Concern'd ourselves before we are  
aware"

*First Murd* What, art thou afraid?

*Sec Murd* Not to kill him, having a warrant, but to be  
damn'd for killing him, from the which no warrant 110  
can defend me

*First Murd* I thought thou hadst been resolute

*Sec Murd* So I am, to let him live

*First Murd* I'll back to the Duke of Gloucester, and tell  
him so 115

*Sec Murd* Nay, I prithe thee stay a little I hope this  
passionate humour of mine will change, it was wont  
to hold me but while one tells twenty

*First Murd* How dost thou feel thyself now?

*Sec Murd* Some certain dregs of conscience are yet 120  
within me

*First Murd* Remember our reward, when the deed's  
done

*Sec Murd* 'Zounds! he dies! I had forgot the reward

*First Murd* Where's thy conscience now? 125

*Sec Murd* O, in the Duke of Gloucester's purse

*First Murd* When he opens his purse to give us our  
reward, thy conscience flies out

109 warrant] Ff, warrant for it Qq 110 the which] Ff, which Qq  
111 me] Ff, vs Qq 112, 113 First Murd I live] Ff, omitted Qq  
114. I'll back] Ile backe Ff, Backe Qq and tell] Ff, tell Qq 116 Nay,  
I prithe] Ff, I pray thee Qq a little] Ff, a while Qq 116, 117 this  
passionate mine] Ff, my holy humor Qq, this compassionate humour of  
mine Capell 117 it was] Ff, twas Qq 118 tells] Ff, would tel Qq  
120 Some] Ff, Faith, some Qq 122 deed 's] Ff, deede is Qq 124  
Zounds] Qq, Come Ff 125 Where 's] Ff, Where is Qq 126 O, in] Ff,  
In Qq 127 When] Ff, So when Qq

117 *passionate*] Malone thought that the editor of F 1 altered Qq on account of the statute of 1605-6, which was passed "for the preventing and avoiding the great abuse of the holy name of God in stage-plays, interludes, may-games, shewes and such like" See note on line 21 above The alteration at line 85 above may be due to this reason, to which may be ascribed the omission of "Zounds" at lines 124, 125, and the radical change in lines 128, 129 below The omission of "Faith" in line 120 is another probable instance No change was made in Qq after the passing of the act Collier, *Annals of the Stage*, 1831, II 56, 57, quotes a note

from Sir Henry Herbert's Office Book, relating to D'Avenant's *Wits*, 1636 Charles I, on the author's petition, restored several exclamations, which the Master of the Revels had crossed out from the play Sir Henry noted "The King is pleased to take *faith*, *death*, *slight*, for asseverations and no oaths, to which I do humbly submit as my master's judgment, but under favour conceive them to be oaths, and enter them here to declare my opinion and submission" In the present case, an alteration could hardly have been deemed necessary within the terms of the statute, even by the most puritanical critic

*Sec Murd* 'Tis no matter, let it go there's few or none  
will entertain it 130

*First Murd* What if it come to thee again?

*Sec Murd* I'll not meddle with it it makes a man a  
coward a man cannot steal, but it accuseth him,  
a man cannot swear, but it checks him, a man  
cannot lie with his neighbour's wife, but it detects 135  
him 'Tis a blushing shamefast spirit, that mutinies in  
a man's bosom, it fills a man full of obstacles it  
made me once restore a purse of gold that by chance  
I found, it beggars any man that keeps it, it is  
turn'd out of towns and cities for a dangerous thing, 140  
and every man that means to live well endeavours to  
trust to himself and to live without it

*First Murd* 'Zounds, 'tis even now at my elbow, per-  
suading me not to kill the duke!

*Sec Murd* Take the devil in thy mind, and believe him 145  
not he would insinuate with thee but to make thee  
sigh

*First Murd* I am strong fram'd he cannot prevail with  
me

129 'Tis no matter] Ff, omitted Qq 131 What] Ff, How Qq 132 it  
it makes] Ff, it, it is a dangerous thing, It makes Qq 134 a man a  
man] Ff, he He Qq swear] steale Qq 3 8 136 'Tis] Ff, It is Qq  
136 shamefast] Qq 1, 3, 6, shamfast Q 2, shamfact Qq 4, 5, shamefac'd Ff  
137. a man] Ff, one Qq 138 purse] piece Qq 3 8 by chance] Ff, omitted  
Qq 140 towns] Ff, all Townes Qq 141 to live] Qq 1-6, live Ff 143  
Zounds] Qq, omitted Ff 'tis] Ff, it is Qq 146 but] Ff, omitted Qq  
148 I am strong fram'd] Ff, Tut, I am strong in fraud Qq 149 me] me, I  
warrant thee Qq

136 *shamefast*] the correct form of  
the word Compare "steadfast" The  
variations of spelling in successive edi-  
tions show a transformation in ortho-  
graphy "Shame-faced" suggests a  
wrong etymology Aldis Wright notes  
a like discrepancy between Qq and Ff  
in *3 Henry VI* iv viii 52, Lyly,  
*Euphues*, 1579 (Arber, 69), has "shame  
fastnes"

145 There are two possible meanings  
to this line (1) Take the devil into thy  
mind, and believe not conscience—the  
blushing shamefast spirit, for which

the devil will be more than a match  
This is substantially Warburton's ex-  
planation It involves the use of  
"in" = "into" Compare above, i iii  
89 "Him" also must in this case  
refer to "conscience," hitherto alluded  
to as "it" (2) Take hold of, &c  
grapple with conscience, which is the  
devil in thy mind, and believe him not  
This is adopted by Aldis Wright, and  
is more simple Capell avoided the  
difficulty by reading "Shake the devil  
out of thy mind"

*Sec Murd* Spoke like a tall man that respects thy reputation 150  
Come, shall we fall to work?

*First Murd* Take him on the costard with the hilts of thy sword, and then throw him into the malmsey-butt in the next room

*Sec Murd* O excellent device! and make a sop of him 155

150 Spoke] Soode Q 4, Stood Qq 5-8 man] Ff, fellow Qq thy] Ff, his Qq 151 fall to work] Ff, to this geere Qq 152 on] Ff, ouer Qq 152, 153 thy sword] my sword Qq 3 8 153 throw him into] Ff, we wil chop him in Qq 155 and] Ff, omitted Qq sop] scoope Q 3

150 a tall man] "Tall" is fine, brave, usually in the sense of "swag gering," as we speak of "tall talk" Mercutio in *Romeo and Juliet*, II iv 31, ridicules the fashionable employment of the word Chapman, *Blind Beggar of Alexandria*, 1598 (Shepherd, 7), has "I do hold thee for the most tall, resolute, and accomplished gentle man on the face of the earth" Qq "tall fellow" is common, e.g. Decker, *Seuen Deadly Sinnes of London* (Arber, 21) "Though a Lye haue but short legs (like a Dwarfes) yet it goes farre in a little time, *Et crescit eundo*, and at last prooues a tall fellow", Wilkins, *Miseries of Inforst Marriage*, 1607, act iv "had you kept half a dozen tall fellows" "Tall man" occurs in Lodge and Greene, *Looking-Glass for London* (Dyce, 138) "Then may I count myself, I think, a tall man, that am able to kill a devil"

thy] The mixture of persons involved in this sentence is natural in the mouth of a rough and ill educated man There is no necessity to keep Qq "his"

152 Take him] strike him Mr Craig gives illustrations in the note to his "Little Quarto" edition of the play, p 80, and refers further to *Taming of the Shrew*, III ii 165

costard] A costard is a kind of large apple, hence the word was applied vulgarly to the head Compare *King Lear*, IV vi 247, and Moth's jest on Costard in *Love's Labour's Lost*, III i 71 See *Gammer Gurton's Needle*, act v "Well, knave, and I had the alone, I wold surely rap thy costard" The word is common

hilts] Compare I *Henry IV* II iv 229, Cook, *Green's Tu Quoque*, "All the while his money is losing, he swears by the cross of this silver, and, when

it is gone, he changeth it to the hilts of his sword" Qq 7, 8 "hilt" may point to a transition from the plural to the singular use

153 throw] This is weaker than the colloquial "chop" of Qq So also the reading "fall to work" in line 151 is weaker than Qq "to this gear" See note on line 85 above In *The True Tragedie of Richard the Third*, quoted by Aldis Wright, we find "He spares none whom he but mistrusteth to be a hinderer to his proceedings, he is straight chopped up in prison" Quotations for this use of "chop" in *New Eng Dict* range from 1560 to 1708

malmsey] Boswell Stone, *Shakespeare's Holmshead*, 1896, p 348, notes that the execution of Clarence in the butt of malmsey is the only detail of this scene which Shakespeare did not invent Malmsey or Malvoisie was a Greek wine from Napoli di Malvasia (Monemvasia) on the south east coast of Laconia According to Howell, *Epp Ho-El*, II 54, "some few Muscadells or Malmstes brought over in small Casks" were the only wines suitable for transportation from Greece Compare Burton, *Anatomy of Melancholy* (Shilleto, 1 255) "All black wines overhot, compound, strong thick drinks, as Muscadine, Malmsey, Alicant, Rummey, Brown Bastard, Metheglin, and the like" In Jonson, *Bartholomew Fair*, I 1, Littlewit says of Busy, "Some time the spirit is so strong with him, it gets quite out of him, and then my mother, or Win, are faine to fetch it again with malmsey or aqua caelestis" See Mr Hart's note on *Measure for Measure*, III ii 3, 4

155 make a sop] Mr Craig illustrates from *King Lear*, II ii 35, and *Troilus and Cressida*, I iii 113

*First Murd.* Soft, he wakes !

*Sec Murd* Strike !

*First Murd* No, we'll reason with him

*Clar* [*awaking*] Where art thou, keeper? give me a  
cup of wine 160

*First Murd* You shall have wine enough, my lord, anon

*Clar* In God's name, what art thou?

*First Murd* A man, as you are

*Clar* But not, as I am, royal

*First Murd* Nor you, as we are, loyal 165

*Clar* Thy voice is thunder, but thy looks are humble

*First Murd* My voice is now the king's, my looks mine own

*Clar* How darkly and how deadly dost thou speak !

Your eyes do menace me why look you pale?

Who sent you hither? wherefore do you come? 170

*Both* To, to, to——

*Clar* To murder me?

*Both* Ay, ay

*Clar* You scarcely have the hearts to tell me so,  
And therefore cannot have the hearts to do it ; 175  
Wherein, my friends, have I offended you?

*First Murd* Offended us you have not, but the king

*Clar* I shall be reconciled to him again

*Sec Murd* Never, my lord therefore prepare to die

*Clar* Are you drawn forth, among a world of men, 180  
To slay the innocent? What is my offence?

156 *Soft, he wakes*] Ff, *Harke he stirs, shall I strike* Qq 157 *Sec Murd*  
*Strike*] Ff, omitted Qq 158 *First Murd*] 1 Ff, 2 Qq (and 163, 167)  
*we'll wee'l* Ff, *first lets* Qq 159 *awaking*] *Cla awaketh* Qq 3-8 165  
*First Murd*] 1 Qq 5-8, Ff, 2 Qq 1-4 169 *Your pale*] Ff, omitted Qq  
170 *Who come*] Ff, *Tell me who are you, wherefore come you hither* Qq  
171 *Both*] *Am* Qq, 2 Ff 173 *Both Ay, ay*] *Both I, I* Ff, *Am I* Qq  
174 *hearts*] *heart* Qq 6-8 180 *drawn forth, among*] *drawne forth among*  
Ff, *cald forth from out* Qq

158 *reason*] talk, as below, 11 iii 39,  
and constantly in the Authorised Ver-  
sion of the Bible

180 *drawn*] In support of Qq,  
Stevens quotes *Nobody and Somebody*,  
1598 —

"Art thou call'd forth amongst a  
thousand men

To minister this soveraigne anti-  
dote?"

Johnson read "culled"—an unneces-  
sary emendation "Among a world  
of men" is put here within commas, in  
order to emphasise the stress evidently  
laid by Clarence on "you."

Where is the evidence that doth accuse me ?  
 What lawful quest have given their verdict up  
 Unto the frowning judge ? or who pronounc'd  
 The bitter sentence of poor Clarence' death ? 185  
 Before I be convict by course of law,  
 To threaten me with death is most unlawful  
 I charge you, as you hope to have redemption  
 By Christ's dear blood shed for our grievous sins,  
 That you depart and lay no hands on me ! 190  
 The deed you undertake is damnable

*First Murd* What we will do we do upon command

*Sec Murd* And he that hath commanded is our king

*Clar* Erroneous vassals ! the great King of kings  
 Hath in the table of His law commanded 195  
 That thou shalt do no murder Will you then  
 Spurn at His edict, and fulfil a man's ?  
 Take heed, for He holds vengeance in His hand,  
 To hurl upon their heads that break His law

*Sec Murd* And that same vengeance doth He hurl on  
 thee, 200  
 For false forswearing, and for murder too  
 Thou didst receive the holy Sacrament,  
 To fight in quarrel of the house of Lancaster

182 is] Ff, are Qq that doth] Ff, that doe Qq 1, 2, to Qq 3 8 187  
 threaten] threaten Q 3, threaten Qq 4-6 188, 189 to have sins] Qq,  
 for any goodnesse Ff 193 our] Ff, the Qq 194 vassals] Ff, vassalle Qq  
 195 the table] Ff, the tables Qq 1, 2, his tables Qq 3 6 196 Will you] Ff,  
 and wilt thou Qq 198 hand] Ff, hands Qq 200 hurl] Ff, throw Qq  
 202, 203 holy To Lancaster] Qq, Sacrament to fight In Lancaster Ff.

183 Clarence's imprisonment and execution, if hasty, were carried out after trial and condemnation Gairdner, *Richard the Third*, new ed p 32, comments on the one-sided character of the trial

188, 189 to have sins] See note on line 117 above, Qq would be subject to the fine of £10 inflicted by the statute there mentioned

194 *Erroneous*] Compare Fletcher, *Monseur Thomas*, 1 2 "Your worship is erroneous"

202, 203 F 1 appears to have altered the passage either in order to smooth

out the Alexandrine in line 202, or to omit "holy" before "Sacrament." This use of "holy" would be far more likely to fall under the statute already referred to than the use in line 117 (Qq) There is no reason why "holy," if not in the original MS, should have been added in Qq, and, consequently, why it should be omitted in Ff

203 in quarrel] Compare Fletcher, *False One*, 1 1 —

"He pites them whose fortunes are embark'd

In his unlucky quarrel"

*First Murd* And, like a traitor to the name of God,  
 Didst break that vow, and with thy treacherous blade 205  
 Unrip'dst the bowels of thy sovereign's son ?

*Sec Murd* Whom thou wast sworn to cherish and defend

*First Murd* How canst thou urge God's dreadful law to us,  
 When thou hast broke it in such dear degree?

*Clar* Alas! for whose sake did I that ill deed? 210

For Edward, for my brother, for his sake

He sends you not to murder me for this,

For in that sin he is as deep as I

If God will be avenged for the deed,

O, know you yet, He doth it publicly 215

Take not the quarrel from His powerful arm,

He needs no indirect or lawless course

To cut off those that have offended Him

*First Murd* Who made thee then a bloody minister,

When gallant-springing brave Plantagenet, 220

That princely novice, was struck dead by thee?

*Clar* My brother's love, the devil, and my rage

207 *wast*] *was't* Ff, *wert* Qq 209 *such*] Ff, *so* Qq 212 *He*] Ff, *Why*  
*sirs, he* Qq *you*] Ff, *ye* Qq 213 *that*] Ff, *this* Qq 214 *avenged*] Ff,  
*reuenged* Qq *the deed*] Ff, *this deed* Qq 215 *O* *publicly*] Ff, omitted  
*Qq* *you yet*] *you, that* Steevens (Farmer conj) 217 *or*] Ff, *nor* Qq  
*lawless*] Q 1, Ff, *lawfull* Qq 2 8 220 *gallant-springing*] Q 1, Ff (hyphened  
 Pope), *gallant spring* Qq 2-8, *gallant springall* Capell (conj) 221 *That*  
*The* Qq 6 8

209 *dear*] "A word of mere enforcement" (Steevens) Compare *King Lear*, iv iii 53, *Troilus and Cressida*, v iii 9 There is an ironical use in Jonson, *Cynthia's Revels*, i 1, where Crites says to Asotus "Leave it to me, I'll forget none of your *dear* graces, I warrant you"

212 The "Why, sirs" preceding this line in Qq, is printed by Cambridge editors as a line by itself It is probably an ejaculation introduced from the colloquial stage alterations of this dialogue

220 *gallant-springing*] For "springing" compare Spenser, *Shepherd's Calendar*, 1579, February, 52 —

"I scorn thy skill,

That wouldest me my *springing*  
 young to spill,"

The double adjective, of which the first part qualifies the second and takes the place of an adverb, is common in this play, and in Elizabethan literature generally Compare Greene, *Orlando Furioso* (Dyce, 91) "fortune, or some deep inspiring fate", Fletcher and Massinger, *Spanish Curate*, iii 3 "an easy-yielding wanton" There are three good examples in Tourneur, *Revenger's Tragedy*, act 1 "And thou his son, as impious steep'd as he", "Be not so cruel wise", and "All which and more"

She, foolish chaste, sent back"  
 Compare "childish-foolish" above, i iii 142, "wrong-incensed" below, ii 1 51, "high-swoll'n," ii ii 117

*First Murd* Thy brother's love, our duty, and thy faults,  
Provoke us hither now to slaughter thee

*Clar* If you do love my brother, hate not me 225  
I am his brother, and I love him well  
If you are hir'd for meed, go back again,  
And I will send you to my brother Gloucester,  
Who shall reward you better for my life  
Than Edward will for tidings of my death 230

*Sec Murd* You are deceiv'd, your brother Gloucester hates  
you

*Clar* O, no, he loves me, and he holds me dear  
Go you to him from me

*Both* Ay, so we will

*Clar* Tell him, when that our princely father York  
Bless'd his three sons with his victorious arm, 235  
And charg'd us from his soul to love each other,  
He little thought of this divided friendship  
Bid Gloucester think of this, and he will weep

*First Murd* Ay, millstones, as he lesson'd us to weep

*Clar* O, do not slander him, for he is kind 240

*First Murd* Right,

As snow in harvest Come, you deceive yourself  
'Tis he that sends us to destroy you here

*Clar* It cannot be, for he bewept my fortune,  
And hugg'd me in his arms, and swore with sobs 245  
That he would labour my delivery

223 *our duty*] Ff, *the duell* Qq *faults*] Ff, *fault* Qq 224 *Provoke*] Ff,  
*Have brought* Qq *slaughter*] Ff, *murder* Qq 225 *If you do*] Ff, *Oh if*  
*you* Qq *my brother*] *brother* Qq 4-6 227 *are*] Ff, *be* Qq *meed*] Q 1,  
Ff, *needs* Qq 2-8 229 *shall*] Ff, *will* Qq 231 *You* *hates you*] one  
line Qq, *You are deceiv'd, Your* *hates you* (two lines) Ff 233 *Both*] *of this*  
Am Qq, 1 Ff 236 *And* *each other*] Qq, omitted Ff 238 *that sends*  
*on this* Qq 6 8, Ff 239 *First Murd*] 1 Ff, Am Qq 241, 242 *Right, As*  
Camb, *Right* as Qq 1, 2, *Right*, as Qq 3-8, Ff, As Pope 242 *Come*  
*yourself*] Ff, *thou deceiv'st thy selfe* Qq 243 *that sends* *here*] Ff, *hath*  
*sent us hither now to slaughter thee* Q 1, *that sent us hither now to murder thee*  
Qq 2-8 244, 245 *he* *fortune, And*] Ff, *when I parted with him, He* Qq

239 *lesson'd*] The murderer refers to 240 *kind*] naturally affectionate, as  
1 iii 353 above Compare *Coriolanus*, *Hamlet*, 1 ii 65 The murderer, in  
ii iii 185, Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, answer, plays on the more ordinary  
iii vi 51 meaning, "natural"

246 *labour my delivery*] busy him

*First Murd* Why, so he doth, when he delivers you

From this earth's thralldom to the joys of heaven

*Sec Murd* Make peace with God, for you must die, my lord

*Clar* Have you that holy feeling in your souls, 250

To counsel me to make my peace with God,

And are you yet to your own souls so blind

That you will war with God by murdering me?

O sirs, consider, they that set you on

To do this deed, will hate you for the deed 255

*Sec Murd* What shall we do?

*Clar* Relent, and save your souls

*First Murd* Relent! no, 'tis cowardly and womanish

*Clar* Not to relent is beastly, savage, devilish

Which of you, if you were a prince's son,

Being pent from liberty, as I am now, 260

If two such murderers as yourselves came to you,

Would not entreat for life?

My friend, I spy some pity in thy looks,

O, if thine eye be not a flatterer,

Come thou on my side, and entreat for me, 265

As you would beg, were you in my distress!

A begging prince what beggar pities not?

247 *First Murd* 1 Ff, 2 Qq when] Ff, now Qq you] Ff, thee Qq  
 248 earth's] Ff, worlds Qq 250 Have you your souls] Ff, Hast thou  
 thy soule Qq 252 are you your own souls] Ff, art thou thy  
 own soule Qq 253 you will] Ff, thou wilt Qq by] for Qq 3-8 254 O]  
 Ff, Ah Qq they] Ff, he Qq 255 for the dead] Ff, for this deede Qq  
 257 68 *First Murd* Relent! no my lord!] arranged as Steevens (Tyrwhitt  
 conj), Camb, Ff arrange thus, 259, 260, 261, 262, 266, 257, 258, 263, 264, 265,  
 267, 268, Qq thus, 257, 258, 263, 264, 265, 267 [omitting 259-62, 266, 268], Pope  
 as Qq, but omitting 267 257 no] Ff, omitted Qq 258 devilish] Q 1, Ff,  
 and devilish Qq 2-8 262 Would life] Would life, as you would  
 begge, Were you in my distresse F, Would life? Ah! you would beg,  
 Were distresse Theobald 263 thy] your Qq 6, 8 264 thine] Ff, thy  
 Qq 266 As distresse] see line 262 above

self to procure my delivery So Kyd,  
*Spanish Tragedy*, act iii —

"My lord, I write as my extremes  
 require,

That you would labour my de-  
 livery",

and Marlowe, *Jew of Malta*, c 1589-90,  
 act iii —

"It is not yet long since

That I did labour thy delivery "

Compare *Eastward Ho*, act v "I do  
 wonder that you, being the keeper  
 of a prison, should labour the release  
 of your prisoners "

257 68 See Appendix I

267 There is perhaps a reminiscence  
 of this line in Chapman (?), *Alphonsus*,  
 v 2 (Shepherd, 413), where the Em-  
 peror says to his murderer, "Think  
 what I am that beg my life of thee "

*Sec Murd* Look behind you, my lord!

*First Murd* Take that, and that! [*Stabs him*] if all this will not do,

I'll drown you in the malmsey-butt within 270

[*Exit, with the body.*]

*Sec Murd* A bloody deed, and desperately dispatch'd!

How fain, like Pilate, would I wash my hands

Of this most grievous murder—

*Re-enter First Murderer*

*First Murd* How now! what mean'st thou that thou help'st me not?

By heaven, the duke shall know how slack you have been! 275

*Sec Murd* I would he knew that I had sav'd his brother!

Take thou the fee, and tell him what I say,

For I repent me that the duke is slain [*Exit*]

*First Murd* So do not I go, coward as thou art!

Well, I'll go hide the body in some hole, 280

Till that the duke give order for his burial

And, when I have my meed, I will away,

For this will out, and then I must not stay [*Exit*]

269 *Take that, and that*] Ff, *I thus, and thus* Qq *if all do*] Ff, *if this will not serve* Qq, *and, if this will not serve* Capell 270 *drown you*] Ff, *chop thee* Qq *within*] Ff, *in the next room* Qq *Exit, with the body*] Steevens, *Exit* Ff, omitted Qq 271 *dispatch'd*] Ff, *perform'd* Qq 272 *hands*] Ff, *hand* Qq 1-7 273 *grievous murder*] Ff, *grievous guilty murder done* Qq *Re enter* ] Camb, *Enter* Ff omitted Qq 274 *How now not*] Ff (as prose), *Why dost thou not helpe me* Qq 275 *heaven*] Qq 6 8, Ff, *heavens* Qq 1-5 *you have been*] Ff (as prose), *thou art* Qq 280 *Well, I'll go*] Ff, *Now must I* Qq *the body*] Ff, *his body* Qq 281 *Till that*] Ff, *Vntill* Qq *give*] Ff, *take* Qq 282 *will*] Ff, *must* Qq 283 *then*] Ff, *here* Qq *Exit*] Ff, *Exeunt* Qq

## ACT II

### SCENE I—*London The Palace*

*Flourish Enter KING EDWARD sick, QUEEN ELIZABETH, DORSET, RIVERS, HASTINGS, BUCKINGHAM, GREY, and others*

*K Edw* Why, so now have I done a good day's work  
 You peers, continue this united league  
 I every day expect an embassy  
 From my Redeemer, to redeem me hence,  
 And now in peace my soul shall part to heaven, 5  
 Since I have made my friends at peace on earth  
 Rivers and Hastings, take each other's hand,  
 Dissemble not your hatred, swear your love  
*Riv* By heaven, my soul is purg'd from grudging hate,  
 And with my hand I seal my true heart's love! 10  
*Hast* So thrive I, as I truly swear the like!  
*K Edw* Take heed you dally not before your king,

*ACT II SCENE I Flourish* ] Ff, omitted Qq *Enter King Edward others* ] *Enter the King sick, the Queene, Lord Marquisse Dorset, Rivers, Hastings, Catesby, Buckingham, Woodvill, Ff, Enter King, Queene, Hastings, Rivers, Dorset, &c* Qq (Qq 3-8 omit Dorset) 1 *Why, so* ] *Why so* Ff, *So* Qq *have I* ] Ff, *I have* Qq 5 *now in peace* ] Qq, *more to peace* Ff *part to* ] Qq 3 8, Ff, *part from* Qq 1, 2 6 *made* ] Ff, *set* Qq 7 *Rivers and Hastings* ] Qq, *Dorset and Rivers* Ff. 9 *soul* ] Ff, *heart* Qq 11 *truly* ] omitted Qq 3 8

5 *now in peace* ] Ff have evidently a printer's error for "more in peace," which is Steevens' reading

7 *Rivers and Hastings* ] Ff here are clearly wrong The editor was probably misled by some marginal correction in his MS Rivers and Hastings had been on bad terms Rivers and Dorset, on the contrary, were uncle and nephew, and the leaders of the Woodville party It is curious that the editor, who added

line 25 below, did not see that the present alteration was inappropriate

8 *Dissemble not your hatred* ] The meaning is obvious, but the phrase is capable of another interpretation Malone's explanation is needlessly elaborate The line may be paraphrased thus Do not hide your hatred beneath a mere show of friendship, but swear truly to be friends

Lest He that is the supreme King of kings  
 Confound your hidden falsehood, and award  
 Either of you to be the other's end 15

*Hast* So prosper I, as I swear perfect love!

*Riv* And I, as I love Hastings with my heart!

*K Edw* Madam, yourself is not exempt from this,  
 Nor you, son Dorset, Buckingham, nor you  
 You have been factious one against the other 20  
 Wife, love Lord Hastings, let him kiss your hand,  
 And what you do, do it unfeignedly

*Q Eliz* There, Hastings, I will never more remember  
 Our former hatred, so thrive I and mine!

*K Edw* Dorset, embrace him, Hastings, love lord mar-  
 quess 25

*Dor* This interchange of love, I here protest  
 Upon my part, shall be inviolable

*Hast* And so swear I [They embrace]

*K Edw* Now, princely Buckingham, seal thou this league  
 With thy embracements to my wife's allies, 30  
 And make me happy in your unity

*Buck [To the Queen]* Whenever Buckingham doth turn his  
 hate

Upon your grace, but with all duteous love  
 Doth cherish you and yours, God punish me  
 With hate in those where I expect most love! 35

18 15] Ff, are Qq from this] Ff, in this Qq 19 you,] Ff, your Qq  
 23 There] Ff, Here Qq 25 K Edw Dorset marquess] King Dorset  
 him Hastings Marquess (two lines) Ff, omitted Qq 26 This]  
 Q 1, Ff, Thus Qq 2-8 27 inviolable] Ff, unviolable Qq 28 swear I]  
 Ff, swear I my Lord Qq They embrace] Capell 32 To the Queen]  
 Rowe 33 Upon your grace] Ff, On you or yours Qq but with all] and  
 not with Pope

20 factious] Johnson explains as that their boughs made a goodlie greene  
 "active" or "urgent" Mr Craig rooffe"  
 suggests that the meaning here is "in 32 34 Pope's emendation of 34, men-  
 active opposition" Probably the de- tioned above, avoids the difficulty of  
 rived meaning "guilty of faction" is the passage, which seems to arise from  
 really implied the attempt to combine two strong as

30 embracements] Used again, severations, whose meaning is opposed,  
*Comedy of Errors*, I i 44, *Troilus and in one connected sentence The doubt-  
 Cressida*, IV v 148, *Henry VIII* I i 1 ful passage in *Winter's Tale*, I ii  
 10 Decker, *Bel Man of London*, 459, 460, may be explained by a simi-  
 speaks of branches of trees that "in lar attempt to combine two opposite  
 their embracements held so fast together, thoughts together.

When I have most need to employ a friend,  
 And most assured that he is a friend,  
 Deep, hollow, treacherous, and full of guile,  
 Be he unto me ! This do I beg of God,  
 When I am cold in love to you or yours

40

[*They embrace*]

*K Edw* A pleasing cordial, princely Buckingham,  
 Is this thy vow unto my sickly heart  
 There wanteth now our brother Gloucester here,  
 To make the blessed period of this peace

*Buck* And, in good time, here comes the noble duke

45

*Enter GLOUCESTER*

*Glou* Good morrow to my sovereign king and queen,  
 And, princely peers, a happy time of day !

*K Edw* Happy indeed, as we have spent the day,  
 Gloucester, we have done deeds of charity,  
 Made peace of enmity, fair love of hate,  
 Between these swelling wrong-incensed peers

50

*Glou* A blessed labour, my most sovereign lord  
 Among this princely heap, if any here,  
 By false intelligence, or wrong surmise,

39 *God*] Qq, *heaven* Ff 40 *love*] Ff, *zeale* Qq 44 *blessed*] Ff,  
*perfect* Qq 45 *And duke*] Qq, *And in good time, Heere comes Sir Richard*  
*Ratcliffe, and the Duke* (two lines) Ff *Enter Gloucester*] Qq (before 45),  
*Enter Ratcliffe, and Gloster* Ff 49 *Gloucester*] *Gloster* Ff, *Brother* Qq  
 52 *my*] omitted Qq 3-8 *lord*] Ff, *liege* Qq 53 *Among*] Ff, *Amongst* Qq

37 *most assured*] *z e* I am most  
 assured The construction is ellip-  
 tical

45 The alteration in Ff of this line  
 and the stage direction following seems  
 unnecessary Ratcliff says and does  
 nothing in what follows, nor is it likely  
 that his name would be mentioned be-  
 fore Gloucester's, unless the metre made  
 it unavoidable But, since a whole line  
 which was metrically perfect had to be  
 altered into a line and a half, in order  
 to introduce Ratcliff's name, the editor  
 of F 1 must have had some ground to go  
 upon Probably his MS contained the  
 name of Ratcliff But Ratcliff's silent  
 part may have been omitted in the stage

performance, when there were not too  
 many actors to spare, and so the passage  
 passed into Qq, metrically emended,  
 and in a more satisfactory form

51 *swelling*] Compare *Othello*, II III  
 57 But the metaphor in the present  
 case is "swelling with wrath" rather  
 than "swelling with ambition" See  
 below, II II 117

53 *heap*] assembly (O E *heap*, a  
 multitude) Compare *Julius Caesar*,  
 I III 23, Chaucer, *Canterbury Tales*,  
 A 575 "The wisdom of an *heap* of  
 lerned men" *New Eng Dict* quotes  
 Earl Rivers, *Dictes and notable Wise*  
*Sayings of the Philosophers*, 1477, p.  
 105 "A great *heap* of sheep,"

Hold me a foe , 55  
 If I unwittingly, or in my rage,  
 Have ought committed that is hardly borne  
 By any in this presence, I desire  
 To reconcile me to his friendly peace  
 'Tis death to me to be at enmity , 60  
 I hate it, and desire all good men's love  
 First, madam, I entreat true peace of you,  
 Which I will purchase with my duteous service,  
 Of you, my noble cousin Buckingham,  
 If ever any grudge were lodg'd between us , 65  
 Of you, Lord Rivers, and Lord Grey, of you,  
 That all without desert have frown'd on me,  
 Dukes, earls, lords, gentlemen, indeed of all .  
 I do not know that Englishman alive,  
 With whom my soul is any jot at odds, 70  
 More than the infant that is born to-night  
 I thank my God for my humility

Q *Eliz* A holy day shall this be kept hereafter

55, 56 *Hold* *rage*] arranged as Malone (sugg Capell), one line Qq, Ff  
 56 *unwittingly*] Qq, *unwillingly* Ff or *in my rage*] omitted Pope 58  
 By] Qq, To Ff 62 *true*] omitted Qq 3 8 66 *Of you, Lord of you*]  
 Qq 1-4, *Of you my Lord of you* Qq 5 8, *Of you and you, Lord Rivers and of*  
*Dorset* Ff aft 67 Ff adds *Of you Lord Woodvill, and Lord Scales of you*

56 *in my rage*] in unthinking pas-  
 sion Compare Greene, *Orlando Fur-*  
*ioso* (Dyce, 99) —

"Theseus *in his rage*  
 Did never more revenge his wrong'd  
 Hippolytus  
 Than I will on the false Angel-  
 ica",  
*ibid* (108) —

"as cruel death  
 As fell to Nero's mother *in his*  
*rage*"

See *King Lear*, iv vii 78, *Coriolanus*,  
 v vi 148, and line 106 below

57 *hardly borne*] "To bear hard"  
 is to bear a grudge Compare the Latin  
*agere ferre* See *Julius Caesar*, ii i 215  
 Two further instances occur *ibid* i ii  
 317, iii i 157 *New Eng Dict* quotes  
*Life of Thomas Cromwell*, 1602, iv ii  
 112 "You bear me hard about the  
 abbey lands"

6668. See Appendix II

67 *without desert*] *ie* without desert  
 on my part

69 72 Milton, *Ekkonoklastes*, 1649,  
 chap 1, in support of the thesis that  
 "the deepest policy of a tyrant hath  
 been ever to counterfeit religious," says  
 that the poets "have been in this point  
 so mindful of decorum, as to put never  
 more pious words in the mouth of any  
 person, than of a tyrant I shall not  
 instance an abstruse author, wherein  
 the king [Charles I.] might be less con-  
 versant, but one whom we well know  
 was the closest companion of these his  
 solitudes, William Shakespeare, who  
 introduces the person of Richard the  
 Third, speaking in as high a strain of  
 piety and mortification as is uttered in  
 any passage of this book [*Ekkon Bas-  
 like*], and sometimes to the same sense  
 and purpose with some words in this  
 place 'I intended,' saith he, 'not only  
 to oblige my friends, but my enemies,'"

I would to God all strifes were well compounded  
 My sovereign lord, I do beseech your highness 75  
 To take our brother Clarence to your grace  
*Glou* Why, madam, have I offer'd love for this,  
 To be so flouted in this royal presence?  
 Who knows not that the gentle duke is dead?

[*They all start*

You do him injury to scorn his corse 80  
*K Edw* Who knows not he is dead? who knows he is?  
*Q Eliz* All-seeing heaven, what a world is this!  
*Buck* Look I so pale, Lord Dorset, as the rest?  
*Dor* Ay, my good lord, and no man in the presence,  
 But his red colour hath forsook his cheeks 85  
*K Edw* Is Clarence dead? the order was reverse'd  
*Glou* But he, poor soul, by your first order died,  
 And that a winged Mercury did bear,  
 Some tardy cripple bare the countermand,  
 That came too lag to see him buried 90  
 God grant that some, less noble and less loyal,  
 Nearer in bloody thoughts, and not in blood,  
 Deserve not worse than wretched Clarence did,  
 And yet go current from suspicion!

75 *lord*] Ff, *hege* Qq *highness*] Ff, *maiestie* Qq 78 *so flouted*] Ff,  
*thus scorned* Qq (*scornde* Q 6) 79 *gentle*] Ff, *noble* Qq [*They all start*]  
 Ff, omitted Qq 81 *K Edw*] *King* Ff, *Riu* Qq *Who* *he is*] one  
 line as Qq, two lines (*Who* *dead?* *Who* *is?*) Ff 84 *no man*] Ff,  
*no one* Qq *the presence*] Ff, *this presence* Qq 87 *soul*] Qq, *man* Ff  
 89 *bare*] Ff, *bore* Qq 92 *and not*] Ff, *but not* Qq

83 See below, line 136 Buckingham's remark on the sudden pallor of Dorset himself and his relations is malicious. They are Buckingham's enemies, and he wishes to fasten the stigma of guilt upon them.

84 *in the presence*] "Presence" is used in the sense of "noble company," *Midsummer Night's Dream*, I i 61. In *Richard II* I iii 289 it means "presence-chamber."

89 *Some tardy cripple*] Steevens mentions a proverbial expression found in Drayton, *Barons' Wars*, 1603, II st 28.—

"Ill news hath wings, and with the winde doth goe,  
 Comfort's a cripple, and comes ever slow."

90 *lag*] late. Compare *King Lear*, I ii 6, and see Mr Craig's note. 92 Steevens cites *Macbeth*, II iii 146, 147.

94 *go current*] Compare Decker, *Guls Horn Booke*, chap III "Certaine I am, that when none but the golden age went currant upon earth, it was higher treason to clip haire, then to clip money." See also Machin and Markham, *Dumb Knight*, act III "My plot is current and it cannot miss."

*Enter DERBY*

*Der* A boon, my sovereign, for my service done<sup>1</sup> 95

*K Edw* I prithee, peace my soul is full of sorrow

*Der* I will not rise, unless your highness hear me

*K Edw* Then say at once, what is it thou demand'st

*Der* The forfeit, sovereign, of my servant's life,

Who slew to-day a riotous gentleman, 100

Lately attendant on the Duke of Norfolk

*K Edw* Have I a tongue to doom my brother's death,

And shall that tongue give pardon to a slave?

My brother kill'd no man his fault was thought,

And yet his punishment was bitter death 105

Who sued to me for him? who, in my rage,

Kneel'd at my feet, and bade me be advis'd?

Who spoke of brotherhood? who spoke of love?

Who told me how the poor soul did forsake

The mighty Warwick, and did fight for me? 110

Who told me, in the field by Tewkesbury,

When Oxford had me down, he rescued me,

And said "Dear brother, live, and be a king"?

Who told me, when we both lay in the field,

Frozen almost to death, how he did lap me 115

Even in his garments, and did give himself,

All thin and naked, to the numb cold night?

All this from my remembrance brutish wrath

96 *prithes*] F 4, *prethee* Ff 1-3, *pray thee* Qq 97 *hear me*] Ff, *grant* Qq  
98 *say*] Ff, *speak* Qq *demand'st*] Qq (*demaundest* Q 6), *requests* Ff 103  
*that tongue*] Ff, *the same* Qq 104 *kill'd*] Ff, *slew* Qq 105 *bitter*] Ff,  
*cruell* Qq 106 *rage*] Qq, *wraih* Ff 107 *at my feet*] Qq, *and my feet* Ff  
108 *Who spoke*] Ff, *Who spake* Qq *spoke of love*] F 1, *spoke in love* Ff 2 4,  
*of love* Qq 111 *by*] Qq, *at* Ff 116 *his garments*] Ff, *his owne garments* Qq  
1-5, *his owne armes* Qq 6 8 *did give*] Ff, *gaue* Qq

99 *The forfeit*] Johnson explains, where he fought on the side of War-  
"the remission of the forfeit" wick

107 *be advis'd*] be cautious, as 2 115 *lap*] cover, enfold, as *Macbeth*,  
*Henry VI* II iv 36, *Merchant of* I II 54, *Cymbeline*, v v 360 See  
*Venice*, II i 42 See also *Measure for* also song in *Gammer Gurton's Needle*,  
*Measure*, v i 469 act II —

112 *Oxford*] John de Vere, thirteenth Earl of Oxford (1443-1513), could not have been present at Tewkesbury, for he escaped to France immediately after the battle of Barnet,

"I am so wrapt, and throwly *lapt*,  
Of jolly good ale and old",  
Decker, *Seven Deadly Sinnes of London*  
(Arber, 27) "his legges, that are *lapt*  
rounde about with peeces of Rugge"

Sinfully pluck'd, and not a man of you  
 Had so much grace to put it in my mind 120  
 But when your carters or your waiting-vassals  
 Have done a drunken slaughter, and defac'd  
 The precious image of our dear Redeemer,  
 You straight are on your knees for pardon, pardon,  
 And I, unjustly too, must grant it you 125  
 But for my brother not a man would speak,  
 Nor I, ungracious, speak unto myself  
 For him, poor soul! The proudest of you all  
 Have been beholding to him in his life,  
 Yet none of you would once beg for his life 130  
 O God, I fear Thy justice will take hold  
 On me, and you, and mine, and yours for this!  
 Come, Hastings, help me to my closet Ah, poor Clarence!

[*Exeunt some with King and Queen*]

*Glou* This is the fruit of rashness Mark'd you not  
 How that the guilty kindred of the queen 135  
 Look'd pale when they did hear of Clarence' death?  
 O! they did urge it still unto the king  
 God will revenge it Come, lords, will you go  
 To comfort Edward with our company?

*Buck* We wait upon your grace [*Exeunt* 140]

122 *defac'd*] *defaste* Qq 1-3 126 *not a man*] *not a mast* Qq 3 5 127  
*speak*] *spake* Rowe 129 *beholding*] *beholden* Qq 5, 6 130 *beg*] Ff, *pleade*  
 Qq 133 *Come* *Clarence*] one line as Qq, two lines (*Come* *Closset*,  
*Ah* *Clarence*) Ff, *Come* [*to Hastings*], *help me* *Clarence* Capell *Ah*]  
 Ff, *Oh* Qq *Exeunt* *Queen*] Ff, *Exit* Qq 134 *fruit*] Qq, *fruits* Ff  
*rashness*] *rawnes* Qq 3 5, *rawnesse* Qq 6 8 138 *Come* *go*] Ff, *But come*  
*lets in* Qq 140 *Buck* *We* *grace*] Ff, omitted Qq

126 Holinshed, iii 703, following & openlie speake 'Oh infortunate  
 Halle, describes Edward's grief for brother, for whose life not one would  
 Clarence's "sudden execution" make sute!"  
 "When anie person sued to him for 137 *still*] continually, a very general  
 the pardon of malefactors condemned usage Mr Craig notes that it is  
 to death, he would accustomed saie, common in Ulster

SCENE II—*The Palace*

*Enter the* DUCHESS OF YORK, *with the two children of*  
CLARENCE

*Boy* Good grandam, tell us, is our father dead?

*Duch* No, boy

*Girl* Why do you weep so oft, and beat your breast,  
And cry "O Clarence, my unhappy son"?

*Boy* Why do you look on us, and shake your head, 5  
And call us orphans, wretches, castaways,  
If that our noble father were alive?

*Duch* My pretty cousins, you mistake me both  
I do lament the sickness of the king  
As loath to lose him, not your father's death 10  
It were lost sorrow to wail one that's lost

*Boy* Then you conclude, my grandam, he is dead  
The king mine uncle is to blame for it  
God will revenge it, whom I will importune  
With earnest prayers, all to that effect 15

*Girl* And so will I

*Duch* Peace, children, peace! the king doth love you well  
Incapable and shallow innocents,  
You cannot guess who caus'd your father's death

*Boy* Grandam, we can, for my good uncle Gloucester 20

*Enter the Duchess* Clarence *Enter the old Dutchesse* Clarence  
Ff, *Enter Dutches of Yorke with Clarence Children* Qq 1 *Boy* ]  
Qq, *Edw* Ff *Good grandam, tell us* ] Ff, *Tell me good Granam* Qq 3 *Girl* ]  
*Daugh* Ff, *Boy* Qq *do you* ] *do* Ff *weep so oft* ] Ff, *wring your hands* Qq  
5 *Boy* ] Ff, *Gerl* Qq 6 *orphans, wretches* ] Ff, *wretches, orphans* Qq 8  
*both* ] Ff, *much* Qq 10 *not your father's death* ] *now your fathers dead* Qq 6-8  
11 *sorrow to wail* ] Ff, *labour to weepe for* Qq 12 *you grandam* ] Ff,  
*Granam you conclude that* Qq 13 *for it* ] Ff, *for this* Qq 15 *earnest* ] Ff,  
*daily* Qq 16 *Girl And* ] *Daugh And* I Ff, omitted Qq

8 *cousins*] relations The usage is  
not altogether obsolete in our own day  
Compare *Much Ado About Nothing*, 1  
11 2 In Wilkins, *Miseries of Inforst*  
*Marriage*, act 1, an uncle says to his  
nephew "Thanks, my good *cos*"  
Richard speaks below of Edward V  
and the Duke of York as his cousins  
15, 16 Pope combined the two lines  
thus —

"With daily earnest prayers  
*Girl* And so will I"  
18 *Incapable*] destitute of capacity,  
without power of understanding So  
*Hamlet*, iv vii 179, and see Prof  
Dowden's note in Arden ed Com-  
pare Greene, *Friar Bacon* (Dyce, 164)  
"Doctors, whose doting night caps  
are not *capable* of my ingenious dig-  
nity"

Told me, the king, provok'd to it by the queen,  
 Devis'd impeachments to imprison him ,  
 And when my uncle told me so, he wept,  
 And pitied me, and kindly kiss'd my cheek ,  
 Bade me rely on him, as on my father, 25  
 And he would love me dearly as a child

*Duch* Ah! that deceit should steal such gentle shape,  
 And with a virtuous vizard hide deep vice!  
 He is my son, ay, and therein my shame ,  
 Yet from my dugs he drew not this deceit. 30

*Boy* Think you my uncle did dissemble, grandam?

*Duch* Ay, boy

*Boy* I cannot think it Hark! what noise is this?

*Enter QUEEN ELIZABETH, with her hair about her ears ,  
 RIVERS and DORSET after her*

*Q Elis* Ah! who shall hinder me to wail and weep,  
 To chide my fortune, and torment myself? 35  
 I'll join with black despair against my soul,  
 And to myself become an enemy

*Duch* What means this scene of rude impatience?

*Q Elis* To make an act of tragic violence  
 Edward, my lord, thy son, our king, is dead 40  
 Why grow the branches when the root is gone?  
 Why wither not the leaves that want their sap?  
 If you will live, lament if die, be brief,

21 *provok'd to it*] Ff, *prouoked* Qq 23 *my uncle*] Ff, *hee* Qq 24  
*pitied me*] Ff, *hugd me in his arme* Qq *cheek*] *cheekes* Qq 6-8 25  
*Bade*] *Bad* Ff, *And bad* Qq *on my*] *in my* Q 1 26 *a child*] Ff, *his*  
*child* Qq 27 *Ah*] Ff, *Oh* Qq *shape*] Ff, *shapes* Qq 28 *deep vice*] Ff,  
*foule guise* Qq. 29 *ay*] I Ff, *yea* Qq 1 3, 5 b, omitted Q 4 aft 33 *Enter*  
*Queen Elizabeth* . *after her*] *Enter the Queene* *after her* Ff, *Enter*  
*the Queene* Qq 34 *Ah*] Ff, *Oh* Qq 1, 2, 4, *Wh* Q 3, omitted Qq 5 8 36  
*soul*] *selfe* Qq 5 8 40 *thy*] Ff, *your* Qq 41 *when* *is gone*] Ff,  
*now* *is witherd* Qq 42 *that want their sap*] Ff, *the sap being gone* Qq

23, 24 Qq are here stronger and more lively than Ff But the words "And hug'd me in his arm," which spoil the metre of line 24, might very well be the result of a happy impromptu on the stage, preserved in an acting copy of the play Cambridge editors suggest the omission of "kindly" in line 24

34 *hinder me to was*] For "hinder to" compare Acts viii 36 For a parallel construction, see Chapman, *An Humorous Day's Mirth* (Shepherd, 30) "The sight thereof doth half *dis* may me to make proof"  
 39 *make*] make up, complete Compare *Cymbeline*, i iv 9

That our swift-winged souls may catch the king's,  
 Or, like obedient subjects, follow him 45  
 To his new kingdom of ne'er-changing night  
*Duch* Ah! so much interest have I in thy sorrow,  
 As I had title in thy noble husband  
 I have bewept a worthy husband's death,  
 And liv'd with looking on his images 50  
 But now two mirrors of his princely semblance  
 Are crack'd in pieces by malignant death,  
 And I for comfort have but one false glass,  
 That grieves me when I see my shame in him  
 Thou art a widow, yet thou art a mother, 55  
 And hast the comfort of thy children left,  
 But death hath snatch'd my husband from mine arms,  
 And pluck'd two crutches from my feeble hands,  
 Clarence and Edward O! what cause have I,  
 Thine being but an moiety of my moan, 60  
 To overgo thy woes and drown thy cries!

46 *ne'er changing night*] Ff, *perpetuall rest* Qq 47 *have I*] Qq, *have*  
 Ff 50 *with*] Ff, *by* Qq 54 *That*] Ff, *Which* Qq 56 *left*] Ff,  
*left thee* Qq 57 *husband*] Ff, *children* Qq 58 *hands*] Ff, *Is* Qq  
 59 *Clarence and Edward*] Ff, *Edward and Clarence* Qq 60 *Thine*  
*an moiety*] *Thine* a *moiety* Ff, *Then,* *moiety* Qq 1, 2, *Then,*  
*moitie* Qq 3-5, *Then,* *moitie* Q 6 *moan*] Ff, *griefe* Qq 1 5, *selfe* Qq 6 8  
 61 *woes*] Ff, *plants* Qq (*plants* Q 2) *thy cries*] *the cries* Qq 5, 6

46 *ne'er-changing night*] This is without doubt the better, and probably the original, reading. This gloomy and spacious idea of the life after death is in keeping with the spirit of the tragic writers of Shakespeare's youth. Pickersgill argued for Qq, on the ground that Elizabeth is not oppressed by the terrors of death, but that life has lost its value to her, and that "perpetual rest" is the form in which the idea of death would most naturally occur to one in her frame of mind. Ff seemed to him to contain "a sort of stock phrase," lofty, but not appropriate. That it is, in a certain sense, a stock phrase, is corroborated by 1 iv 47 above. That it represents a very general and appropriate notion in contemporary tragedy, is seen by such passages as Marlowe, 1 *Tamburlaine*, iv 4, where Theridamas speaks of

Olympia's soul as wandering, brighter than the sun, "about the black circumference" of hell. Compare also the prologue to *Spanish Tragedy*, c. 1588, where the ghost of Andrea, on his way to Pluto's court, passes "thro' dreadful shades of ever glooming night." Qq probably perpetuate a stage corruption, the result of an attempt to remedy a possible confusion with 1 iv 47 50 54. These metaphors are used by old Lucretius in *Lucrece*, 1758-64.

60 *moiety*] In Shakespeare, "moiety" does not necessarily bear its strict meaning of "half." Compare *All's Well that Ends Well*, iii 11 69, where it means, as here, a portion. On the other hand, see Fletcher and Massinger, *Spanish Curate*, 1622, v 3 —

"Your brother hath deserved well.  
*Hen* And shall share  
 The moiety of my state"

*Boy* Ah, aunt! you wept not for our father's death

How can we aid you with our kindred tears?

*Girl* Our fatherless distress was left unmoan'd,

Your widow-dolour likewise be unwept!

65

*Q Eliz* Give me no help in lamentation,

I am not barren to bring forth complaints

All springs reduce their currents to mine eyes,

That I, being govern'd by the watery moon,

May send forth plenteous tears to drown the world

70

Ah! for my husband, for my dear lord Edward!

*Chil* Ah! for our father, for our dear lord Clarence!

*Duch* Alas! for both, both mine, Edward and Clarence!

*Q Eliz* What stay had I but Edward? and he's gone

*Chil* What stay had we but Clarence? and he's gone

75

*Duch* What stays had I but they? and they are gone

*Q Eliz* Was never widow had so dear a loss!

*Chil* Were never orphans had so dear a loss!

*Duch* Was never mother had so dear a loss!

Alas! I am the mother of these griefs

80

Their woes are parcell'd, mine is general

She for an Edward weeps, and so do I,

I for a Clarence weep, so doth not she

62 *Ah*] Ff, *Good* Qq 63 *kindred*] Ff, *kindreds* Qq 64 *Girl*] *Gerl*  
 Qq, *Daugh* Ff 65 *widow dolour*] Ff, *widowes dolours* Qq, *widow dolours*  
 Pope 67 *complaints*] Ff, *laments* Qq 68 70 Put in margin by Pope  
 69 *moon*] Ff, Qq 7, 8, *moane* Qq 1 6 71 *Ah*] Ff, *Oh* Qq (and below, 72)  
*dear*] Ff, *eire* Q 1, *eyre* Q 2, *heire* Qq 3 8 72 *Chil*] Ff, *Ambo* Qq (and  
 below, 78) 74 *he's*] Ff, *he is* Qq 1-5, *is he* Q 6 (and below, 75) 76  
*stays*] *stay* Qq 6-8 78 *Were*] Ff, *Was* Qq *never*] Q 1, Ff, *ever* Qq 2-8  
 (and below, 79) *so dear a*] Ff, Qq 7, 8, *a dearer* Qq 1-6 79 *so dear a*]  
 Ff, *a dearer* Qq 80 *griefs*] Ff, *mones* Qq 81 *mine is*] Ff, *mine are* Qq  
 82 *an Edward*] Ff, *Edward* Qq 83 *weep*] *weepes* F 1

65 *widow-dolour*] The hyphen is inserted in Ff, and should be kept as in "widow comfort" (*King John*, III iv 105). An instance of arbitrary hyphening in Ff is found below, line 112, "You cloydy Princes, & hart sorowing-Peeres"

68 *reduce*] in the literal sense of "bring back," as below, v v 36. Compare D'Avenant's prologue to *The Woman Hater*, 1649 "Twas he reduced Evadne from her scorn"

69, 70 Elizabeth compares her eyes to the sea, receiving back from the rivers the moisture which it gives forth, and governed by the influence of the moon. When we have accepted the first part of the comparison, it is difficult to agree with Johnson that "the introduction of the moon is not very natural"

81 *parcell'd*] Compare *Antony and Cleopatra*, v ii. 163

- These babes for Clarence weep, and so do I,  
 I for an Edward weep, so do not they 85  
 Alas! you three on me, threefold distress'd,  
 Pour all your tears I am your sorrow's nurse,  
 And I will pamper it with lamentation  
*Dor* Comfort, dear mother God is much displeas'd  
 That you take with unthankfulness His doing 90  
 In common worldly things, 'tis call'd ungrateful,  
 With dull unwillingness to repay a debt  
 Which with a bounteous hand was kindly lent,  
 Much more to be thus opposite with heaven,  
 For it requires the royal debt it lent you 95  
*Riv* Madam, bethink you, like a careful mother,  
 Of the young prince your son send straight for him,  
 Let him be crown'd, in him your comfort lives  
 Drown desperate sorrow in dead Edward's grave,  
 And plant your joys in living Edward's throne 100

*Enter* GLOUCESTER, BUCKINGHAM, DERBY, HASTINGS,  
 and RATCLIFF

- Glou* Sister, have comfort all of us have cause  
 To wail the dimming of our shining star,  
 But none can help our harms by wailing them  
 Madam, my mother, I do cry you mercy,

84, 85 *These babes so do not they*] Q 1, *These babes and so do they*  
 Qq 2 8, *These babes for Clarence weep, so do not they* (one line) Ff 87 *Pour*  
*Proue* Q 2 88 *lamentation*] Ff, *lamentations* Qq 89-100 *Dor Comfort*  
*throne*] Ff, omitted Qq aft 100 SCENE III Pope *Enter Gloucester*  
*Ratcliff*] *Enter Richard Ratcliffe* Ff, *Enter Glocest with others*  
 Qq 101 *Sister*] Ff, *Madame* Qq 103 *help our*] Ff, *cure their* Qq

84, 85 Q 1, being the only form in which these lines make sense, may be taken as the original form of the passage. In later editions of Qq, line 85 was altered, with more regard to sound than sense. F 1 probably restored the true reading from the MS source, but the printer, working with the interlined Q, could easily have overlooked the end of line 84 and the beginning of line 85, and so produced a nonsense line

89 *dear mother*] Dorset addresses

Queen Elizabeth. The transition is abrupt, and should be noted in the text

92 *repay*] Pope emended the metre by reading "pay." The first syllable of "repay" is not strong enough to make the verse noticeably discordant.

94 *opposite with heaven*] Compare *Twelfth Night*, II v 162, Lyly, *Alexander and Campaspe*, act 1 "Thou thinkest it a grace to be opposite with Alexander." See also *Timon of Athens*, I 1 284.

I did not see your grace humbly on my knee 105  
 I crave your blessing  
*Duch* God bless thee, and put meekness in thy breast,  
 Love, charity, obedience, and true duty!  
*Glou* Amen [*Aside*] and make me die a good old man!  
 That is the butt-end of a mother's blessing, 110  
 I marvel that her grace did leave it out  
*Buck* You cloudy princes and heart-sorrowing peers,  
 That bear this heavy mutual load of moan,  
 Now cheer each other in each other's love  
 Though we have spent our harvest of this king, 115  
 We are to reap the harvest of his son  
 The broken rancour of your high-swoll'n hates,  
 But lately splinter'd, knit and join'd together,  
 Must gently be preserv'd, cherish'd, and kept  
 Me seemeth good, that, with some little train, 120  
 Forthwith from Ludlow the young prince be fet  
 Hither to London, to be crown'd our king  
*Riv* Why with some little train, my Lord of Buckingham?  
*Buck* Marry, my lord, lest, by a multitude,

105 *your grace*] you Pope 109 *Aside*] Hanmer (before *Amen*) and  
*make me*] *make me* Q 6, *make me* to Qq 7, 8 110 *That is*] Ff, *That*, Qq  
*a mother's*] Q 1, Ff, *my mothers* Qq 2 8 111 *that*] Ff, *why* Qq 113  
*heavy mutual*] Ff, *mutuall heavy* Qq 115 *of this*] Q 1, Ff, *for this* Qq  
2 8 117 *hates*] Ff, *hearts* Qq 118 *splinter'd*] *splinted* Qq 2-8 119  
*gently*] Q 1, Ff, *greatly* Qq 2 8 121 *fet*] Ff, *fetht* Qq 123-40 *Riv*  
*Why* say I] Ff, omitted Qq

112 *cloudy*] melancholy, as *Lucrece*,  
 1084, *Macbeth*, III vi 41, *The Tempest*,  
 II i 142

113 *load of moan*] Compare *Troilus*  
 and *Cressida*, II ii 107

117-19 *broken rancour* kept]  
 Some doubt has been cast upon the text  
 of this difficult passage, and it has been  
 suggested that "rancour" should be  
 altered to some other word, such as  
 "concord." But there can be very  
 little doubt that the subject of the verbs  
 in line 119 is, not any special word in  
 the preceding lines, but the general idea  
 contained in them. Paraphrased, the  
 sense is as follows. Now that your  
 dissensions, which, having swollen  
 high, had broken out in rancour, have  
 been healed, and the wound has been  
 splinted and sewn up, the healthy con-

dition, which is the result of that heal-  
 ing, must be preserved. The quota-  
 tion from *Cymbeline*, v v 344, 345, given  
 by Abbott to illustrate I iii 63 69 above  
 (see note), is more applicable here

118 *splinter'd*] i.e. splinted, bound  
 up with splints. Compare *Othello*, II  
 iii 329

121 *Ludlow*] See More (ap Holin-  
 shed, iii 714) At the time of his  
 father's death, Edward V "kept his  
 household at Ludlow in Wales [*sic*],  
 which countre being farre off from the  
 law and recourse to justice, the  
 prince was in the life of his father sent  
 thither, to the end that the authoritie  
 of his presence should refraine euill  
 disposed persons from the boldnesse of  
 their former outrages"

124 *More* (*us*) gives the reasons,

The new-heal'd wound of malice should break out, 125  
 Which would be so much the more dangerous,  
 By how much the estate is green and yet ungovern'd  
 Where every horse bears his commanding rein,  
 And may direct his course as please himself,  
 As well the fear of harm, as harm apparent, 130  
 In my opinion, ought to be prevented

*Glou* I hope the king made peace with all of us,  
 And the compact is firm and true in me

*Riv* And so in me, and so, I think, in all  
 Yet, since it is but green, it should be put 135  
 To no apparent likelihood of breach,  
 Which haply by much company might be urg'd  
 Therefore I say with noble Buckingham,  
 That it is meet so few should fetch the prince

*Hast* And so say I 140

*Glou* Then be it so, and go we to determine  
 Who they shall be that straight shall post to Ludlow

134-40 *Riv* And prince *Hast* And I] *Hast* And prince  
*Stan* And I Capell 139 so few] but few Hammer 142 Ludlow]  
*Qq*, London Ff (and 154 below)

which Shakespeare attributes to Buckingham, as Richard's personal conclusions, derived from consultation with Buckingham and Hastings "Should all the realme fall on a rore," the guilt of breach of truce would fall upon the queen and her kindred

127 *estate*] The risk is the more imminent, in proportion to the novelty of the change in the state, and the absence of any supreme controlling hand Buckingham emphasises the need of control, and so points obliquely to Gloucester as the man who is fit to exercise it In line 135 below, Rivers calls the newly made compact "green"

134 Malone followed Capell in as signing this speech to Hastings, and line 140 to Stanley This would only make Gloucester's party acquiesce in an arrangement favourable to themselves, and for this Hastings' brief assent in line 140 is sufficient Shakespeare's object surely was to bring out the ready agreement of the queen's

partisans, intimidated by their fear of Gloucester, yet willing, against hope, to show their adhesion to the new made peace, on whose maintenance he and his friends were laying such stress

139 *so few*] a certain limited number  
 142 *Ludlow*] Ff reading is indefensible Spedding attributed the error to the printer, but it occurs twice in thirteen lines The editor of F 1 seems to have had little knowledge of history (compare II 1 66 68 above, II iv 1, 2 below) Probably in the MS he found "London" written here by mistake for "Ludlow"—a very comprehensible error He would have altered his Q in consequence, and "Ludlow" again in line 154 to match Richard was at York about this time, and actually met the king on his way from York to London The editor of F 1 is hardly likely to have known this If he did, he was guilty of a misplaced accuracy, for which there was no warrant in the text

Madam, and you, my mother, will you go  
To give your censures in this business?

*Q Eliz* } With all our hearts 145  
*Duch* }

[*Exeunt all but Buckingham and Gloucester*

*Buck* My lord, whoever journeys to the prince,  
For God's sake, let not us two stay at home  
For, by the way, I'll sort occasion,  
As index to the story we late talk'd of,  
To part the queen's proud kindred from the prince 150  
*Glou* My other self, my counsel's consistory,  
My oracle, my prophet!—My dear cousin,  
I, as a child, will go by thy direction  
Toward Ludlow then, for we'll not stay behind

[*Exeunt*

143 *mother*] *Qq*, *Sister* *Ff* 144 *business*] *Ff*, *waighly busines* *Qq* -  
145 *Q Eliz Duch With hearts*] *Ans With hearts* *Qq*, omitted *Ff*  
*Exeunt Gloucester*] *Exeunt manet Glo Buck Qq*, *Manet Buckingham*  
*and Richard Ff* 147 *stay*] *Q 1, Ff*, *be Qq 2-8* *at home*] *Ff*, *behinde* *Qq*  
149 *late*] *Q 1, Ff 1-3*, *lately Qq 2-8, F 4* 150 *prince*] *Ff*, *King Qq* 152  
*prophet*!—*My*] *Theobald* (sugg Warburton), *prophet, my Qq, Ff* 153 *as*]  
*Ff*, *like Qq* 154 *Toward*] *Ff*, *Towards Qq* *we'll*] *Ff*, *we will Qq*  
*Exeunt*] *Ff*, *Exit Qq 3-8*, omitted *Qq 1, 2*

143 *mother*] Gloucester would naturally address the queen dowager before his mother, of whom she took precedence *Qq* therefore have the better reading

144 *censures*] judgments So *1 Henry VI* ii iii 10, *Winter's Tale*, ii i 37, Fletcher, *False One*, i i —  
"my opinion

Is, still committing it to graver censure,

You pay the debt you owe him"

Compare Chapman (?), *Alphonsus*, i i "as for Mentz, I need not censure him," i e give my opinion of him

148 *sort occasion*] choose, contrive

an opportunity For "sort" compare *1 Henry VI* ii iii 27, *3 Henry VI* v 87, *1 Henry IV* ii iii 13 "The purpose you undertake is dangerous the time itself unsorted"

149 *index*] prelude, preface "Index" was the name given to the finger printed in the margin of a book, and pointing to its main arguments or other important contents, as they might occur An abstract or list of these, prefixed to the book, became known in course of time as the index See Mr Hart on *Othello*, ii i 263 Compare *Troilus and Cressida*, i iii 343, and iv iv 85 below.

SCENE III—*London A street**Enter two Citizens, meeting**First Cit* Good morrow, neighbour whither away so fast?*Sec Cit* I promise you, I scarcely know myself

Hear you the news abroad?

*First Cit*

Yes, that the king is dead

*Sec Cit* Ill news, by'r lady, seldom comes the better

I fear, I fear, 'twill prove a giddy world

5

*Enter another Citizen**Thurd Cit* Neighbours, God speed!*First Cit*

Give you good morrow, sir

*Thurd Cit* Doth the news hold of good king Edward's death?*Sec Cit* Ay, sir, it is too true, God help the while!*Thurd Cit* Then, masters, look to see a troublous world*First Cit* No, no, by God's good grace, his son shall reign 10*Thurd Cit* Woe to that land that's govern'd by a child!*Sec Cit* In him there is a hope of government,

SCENE III] SCENE IV Pope *Enter meeting* Capell, *Enter two Citizens* Qq, *Enter one Citizen at one doore, and another at the other* Ff  
 1 *Good morrow, neighbour* Ff, *Neighbour well met* Qq 3 *Hear* Ff,  
 1 *Heare* Qq 3 *First Cit Yes* 1 *Yes* Ff, 2 *I Qq that* omitted Ff 2-4  
 4 *Sec Cit Ill* 2 *Ill* Ff, 1 *Bad* Qq 5 *giddy* Ff, *troublous* Q 1, *troublesome* Qq 2 8  
 6 *Thurd Cit Neighbours* *morrow, sir* Ff, 3 *Cit Good*  
*morrow neighbours* Qq 7 *the news* Ff, *this newes* Qq 8 *Sec Cit Ay*  
*while* Ff, 1 *It doth* Qq 10 *good* Q 1, Ff, omitted Qq 2 8

4 *seldom comes the better*] Reed quotes *The English Courtier and Country Gentleman*, 1586, sig B "As the proverb sayth, *seldome come the better*" Pope's alteration, "a better," is discountenanced, as Malone remarks, by Reed's parallel

7 *hold*] continue unchanged, hold good, as *King Lear*, v 1 1, Beaumont and Fletcher, *Faithful Shepherdess*, 1 3 "Speak, shall our meeting *hold*?"

11 Ecclesiastes x 16 "The same text is used by Langland with reference to the minority of *Richard II* see *Piers the Plowman*, prologue 192 "þere þe catte is a kitoun, þe courte is full elyng, þat witnesseth holiwrite who so wil it rede, *Ve terre ubi puer rex est, &c*"

12-15 These lines suffer from the

connexion by one verb of two ideas, one present, the other future A some what similar difficulty of construction has been noted above, 11 1 32-34 The pessimist of the party has quoted Scripture to vouch for the dangers of a minority His more hopeful friend rebukes his forebodings "We may hope for good government in the case of this king, who, while he is still under age, shall govern well through his council, and shall govern us well in his own person, when he is come to his majority" The meaning is more easy to see than to paraphrase, and the expression of the thought is more than a little redundant Qq "that" may be a conjunction, introducing a sentence explanatory of "hope" This makes as good sense as Ff

Which, in his nonage, council under him,  
And, in his full and ripened years, himself,

No doubt, shall, then and till then, govern well 15

*First Cit* So stood the state, when Henry the sixth

Was crown'd in Paris but at nine months old

*Third Cit* Stood the state so? No, no, good friends, God  
wot!

For then this land was famously enrich'd

With politick grave counsel, then the king 20

Had virtuous uncles to protect his grace

*First Cit* Why, so hath this, both by his father and mother

*Third Cit* Better it were they all came by his father,

Or by his father there were none at all,

For emulation, who shall now be nearest, 25

Will touch us all too near, if God prevent not

O! full of danger is the Duke of Gloucester, .

And the queen's sons and brothers haught and proud,

13 *Which*] Ff, *That* Qq 16 *Henry*] Ff, Q 8, *Harry* Qq 17 17 *in*  
*Paris*] Ff, *at Paris* Qq 18 *No, no* God wot] Ff, *no good my friend*  
*not so* Qq 22 *First Cit* *Why, so*] Ff, 2 *So* Qq 22 *his father*] Ff, *the*  
*father* Qq (and below, 23, 24) 25 *who shall now be*] Ff, *now, who shall be*  
Qq 26 *Will*] Q 1, Ff, *Which* Qq 28 28 *sons and brothers haught*] Ff,  
*kindred haughty* Qq, *kindred haughty are* Capell *haught and proud*] *haughty,*  
*proud* Pope

16 *Henry*] probably a trisyllable  
Compare 1 *Henry VI* iii 1 76, and see  
note on i 1 67 above

17 *crown'd*] Henry VI was pro-  
claimed king of France in Paris, after  
the death of his grandfather, Charles  
VI, October, 1422. He was then about  
a year old. He was not crowned in  
Paris till December, 1430, when he was  
nine years, not nine months, old.

19 *famously*] excellently. Compare  
*Coriolanus*, i 1 37. Miss Austen, *The*  
*Watsons*, p. 326, makes a young man  
of fashion say "I shall retreat in as  
much secrecy as possible to the most  
remote corner of the house, where I  
shall order a barrel of oysters, and be  
*famously* snug."

27 The popular apprehension of  
Gloucester is illustrated by an anecdote,  
told on good authority by More (ap.  
Holinshed, iii 712), which Shakespeare  
must have remarked. "The selfe night,  
in which king Edward died, one Mistie

brooke, long yer morning, came in  
great haste to the house of one Pottier  
dwelling in Redcrosse-strete without  
Creplegate and when he was with  
hastie rapping quickelie letten in, he  
shewed unto Pottier, that king Edward  
was departed. "By my truth man,"  
quoth Pottier, "then will my maister  
the Duke of Gloucester be king."

28 *haught*] Compare 3 *Henry VI*  
ii 1 169 "the haught Northumber-  
land", Greene, *Orlando Furioso*  
(Dyce, 106) "the pride of haught  
Latona's son." One of the 1608 Qq  
of *Richard II* reads "haught" in iv  
1 254. In 2 *Henry VI* i iii 71, where  
F 1 reads "haughtie," Ff 2-4 read  
"haught." Dyce reads for  
"haughtie" in Lodge and Greene,  
*Looking Glass* (p. 117) "If doughty  
deeds more haught than any done."  
In the present case, Qq perhaps repre-  
sent the corruption of the line on the  
stage.

- And, were they to be rul'd, and not to rule,  
 This sickly land might solace as before 30  
*First Cit* Come, come, we fear the worst, all will be well  
*Third Cit* When clouds are seen, wise men put on their  
 cloaks,  
 When great leaves fall, then winter is at hand,  
 When the sun sets, who doth not look for night?  
 Untimely storms make men expect a dearth 35  
 All may be well, but, if God sort it so,  
 'Tis more than we deserve, or I expect  
*Sec Cit* Truly, the hearts of men are full of fear  
 You cannot reason almost with a man,  
 That looks not heavily and full of dread 40  
*Third Cit* Before the days of change, still is it so  
 By a divine instinct, men's minds mistrust  
 Pursuing danger, as, by proof, we see  
 The water swell before a boist'rous storm  
 But leave it all to God Whither away? 45  
*Sec Cit* Marry, we were sent for to the justices  
*Third Cit* And so was I I'll bear you company [*Exeunt*

29 to rule] rule Qq 6 8 31 *First Cit*] Ff, 2 Qq will] Ff, shall Qq  
 32 are seen] Ff, appeare Qq 33 then] Ff, the Qq 35 make] Qq,  
 makes Ff 38 *Sec Cit*] Ff, 1 Qq hearts] Ff, soules Qq fear] Ff,  
 bread Qq 1, 2, dread Qq 3-8 39 You] Ff, Yee Qq reason almost] reason  
 (almost) Ff, almost reason Qq 40 dread] Ff, feare Qq 41 days] Ff,  
 times Qq 43 Pursuing danger] Ff, Ensuing dangers Qq 44 water]  
 Ff, waters Qq 46 Marry, we were] Ff, We are Qq justices] Ff,  
 Justice Qq, justice's Anon conj ap Camb

30 solace] Compare *Cymbeline*, I vi  
 86

32 Compare Sonnet xxxiv 1-4.  
 36 sort] appoint, dispose, as *Mer-*  
*chant of Venice*, v 1 132 Compare  
 "sort occasion," above, II ii 148

41-44 The sentiment is More's (ap  
 Holinshed, III 721) "Before such great  
 things, mens hearts of a secret instinct  
 of nature misgriue them, as the sea  
 without wind swelleth of himselfe some  
 time before a tempest"

SCENE IV—*London The Palace*

*Enter the ARCHBISHOP OF YORK, the young DUKE OF YORK,  
QUEEN ELIZABETH, and the DUCHESS OF YORK*

*Arch* Last night, I hear, they lay at Northampton,  
At Stony-Stratford will they be to-night  
To-morrow, or next day, they will be here

*Duch* I long with all my heart to see the prince  
I hope he is much grown since last I saw him 5

*Q Eliz* But I hear no, they say my son of York  
Has almost overta'en him in his growth

*York* Ay, mother, but I would not have it so

*Duch* Why, my young cousin, it is good to grow

*York* Grandam, one night, as we did sit at supper, 10  
My uncle Rivers talk'd how I did grow  
More than my brother "Ay," quoth my uncle Glou-  
cester,

"Small herbs have grace, great weeds do grow apace "

And since, methinks, I would not grow so fast,

Because sweet flowers are slow, and weeds make haste 15

*Duch* Good faith, good faith, the saying did not hold

In him that did object the same to thee

He was the wretched'st thing when he was young,

*Enter the Archbishop* [ *Enter Arch bishop, young Yorke, the Queens,  
and the Dutchesse* Ff, *Enter Cardinall, Dutches of Yorke, Quee* [or *Qu* ],  
*young Yorke* Qq 1 *Arch* ] Ff, *Car* Qq (and so in line 36, etc )  
*hear* ] Qq, *heard* Ff *Northampton* ] Qq, *Stony Stratford* Ff 2 *At Stony-  
Stratford will they be* ] Qq, *And at Northampton they do rest*, Ff 6 *no* ]  
*not Pope* 7 *Has* ] Ff, *Hath* Qq *almost* ] omitted Qq 6-8 9 *young* ]  
*Qq, good* Ff. 13 *do grow* ] Ff, *grow* Qq

*Archbishop of York*] For this stage-  
direction and the reading in lines 1, 2,  
see Appendix III

6 *my son of York*] According to  
Holinshed, iii 719, York was at this  
time anything but the healthy, active  
boy whom Shakespeare pictures. Eliza-  
beth pleads with the Cardinal that,  
"beside his infancie, that also needeth  
good looking to," he "hath a while  
beene so sore diseased, vexed with  
sickness, and is so newlie rather a  
little amended, than well recovered,

that I dare put no person earthlie in  
trust with his keeping, but my selfe  
onlie "

13 *great weeds do grow apace*] Aldis  
Wright quotes Heywood's *Proverbs* —

"Ill weede growth fast, that is show-  
yng

In the show of thy fast growyng "  
Compare Chapman, *An Humorous  
Day's Mirth* (Shepherd, 36) "What  
soever I say to Monsieur Rowl, he  
shall say, 'Oh, sir, you may see an ill  
weed grows apace '"

So long a-growing, and so leisurely,  
 That, if his rule were true, he should be gracious 20  
*Arch* And so no doubt he is, my gracious madam  
*Duch* I hope he is, but yet let mothers doubt  
*York* Now, by my troth, if I had been rememb'ed,  
 I could have given my uncle's grace a flout,  
 To touch his growth nearer than he touch'd mine. 25  
*Duch* How, my young York? I prithee, let me hear it  
*York* Marry, they say my uncle grew so fast,  
 That he could gnaw a crust at two hours old  
 'Twas full two years ere I could get a tooth  
 Grandam, this would have been a biting jest 30  
*Duch* I prithee, pretty York, who told thee this?  
*York* Grandam, his nurse  
*Duch* His nurse! why, she was dead ere thou wast born  
*York* If 'twere not she, I cannot tell who told me  
*Q Eliz* A parlous boy! go to, you are too shrewd 35  
*Arch* Good madam, be not angry with the child  
*Q Eliz* Pitchers have ears

20 *his rule were true*] Ff, *this were a true rule* Qq 1, 2, *this were a rule* Qq  
 3 8, *this rule were true* Camb 21 *Arch*] *Car* Qq, *Yor* Ff *And so*  
*Madam*] Ff, *Why Madame, so no doubt he is* Qq 22 *he is*] Ff, *so too* Qq  
 25 *To touch mine*] Ff, *That should have neerer toucht his growth then he*  
*did mine* Qq 26 *How hear it*] one line as Qq, *How Yorke, I*  
*heare it* (two lines) Ff *young*] Ff, *pretty* Qq 27 *say my uncle*] Q  
 1, Ff, *say, that my Vnckle* Qq 2-8 30 *biting*] Q 1, Ff, *pretie* Qq 2 8  
 31 *prithee*] Ff, *pray thee* Qq *this*] Ff, *so* Qq 33 *His nurse*] Q 1, Ff,  
 omitted Qq 2 8 *wast*] Ff, *wert* Qq 35 *parlous*] Ff, *perilous* Qq

20 *gracious*] Compare *Julius Caesar*,  
 III 11 198, *Hamlet*, I 1 164

23 *had been rememb'ed*] Compare  
*Measure for Measure*, II 1 109, 110

27, 28 The legend is mentioned by  
 More (ap Holinshed, III 712) Shake-  
 speare alludes to it and its significance,  
 3 *Henry VI* v vi 53, 54, 74-77, and  
 IV 14 49 below Compare Margaret's  
 warning above, I III 289-291

35 *parlous*] a popular corruption of  
 "perilous" Shakespeare uses it as an  
 emphatic epithet, *Midsummer Night's*  
*Dream*, III 1 14, *As You Like It*, III  
 II 45 Compare Tournear, *Rev Trag*  
 act IV "A *parlous* melancholy", Beau-  
 mont and Fletcher, *Elder Brother*, II 11  
 "You are so *parlously* in love with  
 learning" Here and below, III 1 154,  
 the sense is much that in which we speak

of a precocious boy or girl as a "terrible  
 child", but a sarcastic intention in the  
 child's precocity is also implied. Compare  
*Measure for Measure*, II IV 172  
 Milton, *Animadversions upon Remon-*  
*strant's Defence*, 1641, has "sure some  
 pedagogue stood at your elbow, and  
 made it itch with their *parlous* criti-  
 cism" Decker and Middleton, *Roaring*  
*Girl*, 1611, II 1, refer to "*Parlous*  
 pond," which Reed conjectured to be  
 Peerless (= Perilous) Pool in Clerken-  
 well (see Hone, *Every Day Book*, I  
 485 9), so called from the number of  
 people who lost their lives there

*shrewd*] malicious, as *Much Ado*  
*About Nothing*, II 1 20-22, where  
 "curs't" (see I II 49 above) is used as  
 a synonym in the same passage

37 *Pitchers have ears*] See *Taming*

*Enter a Messenger*

*Arch* Here comes a messenger What news ?

*Mess* Such news, my lord, as grieves me to report

*Q Eliz* How doth the prince ?

*Mess* Well, madam, and in health 40

*Duch* What is thy news ?

*Mess* Lord Rivers and Lord Grey are sent to Pomfret,  
With them Sir Thomas Vaughan, prisoners

*Duch* Who hath committed them ?

*Mess* The mighty dukes,  
Gloucester and Buckingham

*Arch* For what offence ? 45

*Mess* The sum of all I can, I have disclos'd

Why or for what the nobles were committed

Is all unknown to me, my gracious lord

*Q Eliz* Ay me ! I see the ruin of my house !

The tiger now hath seiz'd the gentle hind , 50

Insulting tyranny begins to jet

after 37 *Enter a Messenger* ] Ff, *Enter Dorset* Qq 38 *Here comes news* ]  
Ff, *Here comes your sonne, Lo M Dorset* What newes Lord Marques (two  
lines) Qq 39 *Mess* ] Ff, *Dor* Qq (and so line 42, etc ) *report* ] Ff, *unfold*  
Qq 40 *doth* ] Ff, *fares* Qq 41 *thy* ] Q 1, Ff, the Qq 2-8 *news* ] Ff,  
*newes then* Qq 42, 43 *Lord Rivers* prisoners ] arranged as Qq, *Lo*  
*Rivers* *Grey* *Are sent* and with them *Sir Thomas* prisoners (3  
lines) Ff, *Lord Rivers and Lord Grey* *Are sent to Pomfret prisoners, and with*  
*them Sir Thomas Vaughan* Capell 44, 45 *Who hath offence* ] arranged  
as Pope, Camb , 3 lines, one to each speech, Qq, Ff 45 *Arch* ] Ff, *Car*  
Qq, *Queen* Johnson, *Q Eliz* Camb 47 *the nobles* ] Ff, *these nobles* Qq  
48 *lord* ] Ff, *lady* Qq 49 *Ay* ] Ah Rowe *ruin* ] Ff, *downfall* Qq *my*  
*house* ] Ff, *our house* Qq 51 *jet* ] Qq, *Intts* Ff

of the *Shrew*, iv iv 52, and Mr Bond's note Malone quotes William Bulleyn, *A Dialogue both pleasaunt and pretifull*, 1564, "Small p'tchers have great ears"

*Enter a Messenger* ] The speeches which follow seem to suit an ordinary messenger better than Dorset, who appears here in Qq In More's account, it is by a messenger from Hastings that Rotherham learns the fatal news

42 More (ap Holinshed, iii 715) says that "the lord Rivers, and the lord Richard, with Sir Thomas Vaughan" were sent from Northampton "into the north countrie, into diverse places to prison, and afterward all to Pomfret, where they were in conclusion

beheaded" Rivers was at Sheriff Hutton in the interval, Lord Richard Grey was at Gloucester's other Yorkshire castle of Middleham

50 The image is used also in *Lucrece*, 543 It is reversed in *Midsummer Night's Dream*, ii 1 232, 233

51, 52 *jet Upon* encroach upon Compare *Titus Andronicus*, ii 1 64, where Ff and later editors adopt the form "jut" "To jet," used absolutely, means "to strut, swagger," as *Twelfth Night*, ii v 36, Decker, *Seven Deadly Sinnes* (Arber, 15) "he sets up and downe in silks woven out of other mens stocks" Mr Craig ("Little Quarto" Shakespeare) remarks upon the un-

Upon the innocent and aweless throne  
 Welcome, destruction, blood, and massacre !  
 I see, as in a map, the end of all

*Duch* Accursed and unquiet wrangling days, 55

How many of you have mine eyes beheld !  
 My husband lost his life to get the crown,  
 And often up and down my sons were toss'd,  
 For me to joy and weep their gain and loss  
 And being seated, and domestic broils 60  
 Clean over-blown, themselves, the conquerors,  
 Make war upon themselves, brother to brother,  
 Blood to blood, self against self O, preposterous  
 And frantic outrage, end thy damned spleen,  
 Or let me die, to look on death no more ! 65

*Q Eliz* Come, come, my boy, we will to sanctuary  
 Madam, farewell

*Duch* Stay, I will go with you

*Q Eliz* You have no cause

*Arch* My gracious lady, go,

52 *aweless*] Ff, *lawlesse* Qq 53 *blood*] Ff, *death* Qq 60 *seated, and domestic broils*] *seated and domestike broiles*, Q 1 61 *over blown, themselves*] *ouerblowne themselves*, Q 1 62, 63 *brother to brother, Blood to blood*] Ff, *blood against blood* Qq 65 *death*] Qq, *earth* Ff 67 *Madam, farewell*] Ff, omitted Qq *Stay, I will go with you*] Ff, *Ile goe along with you* Qq 68 *Arch* [*To the Queen*] Malone

commonness of the present usage, of which *New Eng Dict* contains only two instances He suggests in an unpublished note that IV iii 42 below may throw some light on its meaning

52 *aweless*] which does not inspire awe *New Eng Dict* quotes T Adams, *Practical Works*, 1614, "It is a lawless school where there is an *awless* monitor" Qq "*lawlesse*" makes doubtful sense, unless it can bear the meaning of "without the power of administering law" But this is a strained interpretation

63 Spedding thought that F 1 intended to read "Blood to blood, self 'gainst self preposterous" Pope emended Qq "most preposterous"

65 *death*] Spedding attributed Ff reading to a printer's error It possibly was in the original text, in which case

Qq make a distinct emendation Or, again, it may have been a MS error peculiar to the copy which F 1 appears to have followed with such fidelity

66 *sanctuary*] More (ap Holinshed, III 715) says that Elizabeth, on hearing of Gloucester's *coup d'état*, "gath hir selfe in all the hast possible with hir yoonger sonne and hir daughters out of the palace of Westminster (in which she then laie) into the *sanctuarie*, lodging hir selfe and hir companie there in the abbats place" Halle adds, "and she and all her chvldren and compaignie were registred for *sanctuarye* persons" The abbot of Westminster at this period was John Esteney In 1470, Elizabeth had taken refuge with his predecessor, William Mullyng The "abbats place" stood south of the abbey church its remains form part of the present Deanery and College Hall

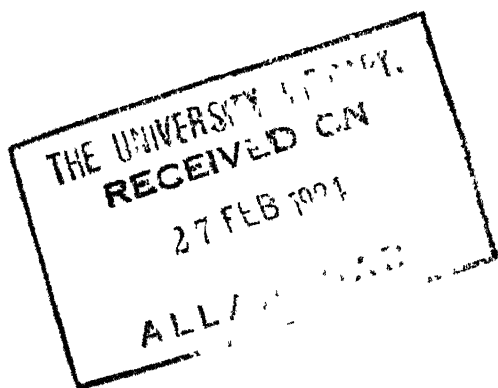
And thither bear your treasure and your goods  
 For my part, I'll resign unto your grace,  
 The seal I keep and so betide to me  
 As well I tender you and all of yours!  
 Come, I'll conduct you to the sanctuary

70

[*Exeunt*71 *to me] it me* Ff 2-473 *Come] Ff, Go* Qq

70 Rotherham's words are thus reported by More (*u s*) "Madame be yee of good cheere, for I assure you, if they crowne anie other king than your sonne, whome they now haue with them, we shall on the morow crowne

his brother, whome you haue here with you And here is the great seale, which in likewise as that noble prince your husband deliuered it vnto me, so here I deliuer it vnto you, to the vse and behoofe of your sonne"



## ACT III

### SCENE I—*London A street*

*The trumpets sound Enter the young PRINCE, the Dukes of GLOUCESTER and BUCKINGHAM, CARDINAL BOURCHIER, CATESBY, and others*

*Buck* Welcome, sweet prince, to London, to your chamber!

*Glou* Welcome, dear cousin, my thoughts' sovereign!

The weary way hath made you melancholy

*Prince* No, uncle, but our crosses on the way

Have made it tedious, wearisome, and heavy 5

I want more uncles here to welcome me

*Glou* Sweet prince, the untainted virtue of your years

Hath not yet divid'd into the world's deceit

No more can you distinguish of a man

Than of his outward show, which, God He knows, 10

*London*] Pope *A street*] Capell *Cardinal Bouchier*] *Cardinal* Qq, *Lord Cardinal* Ff *Catesby*] Capell, omitted Qq, Ff 1 *Welcome chamber*] one line as Qq, *Welcome London, To your Chamber* (two lines) Ff 8 *Hath*] *Haue* Qq 6-8 9 *No*] Ff, Q 8, *Nor* Qq 17

*Cardinal Bouchier*] See Appendix III and notes on *dramatis personæ*

1 *chamber*] Camden, *Britannia*, tr Holland, 1610, p 427 B, says that, after the Norman Conquest, London, "through the special favour and indulgence of Princes beganne to bee called *The King's Chamber*" Compare *ibid* p 421 D "London, the Eptome or Breviary of all Britain, the seat of the British Empire, and the *Kings of Englands Chamber*" So Heywood, *If you know not Me, you know Nobody*, 1633, part 2 (quoted by Steevens) "This city, our great chamber" *New Eng Dict* quotes Weever, *Ancient Funerall Monuments*, 1631 "This his Cite of Maldon, then the chamber

of his kungdome" In the pageant devised by Jonson for the coronation procession of King James, an erection in Fenchurch Street, symbolical of London, bore the title "Londinium," and below, in smaller characters, "Camera Regis" (Jonson, ed Gifford, 1 vol ed p 527) Giovanni Villani, *Cronica*, 1 41, says of Florence "La città di Firenze in quello tempo era camera d'imperio"

9, 10 *No more show*] You can distinguish nothing more in a man than that which you can distinguish in his outward behaviour The second "of" confuses the meaning a little, but is not superfluous

Seldom or never jumpeth with the heart.

Those uncles which you want were dangerous

Your grace attended to their sug'red words,

But look'd not on the poison of their hearts

God keep you from them, and from such false friends' 15

*Prince* God keep me from false friends' but they were none

*Glou* My lord, the mayor of London comes to greet you

*Enter the Lord Mayor, and his train*

*May* God bless your grace with health and happy days!

*Prince* I thank you, good my lord, and thank you all

I thought my mother and my brother York 20

Would long ere this have met us on the way

Fie! what a slug is Hastings, that he comes not

To tell us whether they will come or no!

*Enter LORD HASTINGS*

*Buck* And, in good time, here comes the sweating lord

*Prince* Welcome, my lord! what, will our mother come? 25

*Hast* On what occasion God He knows, not I,

The queen your mother and your brother York

Have taken sanctuary the tender prince

Would fain have come with me to meet your grace,

But by his mother was perforce withheld 30

*Buck* Fie! what an indirect and peevish course

Is this of hers! Lord cardinal, will your grace

Persuade the queen to send the Duke of York

Unto his princely brother presently?

16 aft *Prince* [*Aside*] Camb conj God none] one line as Qq,  
*God Friends, But* none (two lines) Ff aft 17 and his train] Capell,  
 omitted Qq, Ff. 29 have come] come Qq 3, 5-8 33 to send] the send Q 3,  
 they send Q 5

11 *jumpeth with*] agrees with, as  
*Merchant of Venice*, II ix 32, *1 Henry*  
*IV* I ii 78 *New Eng Dict* quotes  
 R D, *Hyperotomachia*, 1592 "The  
 corners of which triangle did jumpe  
 with the sides and lybus of the sub-  
 jacent plynth" Compare Lyly,  
*Alexander and Campaspe*, I 3 —

"*Crates* Thou thinkest it a grace  
 to be opposite with Alexander  
*Diogenes* And thou to be j<sup>d</sup>un  
 with Alexander"  
 31 *peevish*] See note on I iii 194  
 above, and compare *Hamlet*, I ii 100'  
*Othello*, IV iii 90

- If she deny, Lord Hastings, go with him, 35  
 And from her jealous arms pluck him perforce  
*Card* My Lord of Buckingham, if my weak oratory  
 Can from his mother win the Duke of York,  
 Anon expect him here, but, if she be obdurate  
 To mild entreaties, God in heaven forbid 40  
 We should infringe the holy privilege  
 Of blessed sanctuary! not for all this land  
 Would I be guilty of so deep a sin  
*Buck* You are too senseless-obstinate, my lord,  
 Too ceremonious and traditional 45  
 Weigh it but with the grossness of this age,  
 You break not sanctuary in seizing him

35 *him*] *them* Qq 5-8 39 *Anon*] omitted, Steevens conj 39, 40 *Anon*  
*forbid*] *Anon* *she be Obdurate to entreaties, God forbid* Pope 40  
*in heaven*] omitted Qq 3-8, Ff 42 *blessed*] omitted Pope 43 *deep*] *great*  
 Qq 3 8, Ff \* 44 *senseless obstinate*] hyphenated Theobald 46 *grossness of*  
*this*] *greatness of this* Q 6, *greatness of his* Qq 7, 8, *greenness of his* Hanmer  
 (from Warburton)

40-43 More (ap Holinshed, iii 717) quotes the Cardinal's words as Archbishop Rotherham's "And therefore (quoth the archbishop of Yorke) God forbid that anie man should, for anie-thing earthlie, enterprise to breake the immunitie & libertie of the sacred sanctuarie, that hath beene the safeguard of so manie a good mans life And I trust (quoth he) with God's grace, we shall not need it But for anie maner need, I would not we should doo it" In view of the confusion, due to More, between Bourchier and Rotherham, it should be noted that, both in More and Shakespeare, the Cardinal already has consented to attempt *persuasion*, but objects to *force* It is very unlikely that Rotherham would have undertaken persuasion so readily, and very improbable that the opportunity should have been offered to him See Appendix III and the appendix to Canon Leigh Bennett's *Archbishop Rotherham*, 1901, p 178

44 *senseless obstinate*] Of the alternative conjectures which the vehemence of the expression has provoked, Staunton's "needless - obstinate" comes nearest within the bounds of reason

46 *grossness*] Literally "coarseness, want of refinement" (*New Eng Dict*,

Schmidt) The implied meaning seems to be "judge the matter by the vulgar, practical standard of the present age" "Gross" is applied by Shakespeare to denote things plain and obvious compare *Othello*, I ii 72, and so it is used of unconcealed coarseness of language, as in *Measure for Measure*, II iv 82 Buckingham speaks as a man of the world, to assuage the scruples of the cardinal Warburton argues for "greenness of his age" on the ground that "grossness" means superstition, in which case, Buckingham's appeal, if obeyed, would have a precisely opposite effect to its intention Johnson takes "grossness" as equivalent to "licentious practices" See note on iv 1 79 below

47 More gives Buckingham a long speech of which this sentiment is the hypothesis While there are many who deserve the right of sanctuary, there are thriftless debtors, thieves, bankrupts, etc, who take advantage of it The evil might be amended without prejudice to innocent refugees in *lawful* peril of their body But the Duke of York is not one of these He is innocent before all the world, "and so sanctuary, neither none he needeth, nor also none can have" Again, a

The benefit thereof is always granted  
 To those whose dealings have deserv'd the place,  
 And those who have the wit to claim the place 50  
 The prince hath neither claimed it nor deserv'd it,  
 And therefore, in mine opinion, cannot have it,  
 Then, taking him from thence that is not there,  
 You break no privilege nor charter there  
 Oft have I heard of sanctuary men, 55  
 But sanctuary children ne'er till now

*Card* My lord, you shall o'er-rule my mind for once  
 Come on, Lord Hastings, will you go with me?

*Hast* I go, my lord

*Prince* Good lords, make all the speedy haste you may 60  
 [Exeunt Cardinal and Hastings]

Say, uncle Gloucester, if our brother come,  
 Where shall we sojourn till our coronation?

*Glou* Where it seems best unto your royal self  
 If I may counsel you, some day or two  
 Your highness shall repose you at the Tower, 65  
 Then where you please, and shall be thought most fit  
 For your best health and recreation

*Prince* I do not like the Tower, of any place  
 Did Julius Cæsar build that place, my lord?

52 *And*] omitted Ff 2-4 53 *taking*] *take* Qq 6-8 56 *ne'er*] Ff, *never*  
 Qq 57 *o'er rule*] Ff, *ouerrule* Qq 60 *Exeunt*] *Camb*, *Exit*  
 Qq 3 8, Ff (after 59), omitted Qq 1, 2 63 *seems*] *think'st* Qq 3 8, Ff

sanctuary man must not claim the right by proxy. The Duke is kept in sanctuary by his mother, perhaps against his will. What scruple of conscience, what breach of privilege, can be urged here? If any be allowed, it follows that no one may be taken out of sanctuary who says he will stay there. A child will be able to claim the right for fear of his schoolmaster. In this case there is not even the excuse of fear. "And verelie," adds Buckingham in parenthesis, "I have often heard of sanctuarie men, but I neuer heard earst of sanctuarie children" (see lines 55, 56). A terse summing up of his argument concludes a speech with successful effect. For the history of sanctuary privileges and

illustrations of the above arguments, see Raine's *Sanctuarium Dunelmense et Sanctuarium Beverlacense* (Surtees Society publications, vol 5), and *Rites of Durham*, ed J T Fowler, 1903, pp 41, 42, 226, etc (*ibid* vol 107).

58 *Lord Hastings*] According to More, the Cardinal went to the sanctuary "with diuers other lords with him." Halle names "the lord Haward" as using words to persuade the queen against any idea of danger. This was John, Lord Howard, afterwards Duke of Norfolk. Hastings is not mentioned.

69 *Julius Cæsar*] "It hath been the common opinion, and some have written—but of none assured ground—that Julius Cæsar was the original author and founder as well" of the

- Buck* He did, my gracious lord, begin that place, 70  
Which, since, succeeding ages have re-edified  
*Prince* Is it upon record, or else reported  
Successively from age to age, he built it?  
*Buck* Upon record, my gracious lord  
*Prince* But say, my lord, it were not regist'red, 75  
Methinks the truth should live from age to age,  
As 'twere retail'd to all posterity,  
Even to the general all-ending day  
*Glou* [*Aside*] So wise, so young, they say, do never live long  
*Prince* What say you, uncle? 80  
*Glou* I say, without characters, fame lives long  
[*Aside*] Thus, like the formal vice, Iniquity,

70 *Buck*] *Glo* Steevens 70, 71 *He did re edified*] *He did, my lord*  
since *Succeeding re-edified* Steevens conj 71 *re edified*] *rebuilt*  
Hanmer 74 *Upon*] *It is upon* Capell 78 *general all ending*] *Q 1,*  
*generall ending*] *Qq 2 8, Ff 79* [*Aside*] Johnson (and so 94) *never*] *neer*  
Pope 82 [*Aside*] *Ff 2 4 Thus*] *That Qq 6 8*

Tower of London, "as also of many other towers, castles, and great buildings within this realm" (Stow, *Survey*, ed. Morley, p 73)

73 *Successively*] Mr Craig sends a parallel from Holland, *Pliny*, vii 11 (1634, pt 1 p 160) "In the race and family of the Lepidi it is said there were three of them (not *successively* one after another, but out of order after some intermission) who had at their birth a little pannicle of thin skin growing over their eyes" Compare iii vii 135 below

77 *retail'd*] reported Compare iv iv 338 below, where the meaning is probably the same Malone quotes Minshew, *Ductor in Linguas*, 1617 "to retail or retell, G renommer, a Lat renumerare" Warburton explains that the story, being thus retailed, "like most other *retailed* things, became adulterated" He proposed "intail'd" instead, "which is finely and sensibly expressed, as though truth were the natural inheritance of our children, which it is impiety to deprive them of" Johnson supposed that "retail'd" might mean "diffus'd, dispersed"

78 *general all ending*] The reading of all the printed copies save Q 1 may be due to the printer of Q 2, who con

founded "all," on this supposition, with the last syllable of "general" The occurrence of the error in Ff may point, however, to its source in some early MS of the play For "all-ending" compare "all-shaking" in *King Lear*, iii 11 6

79 Steevens quotes "Is cadit ante senem, qui sapit ante diem" Reed gives an English form from Timothy Bright, *A Treatise of Melancholie*, 1586 "They be of short life who are of wit so pregnant" Aldis Wright refers to Holland's translation of *Pliny*, 1601, 11 51, where the proverb is attributed to Cato the Censor

81 *characters*] written records Compare *Winter's Tale*, iii 11 47 The word is usually accented on the first syllable, but, in *Hamlet*, i 11 59, the verb "character" has the penultimate accent Compare "characterity" in *Merry Wives of Windsor*, v v 77, *Julus Caesar*, ii 1 308

82 *the formal vice, Iniquity*] The nearest parallel in Shakespeare to this much disputed passage is *1 Henry IV* ii 11 499, 500 References to the Vice of the Morality plays are also found, e.g., *Twelfth Night*, iv 11 134, *1 Henry IV* ii 11 151, *Henry V* iv 11 75-77 In Jonson, *The Devil is an Ass*, 1616, i 1, Pug asks Satan to let

I moralise two meanings in one word  
*Prince* That Julius Cæsar was a famous man,  
 With what his valour did enrich his wit, 85  
 His wit set down to make his valour live  
 Death makes no conquest of this conqueror,

83 *moralise*] *moralize* Warburton, *moralize*,— Capell 87 *this*] Q 1,  
*his* Qq 2-8, Ff

him wander about the world for a fortnight, and take a Vice with him. When asked what kind of Vice he wishes, he answers "Why any Fraud, Or Covetousness, or Lady Vanity, or old Iniquity." Iniquity then introduces himself. This shows (1) that the Vice often represented one special sin, but (2) that he frequently appeared under the general name of Iniquity. This is further indicated by Jonson, *Staple of News*, 1625, interact 11 "the old way, when *Iniquity* came in like Hokus Pokos, in a juggler's jerkin, with false skirts, like the knave of clubs." "Formal" unquestionably means "according to form, usual, regular," as in *Antony and Cleopatra*, 11 v 41, compare *Merry Devil of Edmonton*, sc 1. "The formal deed 'twixt me and thee." Thus it seems that Iniquity was the customary name under which the Vice appeared. Warburton wished to read "formal wise antiquity," arguing (1) that the Vice was anything but formal (i.e. sober) in demeanour, (2) that Shakespeare would not allow an exact speaker discoursing on antiquity, to wander off to a simile which had so little to do with his theme. He concludes complacently "Formal-wise is a compound epithet, an extreme fine one, and admirably fitted to the character of the speaker, who thought all *wisdom* but *formality*. It must therefore be read for the future with a hyphen." Of course, Warburton takes "formality" in its derived sense. Polonius would be an excellent example of a "formal wise" statesman. So Lucio, in Beaumont and Fletcher, *Woman Hater*, is described as "a weak, formal statesman." i.e. devoted to the formalities of his office. Malone thought that "formal" might mean "shrewd, sensible", but in his parallels (*Comedy of Errors*, v 1 105, *Twelfth Night*,

11 v 128) the word simply means "normal."

83 The sense is "I imply a double meaning in one phrase" (1) We may assume that *double entendre* was part of the Vice's business during his career on the stage. It is the most effective weapon of Mathew Merygreeke, his direct descendant, in *Ralph Roister-Doister*. (2) For "moralise" in this sense see *As You Like It*, 11 1 44, *Lucrece*, 103, and compare "moral" in the sense of "hidden meaning," *Much Ado About Nothing*, 111 iv 78 80. (3) The "one word" which Richard moralises, as Monck Mason and others explain, is the phrase "lives long," repeating the "live long" of line 79. The Prince has caught the last words of his uncle's aside, and Richard repeats them for his benefit, altering the beginning and meaning of his sentence. For "word" in the sense of a collection of words, like Fr *mot*, It *motto*, compare *Richard II* 1 111 152. (4) Warburton explains his colon after "moralise" thus "I moralise as the ancients [see previous note] did. And how was that? the having two meanings to one word." Capell understands "two meanings in one word" as a gloss which Richard adds to "moralise." The sentence as it stands, without alteration, would have been perfectly clear to an audience of Shakespeare's day.

85 *With what*] i.e. that with which his valour, etc.

87 *of this*] Later Qq and Ff readings may be defended on the ground that Cæsar, by perpetuating his fame in written history, has conquered the oblivion which Death brings. He is thus Death's conqueror, not Death his. On the other hand, it is equally probable that the printer of Q 2 dropped the "t" of "this," and that his error,

For now he lives in fame, though not in life  
 I'll tell you what, my cousin Buckingham,—  
*Buck* What, my gracious lord? 90  
*Prince* An if I live until I be a man,  
 I'll win our ancient right in France again,  
 Or die a soldier, as I liv'd a king  
*Glou* [*Aside*] Short summers lightly have a forward spring

*Enter young YORK, HASTINGS, and the CARDINAL*

*Buck* Now, in good time, here comes the Duke of York 95  
*Prince* Richard of York! how fares our loving brother?  
*York* Well, my dread lord—so must I call you now  
*Prince* Ay, brother, to our grief, as it is yours  
 Too late he died that might have kept that title,  
 Which by his death hath lost much majesty 100  
*Glou* How fares our cousin, noble Lord of York?  
*York* I thank you, gentle uncle O, my lord,  
 You said that idle weeds are fast in growth  
 The prince my brother hath out-grown me far  
*Glou* He hath, my lord  
*York* And therefore is he idle? 105  
*Glou* O, my fair cousin, I must not say so  
*York* Then he is more beholding to you than I  
*Glou* He may command me as my sovereign,  
 But you have power in me as in a kinsman  
*York* I pray you, uncle, give me this dagger 110  
*Glou* My dagger, little cousin? with all my heart  
*Prince* A beggar, brother?

91 *An*] Theobald, *And* Qq, Ff (and so 148) 94 *summers have*  
*summers* has Pope (ed 1), *summer* has Pope (ed 2), *summer*  
*hath* Capell (conj) 96 *loving*] *noble* Qq 3 8, Ff 97 *arcad*] *deare* Qq  
 3-8, Ff 107 *beholding*] *beholden* Pope 110 *uncle*] *uncle then* Hanmer  
*this*] *this your* Warburton

having some warrant in sense, was  
 adopted by subsequent editions

94 *lightly*] usually Steevens quotes  
 the proverb "There's lightning  
*lightly* before thunder," and Jonson,  
*Cynthia's Revels*, II 1 "He is not  
*lightly* within to his mercer" So  
 Berners' *Prossart*, I 38 "Sir John  
 of Hainault and the lord of Fauquemont

ever rode *lightly* together" Perhaps  
 this whole line is proverbial

99 *late*] lately Hanmer altered  
 to "soon," apparently failing to  
 grasp this not uncommon use of the  
 word

109 *in me*] with me, as regards me  
 Collier's MS contained the suggestion  
 "o'er me"

*York* Of my kind uncle, that I know will give,  
 And being but a toy, which is no grief to give  
*Glou* A greater gift than that I'll give my cousin 115  
*York* A greater gift? O, that's the sword to it  
*Glou* Ay, gentle cousin, were it light enough  
*York* O, then, I see, you will part but with light gifts,  
 In weightier things you'll say a beggar may  
*Glou* It is too heavy for your grace to wear 120  
*York* I weigh it lightly, were it heavier  
*Glou* What, would you have my weapon, little lord?  
*York* I would that I might thank you as you call me  
*Glou* How?  
*York* Little 125  
*Prince* My Lord of York will still be cross in talk  
 Uncle, your grace knows how to bear with him  
*York* You mean to bear me, not to bear with me  
 Uncle, my brother mocks both you and me,  
 Because that I am little, like an ape, 130  
 He thinks that you should bear me on your shoulders  
*Buck* With what a sharp-provided wit he reasons!  
 To mitigate the scorn he gives his uncle,

114 *but*] omitted Ff 2 4 *which is*] *it is* Ff 2 4, omitted, Steevens conj.  
*grief*] gift Qq 6-8 120 *heavy*] Q 1, *weightie* Qq 2 8, Ff 121 *I*] *I'd*  
 Hanmer 123 *as*] *as as* Q 3, *as, as, F* 1 132 *sharp-provided*]  
 hyphenated Theobald 133 *gives*] *gives* Qq 3-7

114 *being but a toy*] since what I ask is but a trifle, it is no grief to give it The construction is elliptic F 2 emends both construction and metre, but apparently without authority York's meaning is perfectly clear

130, 131 The point of the jest lies, of course, in the relation between the words "bear" and "ape" (1) Johnson refers to the custom, at country shows, of taking a monkey and bear about together, and setting the monkey on the bear's back Compare Beatrice's jest in *Much Ado About Nothing*, II 1 43 York likens himself to an ape, and his uncle to a bear, while the grotesqueness of the jest is heightened by the "envious mountain" which Nature has heaped on Gloucester's back (2) Steevens, disregarding the

probable *double entendre* in "bear," understands the allusion as referring to the custom by which the fool in large households carried an ape perched on his back, and quotes Ulpian Fulwel, *Ars Adulandi*, etc 1596 "Thou hast an excellent back to carry my lord's ape," and Jonson, *Masque of the Gipsies Metamorphosed*, 1621 "The fellow with the ape, Or the ape on his shoulder" *New Eng Dict* quotes Overbury, *Characters*, 1614 [A Rhyme] "There is nothing in the earth so pitiful—no, not an ape-carrier" Shakespeare alludes to the custom, *Winter's Tale*, IV III 101

132 *sharp provided*] Compare "senseless obstinate" above, line 44

133 *the scorn*] the taunt. Compare 1 *Henry IV* III II 64, *Othello*, IV I 83

- He prettily and aptly taunts himself  
 So cunning and so young is wonderful 135
- Glou* My lord, will't please you pass along?  
 Myself and my good cousin Buckingham  
 Will to your mother, to entreat of her  
 To meet you at the Tower and welcome you
- York* What, will you go unto the Tower, my lord? 140
- Prince* My lord protector needs will have it so
- York* I shall not sleep in quiet at the Tower
- Glou* Why, what should you fear?
- York* Marry, my uncle Clarence' angry ghost  
 My grandam told me he was murder'd there 145
- Prince* I fear no uncles dead
- Glou* Nor none that live, I hope
- Prince* An if they live, I hope I need not fear  
 But come, my lord, and with a heavy heart,  
 Thinking on them, go I unto the Tower 150
- [*A Sennet Exeunt all but Gloucester, Buckingham  
 and Catesby*]
- Buck* Think you, my lord, this little prating York  
 Was not incensed by his subtle mother  
 To taunt and scorn you thus opprobriously?
- Glou* No doubt, no doubt O, 'tis a perilous boy,  
 Bold, quick, ingenious, forward, capable 155
- He is all the mother's, from the top to toe

136 *lord*] *gracious lord* Hanmer *you*] *your highness* Capell 141 *needs*  
 Q 1, omitted Qq 2 8, Ff 149 *and*] Ff, omitted Qq 150 *A Sennet*]  
 F 1 *Exeunt Catesby*] *Exeunt Prin Yor Hast Dors manet Rich*  
 [Bich Q 5, Bish Qq 6-8] *Buc* Qq, *Exeunt Prince, Yorke, Hastings, and Dorset*  
*Manet* [Manent F 2] *Richard, Buckingham, and Catesby* Ff aft 150 SCENE II  
 Pope 154 *perilous*] *perious* Qq 7, 8, *parious* Camb

141 *needs*] Q 1 supplies the syllable missing from the rest of the printed copies Hanmer conjectured the omitted monosyllable to be "here", Collier MS suggested "e'en"

148 *fear*] The prince has used "fear" in its ordinary sense (line 146) Now his thoughts revert to the uncles whom he has left in such jeopardy, and he uses it as above, 1 1 137

150 *A Sennet*] A set flourish of trumpets, used to mark such occasions as the royal progress in this scene See Mr Craig on *King Lear*, 1 1 34

152 *incensed*] instigated, as *Much Ado About Nothing*, v 1 242 In *Henry VIII* v 1 43 "incens'd" is not merely equivalent, as *New Eng Dict* takes it, to "insens'd," \*e informed, but implies that, by his information, Gardiner has instigated the suspicion of the council against Cranmer  
 154 *perilous*] The full form of the word is found in all copies of Qq and Ff except the latest Qq

155 *capable*] intelligent See II 1 18 above, and note. Compare *Hamlet*, III iv 127, *Troilus and Cressida*, III iii 310

*Buck* Well, let them rest Come hither, Catesby  
 Thou art sworn as deeply to effect what we intend,  
 As closely to conceal what we impart  
 Thou know'st our reasons urg'd upon the way, 160  
 What think'st thou? is it not an easy matter  
 To make William Lord Hastings of our mind,  
 For the instalment of this noble duke  
 In the seat royal of this famous isle?  
*Cates* He for his father's sake so loves the prince 165  
 That he will not be won to ought against him  
*Buck* What think'st thou then of Stanley? will not he?  
*Cates* He will do all in all as Hastings doth  
*Buck* Well, then, no more but this go, gentle Catesby,  
 And, as it were far off, sound thou Lord Hastings, 170  
 How he doth stand affected to our purpose,  
 And summon him to-morrow to the Tower,  
 To sit about the coronation  
 If thou dost find him tractable to us,

157 59 *Come hither* *impart*] *Come, Catesby, thou art sworn As deeply*  
*impart* Pope, *Come hither, gentle Catesby, thou art sworn As deeply*  
*impart* Capell (*Well* rest separate line), Camb edd con] *Thou art sworn*  
 as separate line 160 *know'st*] Ff, *knowest* Qq 161 *think'st*] Ff, *thinkest*  
 Qq 162 *William Lord*] lord William Pope 167 *will not*] Ff, *what will*  
 Qq 169 71 *Well* *purpose*] arranged as Pope, *Well* *this* *Goe*  
*farre off, Sound* *Hastings, How* *purpose* Ff, *Well* *this*  
*Go* . *a farre off, Sound* *how he stands affected Vnto our purpose* Qq  
 170 *sound thou*] *Sound* Qq 3 8 172, 173 *And summon* *coronation*] Ff, omitted Qq 174 *If thou* *us*] Ff, *if he be willing* Qq

160 *upon the way*] Two councils at least had been held upon the journey, the night-council at Northampton before the arrest of Rivers, and another the next day, after the return from Stony Stratford. Shakespeare, condensing history, makes the Protector's designs known to his private friends at a moment when, according to the historians, they were matured only in his own mind.

165 Holinshed and More bear frequent testimony to the friendship between Hastings and Edward IV. When Edward fled to Lynn in 1470, Hastings and Gloucester were his companions. Queen Elizabeth disliked Hastings "for the great fauour the king bare him, and also for that she thought him secretlie familiar with the king in wanton companie" (Holinshed, iii 713)

Although "sore enamoured upon" Jane Shore during the lifetime of Edward, "yet he forbore hir, ether for reuerence, or for a certeine friendlie faithfulness" (*ibid* 724). Gloucester seems to have liked him. His only reason for sacrificing him without hesitation was "feare least his life should haue quailed their purpose" (*ibid* 722).

169 75 Possibly Qq here, as in other cases, represent the passage as it was corrupted, when spoken hastily on the stage.

170 *far off*] "For which cause he moued Catesbie to prooue with some words cast out a *farre off*, whether he could thinke it possible to win the lord Hastings unto their part" (More, ap Holinshed, iii 722). Compare below, iii v 93 and note

Encourage him, and tell him all our reasons 175  
 If he be leaden, icy-cold, unwilling,  
 Be thou so too, and so break off the talk,  
 And give us notice of his inclination ,  
 For we to-morrow hold divided councils,  
 Wherein thyself shalt highly be employ'd 180  
*Glou* Commend me to Lord William tell him, Catesby,  
 His ancient knot of dangerous adversaries  
 To-morrow are let blood at Pomfret castle,  
 And bid my lord, for joy of this good news,  
 Give Mistress Shore one gentle kiss the more 185  
*Buck* Good Catesby, go, effect this business soundly  
*Cates* My good lords both, with all the heed I can  
*Glou* Shall we hear from you, Catesby, ere we sleep?  
*Cates* You shall, my lord  
*Glou* At Crosby Place, there shall you find us both 190  
 [Exit Catesby  
*Buck* Now, my lord, what shall we do, if we perceive

175 tell] Ff, show Qq 176 icy-cold] Camb (from Ingleby's conj), ice,  
 cold Qq, yce, cold Ff 177 the talk] Ff, your talke Qq 184 lord] Ff,  
 friend Qq 1-5, friends Qq 6-8 185 Mistress] genile Mistresse Qq 3 8  
 186 go, effect] Ff, effect Qq 187 can] Ff, may Qq 190 Place] Qq,  
 House Ff Exit Catesby ] Ff, after 189 Qq 3 8, omitted Qq 1, 2  
 191 Now perceive] one line as Qq, Now, my Lord, What perceive  
 (two lines) Ff. Now] omitted Pope

179 divided councils] "But the protector and the duke, after that they had sent the lord cardinall, the archbishop of Yorke, the bishop of Elie, the lord Stanleie, and the lord Hastings with manie other noble men, to common & deuse about the coronation in one place, as fast were they in an other place, contriuing the contrarie, and to make the protector king" (More, ap Holinshed, iii 721) Gairdner (pp 62, 63) shows that Gloucester allowed every facility to the council which sat at the Tower, to mature their plans, with the king's privity, undisturbed

182 knot] company, confederacy, as *Merry Wives of Windsor*, iii 11 52, iv 11 123, *Julius Caesar*, iii 1 117 Among the plays presented by the King's Players at the wedding festivities of Princess Elizabeth, 1613, was one called *A Knot of Fools* So

Pepys, *Diary*, 16th Dec 1662 "the world says of me, that all do conclude Mr Coventry, and Pett, and me, to be of a knot, and that we do now carry all things before us"

185 Mistress Shore] She had become Hastings' mistress after the death of Edward IV When Hastings was executed, she was deprived of her goods and sent to prison Gloucester failed to convict her of conspiracy with Hastings, and fell back on the charge of her known incontinence "And for this cause (as a goodlie continent prince, cleane and faultlesse of himself, sent out of heaven into this vicious world for the amendment of mens maners) he caused the bishop of London to put hir to open penance, going before the crosse in procession vpon a sundaie with a taper in hir hand" (More, ap Holinshed, iii 724).

Lord Hastings will not yield to our complots ?

*Glou* Chop off his head something we will determine

And look, when I am king, claim thou of me

The earldom of Hereford, and all the moveables 195

Whereof the king my brother was possess'd

*Buck* I'll claim that promise at your grace's hand

*Glou* And look to have it yielded with all kindness

Come, let us sup betimes, that afterwards

We may digest our complots in some form 200

[*Exeunt*]

192 *Lord*] Ff, *William Lord* Qq 193 *Chop* *determine*] *Chop*  
*Head* *Something* *determine* (two lines) Ff *head*] Ff, *head, man* Qq  
*something*] Ff, *somewhat* Qq *determine*] Ff, *do* Qq 195 *Hereford*]  
*Herford* Qq 3-5, *Hertford* Q 6 *all*] Ff, omitted Qq 196 *was*] Ff, *stood*  
 Qq 197 *hand*] Ff, *hands* Qq 198 *all kindness*] Ff, *all willingness*  
 Q 1, *willingnesse* Qq 2 8

192 *complots*] Below, line 200, the same word is used with the accent changed to the penultimate, which is the customary usage. Compare *Titus Andronicus*, II III 265, V I 65, V II 147, 2 *Henry VI* III I 147. So the verb is accented in *Richard II* I III 189.

195 Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford, Essex, and Northampton, left two daughters (1) The elder, Eleanor, married the youngest son of Edward III, Thomas, Duke of Gloucester and Earl of Buckingham, who was styled Earl of Essex in right of his wife. They had a daughter Anne, who married Edmund, Earl of Stafford. Her son Humphrey was created Duke of Buckingham by Henry VI, and his grandson, the second Duke of Buckingham, is the Buckingham of this play. (2) The lands of Hereford were

conveyed by the younger co-heiress, Mary, to her husband Henry, Earl of Derby, son of John of Gaunt, afterwards Henry IV. In 1397, three years after his wife's death, he was created Duke of Hereford. The fief continued in his line, and passed, with the other possessions of the crown, to the House of York at this time it was in the hands of the King. Buckingham's claim to the Earldom of Hereford was thus a claim to the moiety of the Bohun possessions which, by the marriage of a younger co-heiress, had passed to an elder branch of the royal family. The third Duke of Buckingham, who occurs in *Henry VIII*, was actually styled Earl of Hereford.

200 *digest*] arrange, give shape to, as Tourneur, *Revenger's Tragedy*, act III "most dreadfully *digested*!"

## SCENE II—Before Lord Hastings' house

*Enter a Messenger**Mess* My lord, my lord!*Hast.* [*Within*] Who knocks?*Mess* One from the Lord Stanley*Enter LORD HASTINGS.**Hast* What is't o'clock?*Mess* Upon the stroke of four

5

*Hast* Cannot thy master sleep these tedious nights?*Mess* So it appears by that I have to say

First, he commends him to your noble self

*Hast* What then?*Mess* Then certifies your lordship that this night

10

He dreamt the boar had razed off his helm

Besides, he says there are two councils kept,

And that may be determin'd at the one

SCENE II] SCENE III Pope Before house] Theobald Enter a Messenger ]  
 Enter a messenger to Lord Hastings Qq, Enter a Messenger to the doore of  
 Hastings Ff 1 My lord, my lord] Ff, What ho my Lord Qq 2 Who  
 knocks] Ff, Who knocks at the doore Qq 3 One] Ff, A messenger Qq  
 Enter Lord Hastings] Qq, after 5 Ff 4 What is't o'clock] Ff, Whats a  
 clocke Qq 6 thy master] Qq, my Lord Stanley Ff these] Q 1, Ff,  
 the Qq 2 6 7 appears] Ff, should seeme Qq 8 self] Ff, Lordship Qq  
 9, 10 What might] Ff, And then Mes And then he sends you word  
 (one line) Qq 11 He dreamt] Ff, He dreamt to night Qq boar] Qq  
 6-8, Ff, beare Qq 15 razed off] Ff, raste Qq 1-4, caste Q 5, cast Qq 6 8  
 12 kept] Ff, held Qq

5 Upon the stroke of four] More  
 (ap Holinshed, iii 723) says that  
 Stanley sent his messenger at midnight

6 thy master] Ff, contrary to the  
 usual custom, derange the metre  
 The probability, as Spedding suggests,  
 is that the editor of F 1 meant to alter  
 "thy master" to "Lord Stanley," but  
 forgot to strike out "thy", that the  
 printer noticed the weakness of the  
 phrase "thy Lord Stanley," and  
 changed "thy" to "my"

11 razed off] More (u s) uses the  
 word "him thought that a boare  
 with his tuskes so razed them both by  
 the heads, that the blood ran about  
 both their shoulders" Steevens says  
 that the term "razed or rashed is

always given to describe the violence  
 inflicted by a boar" Compare Sir  
*Lancelot du Lake* (ap Percy, *Reliques*,  
 1 bk 2, no 10) —

"They buckled them together so,  
 Like unto wild boares rashing",  
 Qq reading of *King Lear*, iii vii 58,  
 Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, v iii 8, uses it  
 with the simile of a lion "Rashing off  
 helms, and riving plates asonder" For  
 the word applied in a general sense, see  
 Berners' *Fronssart*, 1 147 "Then the  
 new town and bastide was pulled  
 down, and the castle that stood on the  
 haven rashed down," 1 e razed In  
*Hamlet*, iii ii 288, "razed shoes" are  
 shoes slashed or cut in patterns.

Which may make you and him to rue at the other  
 Therefore he sends to know your lordship's pleasure, 15  
 If you will presently take horse with him,  
 And with all speed post with him toward the north,  
 To shun the danger that his soul divines

*Hast* Go, fellow, go, return unto thy lord  
 Bid him not fear the separated councils, 20  
 His honour and myself are at the one,  
 And at the other is my good friend Catesby,  
 Where nothing can proceed that toucheth us  
 Whereof I shall not have intelligence  
 Tell him his fears are shallow, wanting instance, 25  
 And, for his dreams, I wonder he's so simple  
 To trust the mockery of unquiet slumbers  
 To fly the boar before the boar pursues,  
 Were to incense the boar to follow us  
 And make pursuit, where he did mean no chase 30  
 Go, bid thy master rise and come to me,  
 And we will both together to the Tower,  
 Where, he shall see, the boar will use us kindly

*Mess* I'll go, my lord, and tell him what you say [Exit

16 *you will presently*] Ff, *presently you will* Qq 17 *with him toward*  
 Ff, *into* Qq, *hence into* Capell 19 *Go, fellow*] *Good fellow* Qq 3 8  
 20 *councils*] Qq, *Councell* Ff 22 *good friend*] Ff, *servant* Qq 25  
*wanting*] Qq, *without* Ff *instance*] Q 1, Ff, *instance* Qq 2 8 26 *he's*  
*so simple*] Ff, *he is so fond* Qq 1 3, 5 8, *he is fond* Q 4 28 *pursues*] Ff,  
*pursues us* Qq 1, 2, *pursue us* Qq 3 6 30 *no chase*] *to chase* Q 4 34  
*I'll go* and] Ff, *My gracious Lord Ile* Qq Exit] omitted Qq 1, 2

21 *His honour*] Stanley Malone says that this was the usual title by which noblemen were addressed in Shakespeare's day. It was used indiscriminately with "his lordship." See Richard Field's dedication of Puttenham's (?) *Arte of English Poesie*, 1589, to Lord Burghley, or Bishop Hall's dedications of *Contemplations*, books 1 and 14, to the Earls of Exeter and Montgomery. The use of "his honour" was not confined to noblemen for instance, book 13 of *Contemplations* is dedicated to Sir Thomas Edmonds, a knight and member of the Privy Council, whom Hall addresses as "your Honour."

25 *instance*] cause, motive, as *Henry V* II II 119, *Merry Wives of Windsor*, II II 256, *Hamlet*, III II 192

26, 27 *so simple* To] For the omission of "as," compare Tourneur, *Revenger's Tragedy*, act 1 —

"But I had so much wit to keep my thoughts

Up in their built houses"

33 *kindly*] Hastings means that Richard will use them kindly, *i.e.* gently, courteously. But the audience know that he will use them kindly in another sense, *i.e.* after his boarish nature or kind.

*Enter CATESBY*

- Cates* Many good morrows to my noble lord ! 35  
*Hast* Good morrow, Catesby, you are early stirring  
 What news, what news, in this our tottering state?  
*Cates* It is a reeling world indeed, my lord,  
 And I believe 'twill never stand upright  
 Till Richard wear the garland of the realm 40  
*Hast* How ! wear the garland ! dost thou mean the crown ?  
*Cates* Ay, my good lord  
*Hast* I'll have this crown of mine cut from my shoulders,  
 Before I'll see the crown so foul misplac'd !  
 But canst thou guess that he doth aim at it ? 45  
*Cates* Ay, on my life, and hopes to find you forward  
 Upon his party for the gain thereof,  
 And thereupon he sends you this good news,  
 That this same very day your enemies,  
 The kindred of the queen, must die at Pomfret 50  
*Hast* Indeed, I am no mourner for that news,  
 Because they have been still my adversaries,  
 But, that I'll give my voice on Richard's side,  
 To bar my master's heirs in true descent,  
 God knows I will not do it, to the death 55  
*Cates* God keep your lordship in that gracious mind !  
*Hast* But I shall laugh at this a twelve-month hence,  
 That they which brought me in my master's hate,  
 I live to look upon their tragedy

after 34 *Enter Catesby* ] *Enter Catesby to L. Hastings* Qq 3 8 39 'twill  
 Qq 3 8, it will Qq 1, 2, will Ff 41 How crown] one line as Qq,  
 How Garland ? Doest Crowne ? (two lines) Ff 44 Before I'll]  
 Ff, Ere I will Qq 51 that news] this news Qq 4, 6-8 52 my adver  
 saries] Ff, mine enemies Qq 58 which] Ff, who Qq

40 garland] Compare 2 Henry IV  
 iv v 202 *New Eng Dict* quotes  
 Grafton's continuation of Harding's  
*Chronicles*, 1543 "What about ye get  
 ting of the garland, keeping it, lesing  
 and winning again, it hath coste more  
 English blood then hath the twice  
 winning of France"

43 crown] Compare 1 Henry IV ii  
 iv 420  
 49 Shakespeare derived this state  
 ment from More. Hastings' arrest and  
 execution took place on 13th June, the  
 lords were not beheaded apparently  
 till 25th June  
 55 to the death] i.e. even if my  
 refusal cost me my life

Well, Catesby, ere a fortnight make me older, 60  
 I'll send some packing that yet think not on't  
*Cates* 'Tis a vile thing to die, my gracious lord,  
 When men are unprepar'd and look not for it  
*Hast* O monstrous, monstrous! and so falls it out  
 With Rivers, Vaughan, Grey, and so 'twill do 65  
 With some men else, that think themselves as safe  
 As thou and I, who, as thou know'st, are dear  
 To princely Richard and to Buckingham  
*Cates* The princes both make high account of you  
 [*Aside*] For they account his head upon the bridge 70  
*Hast* I know they do, and I have well deserv'd it

*Enter LORD STANLEY*

Come on, come on, where is your boar-spear, man?  
 Fear you the boar, and go so unprovided?  
*Stan* My lord, good morrow, good morrow, Catesby  
 You may jest on, but, by the holy rood, 75  
 I do not like these several councils, I  
*Hast* My lord,  
 I hold my life as dear as you do yours,

60 *Well older*] Ff, *I tell thee Catesby Cat What my Lord's Hast*  
*Ere a fortnight make me elder Qq* 61 *on't*] Ff, *on it Qq* 66 *that*] Ff,  
*who Qq* 70 *Aside*] Rowe 72 *Come on, come on*] Ff, *What my Lord Qq*  
74 *morrow, good*] *morrow, and good Pope* 77, 78 *My lord, I yours*]  
two lines as Johnson, one line Qq, *My Lord, I hold my life as deare as yours Ff*

61 *packing*] Compare above, i i 146, haste is not implied, as in English  
*Tourneur, Revenger's Tragedy, act* He also notes "Let the canting liar  
iii — *pack*" in Tennyson, *Vision of Sin*, iv

"He being *pack'd* we'll have some  
 trick and wile,  
 To wind our younger brother out  
 of prison"

"To send *packing*," i.e. to send away,  
 dismiss summarily (*New Eng Dict.*),  
 is still used colloquially, though per-  
 haps more rarely now than formerly  
 The intransitive "to pack," i.e. to go  
 away, bag and baggage, is used by  
 Shakespeare, e.g. *The Taming of the*  
*Shrew*, ii i 178 Compare Lodge and  
 Greene, *Looking-Glasse* (Dyce, 131)

"Old dotard, *pack*, move not my  
 patience." Mr Craig calls attention  
 to the Scottish use of "pack," in which,  
 according to Jamieson's *Dictionary*,  
 70 In their account, his head is as  
 good as exposed already on London  
 Bridge, with those of other traitors  
 Compare Wilkins, *Miseries of Inforst*  
*Marriage* "A knave's head, shook  
 seven years in the weather upon Lon-  
 don Bridge"  
 76 *I do not* . I] For the empha-  
 tic repetition of "I," compare *Two*  
*Gentlemen of Verona*, v iv 132, and  
 Marlowe, *Few of Malta*, prol line 28  
 "I come not, I, to read a lecture here in  
 Britain"  
 78 *as you do yours*] Qq, in spite of  
 Steevens' expressed contempt, introduce  
 a great improvement on Ff Ff reading

And never in my days, I do protest,  
 Was it so precious to me as 'tis now 80  
 Think you, but that I know our state secure,  
 I would be so triumphant as I am?

*Stan* The lords at Pomfret, when they rode from London,  
 Were jocund and suppos'd their states were sure,  
 And they indeed had no cause to mistrust, 85  
 But yet, you see, how soon the day o'ercast  
 This sudden stab of rancour I misdoubt  
 Pray God, I say, I prove a needless coward!  
 What, shall we toward the Tower? the day is spent

*Hast* Come, come, have with you! Wot you what, my lord? 90  
 To-day the lords you talk of are beheaded

*Stan* They, for their truth, might better wear their heads,  
 Than some that have accus'd them wear their hats  
 But come, my lord, let us away

79 *days*] Ff, *life* Qq 80 *so* as] Ff, *more* then Qq 'tis] Ff,  
 it is Qq 81 *our state*] the state Ff 3, 4 84 *states were*] Ff, *states was*  
 Qq, *state was* Camb 85 *they*] omitted Qq 3-8 86 *o'ercast*] *ouercast* Qq  
 1, 2 87 *stab*] Ff, *scab* Qq 89 *What* spent] Ff, *But come my Lo*  
*shall we to the tower* Qq 90 *Come, come* my lord] *Come* you *Wot*  
*Lord* (two lines) Ff, *I go* but stay, *heare you not the newes* Qq 91  
*the lords you talk of*] Ff, *those men you talkt of* Qq 1, 2, *those men you talke of*  
 Qq 3 8 93 *hats*] *hat* Qq 2-5 94 *But come, my lord, let us away*] Qq,  
*But come, my Lord, lets away* Ff, *But come, my lord, away* Pope, *Come, let us*  
*away* Capell

may be an example of Shakespeare's "elliptical mode of expressing himself", but, if so, it is an example which involves a misunderstanding. Its only obvious meaning is that Hastings sets an equal value on his own life and Stanley's, and thus would be a remark without point. Qq give us what we naturally should expect him to say.

83 *London*] The reading of all the printed editions. Shakespeare must have meant to write "Ludlow." The lords in question were at Ludlow with the prince, when Edward IV died, and it was on the ride from Ludlow to London that the sudden overcasting of their happiness took place. Compare Ff at II ii 142, 154, where the error is more conspicuous.

87 *misdoubt*] Compare *Love's Labour's Lost*, IV iii 194.

89 *the day is spent*] Ff, here and in line 90, have a great metrical advantage

over Qq. It is a little difficult, however, to reconcile these words with the time of the scene as already indicated in line 5 above, or to explain them as meaning "the day is wearing itself away." Shakespeare already had pushed on an hour which the historians gave as midnight to four in the morning, and was condensing the several interviews recorded in the chronicles into one scene, the prelude to the forenoon council at the Tower and the discomfiture of Hastings. The phrase is either unusual or due to a lapse of memory.

90 *have with you*] This and kindred phrases, e.g. *have at*, after, or among you, are frequently found as announcing the arrival or departure of characters on the stage. For "have with you," compare the title of Nash's pamphlet, *Have with you to Saffron Walden* 1596.

*Enter a Pursuivant*

*Hast* Go on before, I'll talk with this good fellow 95

[*Exeunt Lord Stanley and Catesby*]

How now, sirrah! how goes the world with thee?

*Purs* The better that your lordship please to ask

*Hast* I tell thee, man, 'tis better with me now

Than when thou met'st me last where now we meet

Then was I going prisoner to the Tower, 100

By the suggestion of the queen's allies,

But now, I tell thee—keep it to thyself—

This day those enemies are put to death,

And I in better state than e'er I was

*Purs* God hold it, to your honour's good content! 105

*Hast* Gramercy, fellow there, drink that for me

[*Throws him his purse*]

*Purs* I thank your honour!

[*Exit*]

aft 94 *Enter a Pursuivant*] Ff, *Enter Hast a Pursuivant* Qq 1, 2, *Enter Hastings a Pursuivant* Qq 3 8 (after 95) 95 *Go on fellow*] Ff, *Go you before, He follow presently* Qq *Exeunt*] *Exit* Ff, *Exit* Qq 3 8 (after 94), omitted Qq 1, 2 96 *How now, sirrah*] Ff, *Well met Hastings* Qq, *Sirrah, how now* Pope 97 *your lordship please*] Ff, *it please your Lo* Qq 1, 2, *it please your good Lordship* Qq 3 8 98 *man*] Ff, *fellow* Qq 99 *thou met'st me*] Ff, *I met thee* Qq 104 *e'er*] Ff, *ever* Qq 106 *fellow me*] Ff, *Hastings, hold spend thou that* Qq *Throws*] Ff, *He gives* Qq 107 *I thank your honour*] Ff, *God save your lordship* Qq *Exit*] *Exit Pur* Qq 3-8, Ff, omitted Qq 1, 2

aft 94 *Enter a Pursuivant*] The stage-directions of Qq are in accordance with the historians, as are also the readings at lines 96, 106. The name of the pursuivant was Hastings. Compare More (ap. Holinshed, iii 723) "Upon the verie Tower wharfe, so neare the place where his head was off [so] soone after there met he with one Hastings, a *purseuant* of his own name." This detail, in drama, becomes confusing, and Ff-reading has rightly been adopted by all editors. A pursuivant is, strictly speaking, an attendant upon a herald. Chaucer, *Hous of Fame*, line 1321, speaks of "*purseuantes* and heraudes, That cryen riche folkes laudes." The rest of the present passage in Shakespeare is in substantial agreement with More

100, 101 Hastings' imprisonment has been mentioned above, i: 68, etc. Rivers, according to More, was the chief mover of his disgrace with the king. Shakespeare, i: 1 67, follows this statement.

101 *By the suggestion*] by the crafty instigation. Compare *1 Henry IV* iv iii 51, *Henry VIII* iv ii. 35

105 *God hold it*] God continue it. Compare *Much Ado About Nothing*, i 1 91.

106 *Gramercy*] We sometimes find the form "gramercies," e.g. *Taming of the Shrew*, i: 1 41. A somewhat parallel case is the alternative use of "methought" and "methoughts" see note on i: iv 9 above.

*Enter a Priest*

*Priest* Well met, my lord, I am glad to see your honour

*Hast* I thank thee, good sir John, with all my heart

I am in your debt for your last exercise, 110

Come the next Sabbath, and I will content you

[*He whispers in his ear*]

*Priest* I'll wait upon your lordship

*Enter BUCKINGHAM*

*Buck* What, talking with a priest, lord chamberlain?

Your friends at Pomfret, they do need the priest,

Your honour hath no shriving work in hand 115

108, 109 *Priest* Well met my heart ] Ff, What sir John you are well  
met Qq 110 I am exercise] Ff, I am beholding to you for your last  
daves exercise Qq 111 Sabbath] sabaoth Qq 1, 2, Sabbath Qq 3-7, Ff 1, 2  
He whispers ] Qq, omitted Ff 112 *Priest* I'll lordship] Ff,  
omitted Qq 113 What chamberlain] Ff, How now Lo Chamberlaine,  
what talking with a priest Qq

109 *Sir John*] The title "sir" was habitually applied to a priest in England, even after the Reformation. The parson in the *Merry Devil of Edmonton* is Sir John, there is Sir Hugh Evans in *Merry Wives of Windsor*, and, in this play, iv v, Sir Christopher Urswick was a priest, not a knight. "Sir John" was a common nickname for a priest compare Chaucer, *Canterbury Tales*, B 4010 "This swete preest, this goodly man, sir John"

110 *exercise*] sermon, exposition of Scripture. *New Eng Dict* quotes *Constitutions and Canons Ecclesiastical*, 1604 "Sermons, commonly tearmed by some Prophetes or Exercises in market-towns, or other places" Compare J Udall, *Diotrephes*, 1588 (ed Arber, p 29) "Take heed aboue al things, that the exercises of prophesie come not vp again and you must beware of the exercises that ministers haue at their meetings", Bishop Hall, *Letter sent from the Tower*, 1641 (*Works*, ed Pratt, 1808, vol 1 p xlix) "Can they say that I barred the free course of religious exercises, by the suppression of painful and peaceable preachers" Malone took "exercise" in the present case to mean "confession" Buckingham speaks of "shriving work" below, and, in iii vii 64,

Richard's exercise with the bishops appears to be meditation, prayer, and confession combined. In *Othello*, iii iv 41, private meditation and prayer are implied.

111 *Sabbath*] Qq 1, 2 are paralleled by *Merchant of Venice*, iv 1 36 (Q 2), on which see Mr C K Pooler's note

aft 112 *Enter Buckingham*] In the historians, a knight, sent by Richard, fetches Hastings to the Tower, "as it were of courtesie" According to Halle, he was Sir Thomas Howard, a son of John, Lord Howard (see note on iii 1 58 above) They met the priest in Tower Street. The knight "brake his [Hastings'] tale, and said merlie to him 'Wha', my lord, I pray you come on, whereto talke you so long with that priest? you haue no need of a priest yet' and therwith he laughed vpon him, as though he would say, 'Ye shall haue soone' But so little wist the tother what he ment, and so little mistrusted, that he was neuer merner, nor neuer so full of good hope in his life, which selfe thing is oft seene a signe of change" (More, ap Holinshed, iii 723)

115 *shriving work*] confession and absolution Compare "shriving time," *Hamlet*, v ii 47

*Hast* Good faith, and, when I met this holy man,  
The men you talk of came into my mind  
What, go you toward the Tower?

*Buck* I do, my lord, but long I cannot stay there  
I shall return before your lordship thence 120

*Hast* Nay, like enough, for I stay dinner there

*Buck* [*Aside*] And supper too, although thou know'st it not  
Come, will you go?

*Hast* I'll wait upon your lordship  
[*Exeunt*]

### SCENE III—*Pomfret Castle*

*Enter* SIR RICHARD RATCLIFF, *with halberds, carrying*  
*RIVERS, GREY, and VAUGHAN to death*

*Rat* Come, bring forth the prisoners

*Riv* Sir Richard Ratcliff, let me tell thee this  
To-day shalt thou behold a subject die  
For truth, for duty, and for loyalty

*Grey* God bless the prince from all the pack of you! 5  
A knot you are of damned blood-suckers

*Vaug* You live that shall cry woe for this hereafter

*Rat* Dispatch, the limit of your lives is out

117 *The men*] Ff, *Those men* Qq 118 *toward the Tower*] Ff, *to the tower*  
*my Lord* Qq 119 *my lord*] omitted Qq *cannot stay there*] Ff, *shall not*  
*stay* Qq 121 *Nay*] Ff, *'Tis* Qq 122 *Aside*] Rowe 123 *Come*  
*lordship*] Ff, *Come shall we go along* Qq

#### Scene III

SCENE III] SCENE IV Pope *Pomfret Castle*] Theobald *Enter* ]  
Camb, *Enter* *carrying the Nobles to death at Pomfret* Ff, *Enter Sir*  
*Richard Ratcliffe, with the Lo Rivers, Gray and Vaughan, prisoners* Qq  
1 *Rat Come* *prisoners*] Qq, omitted Ff 5 *bless*] Ff, *keep* Qq 7, 8  
*Vaug* *You live* *is out*] Ff, omitted Qq

5, 6 *pack* *knot*] See note on *A Fair Quarrel*, 1617, 11 "If it be  
III 1 1182 above, and the passage so, you're a blood sucking churl!"  
quoted there from *Merry Wives of* 7 Without this line, Vaughan would  
*Windsor* be merely a walking figure in the play.  
6 *blood suckers*] So Warwick, 2 It is not clear why it and line 8 should  
*Henry VI* III 11 226, calls Suffolk have been left out in Qq, which, in  
"Pernicious blood sucker of sleeping the stage directions, expressly mention  
men" *New Eng Dict* explains Vaughan That the alteration must  
"blood-sucker" as "a blood-thirsty or have been deliberate is shown by the  
blood-guilty person" Mr Craig illus- virtual transference, in Qq, of line 8 to  
trates from Middleton and Rowley, line 24

- Riv* O Pomfret, Pomfret! O thou bloody place,  
 Fatal and ominous to noble peers!<sup>10</sup>  
 Within the guilty closure of thy walls  
 Richard the second here was hack'd to death,  
 And, for more slander to thy dismal seat,  
 We give to thee our guiltless blood to drink
- Grey* Now Margaret's curse is fall'n upon our heads,<sup>15</sup>  
 When she exclaim'd on Hastings, you, and I,  
 For standing by when Richard stabb'd her son
- Riv* Then curs'd she Hastings, then curs'd she Buckingham,  
 Then curs'd she Richard O, remember, God,  
 To hear her prayer for them, as now for us!<sup>20</sup>  
 And for my sister and her princely sons,  
 Be satisfied, dear God, with our true blood,  
 Which, as thou know'st, unjustly must be spilt.
- Rat* Make haste, the hour of death is expiate
- Riv* Come, Grey, come, Vaughan, let us here embrace<sup>25</sup>  
 Farewell, until we meet again in heaven [Exeunt

10 *ominous*] *dominous* Qq 2, 3, *ominous* Qq 4, 5 13 *seat*] Ff, *soile* Qq,  
*soile* Capell conj 14 *to thee*] Ff, *thee* vp Qq *blood*] *blouds* Qq 1-6 16  
*When* and I] Ff, omitted Qq, Camb 18, 19 *Then* *Hastings, then*  
*Buckingham, Then* *Richard*] Qq, *Then* *Richard, Then*  
*Buckingham, Then* *Hastings* (3 lines) Ff 18 *then*] omitted Pope  
20 *prayer*] Ff, *prayers* Qq 21 *sons*] Ff, *sonne* Qq 24 *Make*  
*expiate*] Ff, *Come come dispatch, the limit of your lives is out* Qq *expiate*]  
F 1, *expir'd* Ff 2 4, *expiate* Singer (from Steevens), *expedite* Collier conj  
26 *Farewell* *again*] Ff, *And take our leave untill we meete* Qq.

10 Pontefract Castle had been the scene (19th June, 1322) of the execution of Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, for rebellion against his cousin Edward II. Richard II died there, probably by murder, 14th Feb., 1400. In 1405, Archbishop Scrope was imprisoned there before his execution, and in 1461, after Wakefield, Richard Nevill, Earl of Salisbury, father of the "King maker," was murdered there by order of Margaret of Anjou.

13 *seat*] Capell's conjecture "soil" probably explains Qq. For "seat" = site, compare *Macbeth*, I vi 1.

16 The grammar of this line, in which "I" is used for "me," is the only valid reason for rejecting it. But, in *Othello*, IV ii 3, Shakespeare has "Yes, you have seen Cassio and she together."

18, 19 The more effective arrangement in Qq leads up to the name of the chief criminal. On the other hand, Ff call our attention to the fact that Hastings is fulfilling the curse at the very moment at which these words are spoken. 24 *expiate*] terminated. The hour of death is come to an end. "Expiate" here is, of course, a past participle. Malone refers to Sonnet xxii 4. *New Eng. Dict.* quotes Marlowe and Nash, *Drdo*, 1594, act v —

"Cursed Iarbas, die to *expiate*  
 The grief that tries upon thine  
 inward soul",

and Tofte, *Honours Academie*, 1610  
 "Nothing could appease and *expiat*  
 his cankered rage." Monck Mason supports F 2. Steevens' "expiate" means, of course, "breathed out", but the word is seldom used.

SCENE IV — *The Tower of London*

*Enter* BUCKINGHAM, DERBY, HASTINGS, *the* BISHOP OF ELY,  
RATCLIFF, LOVEL, *with others, and take their seats at a*  
*table*

*Hast* Now, noble peers, the cause why we are met

Is to determine of the coronation

In God's name, speak<sup>1</sup> when is the royal day?

*Buck* Is all things ready for the royal time?

*Der* It is, and wants but nomination

5

*Ely* To-morrow, then, I judge a happy day

*Buck* Who knows the lord protector's mind herein?

Who is most inward with the noble duke?

*Ely* Your grace, we think, should soonest know his mind

*Buck* Who? I, my lord!

10

We know each other's faces for our hearts,

He knows no more of mine than I of yours,

Or I of his, my lord, than you of mine

Lord Hastings, you and he are near in love

SCENE IV] SCENE V Pope *Enter* ] Camb, *Enter* Buckingham,  
Darby, Hastings, Bishop of Ely, Norfolk, Ratcliffe, Louell, *with others, at a*  
*Table* Ff, *Enter the Lords to Councell* Qq 1 *Now, noble peers* Ff (Peere  
F 2), *My Lords at once* Qq 3 *speake* Ff, *say* Qq *the royal* Ff, *this*  
*royall* Qq (rayall Q 6) 4 *Is* Ff, *Are* Qq *ready* Ff, *fitting* Qq *the*  
*royal* Ff, *that royall* Qq 5 *It is* They are Rowe, Capell *wants but*  
Qq 1, 2, Ff, Capell, *let but* Qq 3, 5-7, *lack but* Q 4, *yet in* Q 8, *want but* Rowe  
6 *Ely* Ff, *Ryu* Qq 1, 2, *Bish* Qq 3-8 *judge* Ff, *guesse* Qq *day* Ff,  
*time* Qq 9 *Your grace* *should* Ff, *Why you my Lo* *me thinks you*  
*should* Qq 10 *Who* *lord* Qq, omitted Ff 11 *for* Ff, *but for* Qq  
13 *Or* *lord* Ff, *nor I no more of his* Qq

5 *It is*] This reading may have arisen from the use of "is" as a plural verb in the preceding line, which Ff retain. It is curious that it should have been kept by Qq when line 4 was altered. Perhaps what Shakespeare wrote in line 4 was "Is all thing ready for the royal time?" which Qq altered to "Are all things fitting." Thus, when the editor of F 1 altered his copy of Q, he restored "Is" and "ready," but by an oversight left "things" unchanged. The meaning of line 5 thus would be "All thing (i.e. everything) is ready, and all that is wanting is the nomination of the date." "All thing" occurs often for "everything" in early

English literature. Compare *Romaunt of Rose*, Frag A, 53, and the metrical prayer ascribed to Henry VIII "O God, the maker of all thing." It is found in *Macbeth*, III 1 13, where the later Ff have "all things", there, however, Aldis Wright takes it to be an adverb.

8 *inward*] intimate. Compare Tourneur, *Revenger's Tragedy*, act II —

"one  
That is most *inward* with the  
duke's son's lust",  
*Measure for Measure*, III 11 138. See  
also *Much Ado About Nothing*, IV 1  
247

*Hast* I thank his grace, I know he loves me well, 15  
 But, for his purpose in the coronation,  
 I have not sounded him, nor he deliver'd  
 His gracious pleasure any way therein  
 But you, my noble lords, may name the time,  
 And in the duke's behalf I'll give my voice, 20  
 Which, I presume, he'll take in gentle part

## Enter GLOUCESTER

*Ely* In happy time here comes the duke himself  
*Glou* My noble lords and cousins all, good morrow  
 I have been long a sleeper, but, I trust,  
 My absence doth neglect no great design, 25  
 Which by my presence might have been concluded  
*Buck* Had you not come upon your cue, my lord,  
 William Lord Hastings had pronounc'd your part,—  
 I mean, your voice,—for crowning of the king  
*Glou* Than my Lord Hastings no man might be bolder, 30  
 His lordship knows me well, and loves me well  
*Hast* I thank your grace  
*Glou* My Lord of Ely, when I was last in Holborn,

18 *gracious*] Ff, *Graces* Qq 19 *my noble lords*] Singer, Camb, *my noble*  
*Lo* Qq 1, 2, *my L* Qq 3 7, *my Honorable Lords* Ff 1, 4, *my Honorable Lord*  
 Ff 2, 3, *my Lord* Q 8, *my noble lord* Pope 21 *he'll*] Ff, *he will* Qq  
*gentle*] good Q 6 *aff* 21 *Enter Gloucester*] Ff, after 22 Qq 22 *In happy*  
*time*] Ff, *Now in good time* Qq 24 *a sleeper*] *a sleepe* Q 6 *but*] Q 1, Ff,  
*but now* Qq 2-8 *trust*] Ff, *hope* Qq 25 *design*] Ff, *designes* Qq 27  
*you not*] Ff, *not you* Qq *cue*] *kew* Qq, Q Ff 28 *had*] Ff, *had now* Qq  
 28, 29 *part*,— *voice*,—] Capell, Camb, *part* *voice* Qq, *part*,  
*Voice*, Ff. 32 *Hast I* *grace*] Qq, omitted Ff 33 *Glou My*  
*Holborn*] Ff, *Glo My Lo* *of Ely, Bish My Lo* *Glo When* 1  
*Holborne* Qq

17 *deliver'd*] expressed, made public  
 Compare *Twelfth Night*, I ii 42,  
 Fletcher and Massinger, *Elder Brother*,  
 I 2 —

"For what concerns tillage  
 Who better can *deliver* it than  
 Virgil  
 In his Georgicks?"

24 "The lords so sitting together  
 communing of this matter, the protector  
 came in amongst them, first about nine  
 of the clocke, saluting them courteous  
 lie, and excusing himselfe that he had  
 beene from them so long, saying

merlie that he had beene a sleeper  
 that daie" (More, ap Holinshed, iii  
 722)

27 *upon your cue*] Compare *Henry*  
*V* iii vi 130 The theatrical phrase  
 "was derived, doubtless, from the  
 French, *queue*, being literally the tail  
 of a speech" (Nares, s v Cue) Buck-  
 ingham continues this actor's metaphor  
 in the next line

29 *voice*] vote So *Coriolanus*, ii.  
 ii 144, iii 1 34, etc

33 The Qq addition here is one of  
 those that may have arisen in the

47 prolong'd] postponed, as *Much Ado About Nothing*, iv 1 256

*Re-enter the BISHOP OF ELY*

*Ely* Where is my lord the Duke of Gloucester?

I have sent for these strawberries

*Hast* His grace looks cheerfully and smooth this morning, 50

There's some concert or other likes him well,

When that he bids good-morrow with such spirit

I think there's never a man in Christendom

Can lesser hide his love or hate than he,

For by his face straight shall you know his heart 55

*Der* What of his heart perceive you in his face

By any livelihood he show'd to-day?

*Hast* Marry, that with no man here he is offended,

For, were he, he had shown it in his looks

*Der* I pray God he be not, I say! 60

*Re-enter GLOUCESTER and BUCKINGHAM*

*Glo* I pray you all, tell me, what they deserve

That do conspire my death with devilish plots

Of damned witchcraft, and that have prevail'd

Upon my body with their hellish charms?

*Hast* The tender love I bear your grace, my lord, 65

Makes me most forward in this princely presence

aft 47 *Re-enter*] *Enter* Qq, Ff 48, 49 *Where strawberries*] arranged  
as Ff, one line Qq, as prose Camb 48 *the Duke of Gloucester*] Ff *protector*  
Qq 49 *sent*] *sent straitway* Hammer *these*] *these same* Capell 50  
*this morning*] Ff, *to day* Qq 52 *that he bids*] Ff, *he doth bid* Qq *such*] Ff, *such a* Qq 53 *there's never*] Ff, *there is neuer* Qq, *there's ne'er* Pope  
54 *Can lesser*] Ff, *That can lesser* Qq 1-7, *That can less* Q 8, Camb 57  
*livelihood*] Ff, *likelihood* Qq 58 *he is*] *he's* Pope 59 *were he*  
*shown*] Ff, *if he were, he would have shewen* Qq *looks*] Q 1, Ff, *face* Qq 2 8  
60 *Der I say*] Qq, omitted Ff aft 60 *Re-enter* ] *Enter Richard,*  
*and Buckingham* Ff, *Enter Glo* Qq 61 *tell me, what they*] Ff, *what do*  
*they* Qq 66 *princely*] Ff, *noble* Qq

51 *concert*] ingenious notion Com-  
pare *Taming of the Shrew*, IV iii 162,  
163 "Concert," used absolutely by  
Shakespeare, means "fancy," as  
*Romeo and Juliet*, II vi 30

*likes him well*] So *Hamlet*, II ii.  
80, and numerous other passages in  
Shakespeare

57 *livelihood*] *All's Well that Ends*  
*Well*, I i 58, supplies a parallel for Ff  
Qq, however, have "likelihood" (a  
apparent sign), for which there is  
something to be said Aldis Wright

refers to *All's Well that Ends Well*,  
I iii 128

61 81 The whole of this passage is  
closely condensed from More's  
account of the arrest, the entry of the  
men at arms, and the turmoil in which  
Stanley was wounded, are omitted by  
Shakespeare, doubtless to concentrate  
our attention on the real victim of the  
scene In lines 78, 79 he reproduces  
More almost literally "by St Paul  
(quoth he) I will not to dinner till I see  
thy head off"

To doom the offenders, whosoe'er they be.  
 I say, my lord, they have deserved death  
*Glou* Then be your eyes the witness of their evil!  
 Look, how I am bewitch'd! behold! mine arm 70  
 Is like a blasted sapling wither'd up  
 And this is Edward's wife, that monstrous witch,  
 Consorted with that harlot, strumpet Shore,  
 That by their witchcraft thus have marked me  
*Hast* If they have done this deed, my noble lord,— 75  
*Glou* If! thou protector of this damned strumpet,  
 Talk'st thou to me of "ifs"? Thou art a traitor  
 Off with his head! now by Saint Paul I swear,  
 I will not dine until I see the same!  
 Lovel and Ratcliff, look that it be done 80  
 The rest that love me, rise and follow me  
*[Exeunt all but Hastings, Ratcliff, and Lovel]*  
*Hast* Woe, woe for England! not a whit for me,  
 For I, too fond, might have prevented this.  
 Stanley did dream the boar did raze his helm,  
 And I did scorn it, and disdain to fly 85  
 Three times to-day my foot-cloth horse did stumble,

67 whosoe'er] Ff, whatsoever Qq 69 their evil] Ff, this ill Qq 70  
 Look] Ff, See Qq 72 And this is] Ff, This is that Qq 74 witchcraft]  
 Q 1, Ff, witchcrafts Qq 26 75 deed] Ff, thing Qq noble] Ff, gracious Qq  
 lord,—] Rowe, Camb 77 Talk'st thou to me] Telst thou me Qq, Tellest thou  
 me Camb 78-80 Off done] Ff, Off with his head Now by Saint  
 Paule, I will not dine to day I sweare, Vntill I see the same, some see it done Qq  
 81 rise] Ff, come Qq Exeunt ] Camb, Exeunt Manet Louell and  
 Ratcliffe, with the Lord Hastings Ff (Manent Ff 2, 4), Exeunt manet Cat  
 with Ha Qq, Exeunt Manent Lovel and Catesby, with the Lord Hastings  
 Theobald 84 raze his helm] race his helme Qq, rowse our Helmes Ff, rase  
 our helms Rowe 85 And I disdain] Ff, But I disdain'd it, and did  
 scorne Qq

71 blasted sapling] Compare 3  
*Henry VI* iii ii 156  
 84 raze his helm] See note on iii ii  
 11 above Ff "our Helmes" is in  
 keeping with Stanley's dream as re-  
 corded by the chroniclers But "rowse"  
 must be a printer's error

86 foot-cloth horse] More says that,  
 as Hastings went to the Tower, his  
 "horse twice or thrise stumbled with  
 him, almost to the falling" A "foot-  
 cloth horse" is a horse equipped with  
 foot-cloths, i.e. trappings hanging over

the horse's sides and covering the rider's  
 feet In 2 *Henry VI* iv vii 51, Cade  
 asks Lord Say "Thou dost ride in a  
 foot-cloth, dost thou not?" and rebukes  
 him for letting his "horse wear a cloak,  
 when honestest men go in their  
 hose and doublets" In the same play,  
 iv i 54, Suffolk reminds his murderer  
 that in times past he has "bare-  
 headed plodded by my foot cloth mule"  
 The social importance of the "foot-  
 cloth riders," classed among the "vali-  
 ant stomachs of the court," by Fletcher,

- And started, when he look'd upon the Tower,  
 As loath to bear me to the slaughter-house  
 O, now I need the priest that spake to me  
 I now repent I told the pursuivant, 90  
 As too triumphing, how mine enemies  
 To-day at Pomfret bloodily were butcher'd,  
 And I myself secure in grace and favour  
 O Margaret, Margaret ! now thy heavy curse  
 Is lighted on poor Hastings' wretched head 95  
*Rat* Come, come, dispatch, the duke would be at dinner  
 Make a short shrift, he longs to see your head  
*Hast* O momentary grace of mortal men,  
 Which we more hunt for than the grace of God !  
 Who builds his hope in air of your good looks, 100  
 Lives like a drunken sailor on a mast,  
 Ready, with every nod to tumble down  
 Into the fatal bowels of the deep  
*Lov* Come, come, dispatch, 'tis bootless to exclaim  
*Hast* O, bloody Richard ! miserable England ! 105

87 *started*] Ff, Qq 7-8, *startled* Qq 16 89 *need*] Ff, *want* Qq 16 91  
*too triumphing, how*] Ff, *twere triumphing at* Qq 92 *To day*] Ff, *How*  
*they* Qq 95 *lighted*] *lightened* Qq 6, 7 96 *Rat*] *Ra* Ff, *Cat* Qq  
*Come, come, dispatch*] Ff, *Dispatch, my lord* Qq 98 *grace of mortal*] Qq,  
*state of worldly* Ff 99 *than*] *then for* Qq 3-8 *God*] Ff, *heaven* Qq  
100 *hope*] Ff, *hopes* Qq *good*] Ff, *faire* Qq 101 *a drunken sailor*]  
*drunken Saylers* Q 4 104-107 *Lov Come upon*] Ff, omitted Qq

*Woman-Hater*, 1 2, is alluded to by  
 Machin and Markham, *Dumb Knight*,  
 act III, in reference to a pleader who  
 has made his fortune —

"his father was

An honest prouner of our country  
 vines,

Yet he's shot to his foot cloth "

Stevens made the mistake of suppos-  
 ing "foot cloth" in such passages to  
 be a mere synonym for the horse Mr  
 Craig supplies a reference from *Shurley*,  
*The Brothers*, c 1626, 1 1 —

"I am a gentleman

With as much sense of honour as  
 the proudest,

One that doth ride on's foot-cloth "

87 *started*] Aldis Wright quotes *As*  
*You Like It*, IV III 13, in support of  
 Qq

97 *short shrift*] More says of Hast-  
 ings "heaulie he tooke a priest at  
 adventure, and made a *short shrift* "

101 The figure of the sailor on the  
 mast is used again in *2 Henry IV* III

1 18 25

*rotten armour*] rusty armour Halli-  
 well, s v Rotten, cites Richard of Ham-  
 pole "When I am *rotyn*, rub of the  
 rust" More says that Gloucester  
 "with the Duke of Buckingham stood  
 harnessed in old ill faring briganders"  
 The brigander or brigandine was a  
 jacket, composed of small plates of  
 metal between leather or quilted canvas  
 coverings, over which on the outside  
 velvet, silk, or satin was laid, the rivets  
 being visible on the outer covering  
 See Fairholt, *Costume in England* (4th  
 ed 1896), II 91, 92

I prophesy the fearfull'st time to thee  
 That ever wretched age hath look'd upon  
 Come, lead me to the block, bear him my head  
 They smile at me who shortly shall be dead

[*Exeunt*

SCENE V—*The Tower-walls*

*Enter GLOUCESTER and BUCKINGHAM in rotten armour,  
 marvellous ill-favoured*

*Glou* Come, cousin, canst thou quake and change thy colour,  
 Murder thy breath in middle of a word,  
 And then again begin, and stop again,  
 As if thou were distraught and mad with terror?

*Buck* Tut! I can counterfeit the deep tragedian, 5  
 Speak and look back, and pry on every side,  
 Tremble and start at wagging of a straw,  
 Intending deep suspicion ghastly looks  
 Are at my service, like enforced smiles,  
 And both are ready in their offices, 10

109 *who*] Ff, *that* Qq

*Scene V*

SCENE V] SCENE VI Pope, omitted Ff *The Tower walls*] Theobald  
*Enter Gloucester* ] *Enter Richard* Ff, *Enter Duke of Gloucester and*  
*Buckingham in armour* Qq *rotten*] *rusty* Rowe 1 *Come* colour]  
 one line as Qq, *Come Cousin, Canst* colour (two lines) Ff 3 *again*  
*begin*] Ff, *beginne againe* Qq 4 *were*] Ff, *were* Qq 5 *Tut, I*  
*tragedian*] Ff, *Tut feare not me, I* *Tragedian* (two lines) Qq 7 *Tremble*  
*straw*] *Tremble* *Straw* Ff, omitted Qq 8 *deep*] *deere* Q 4

4 *distraught*] Compare *Romeo and Juliet*, iv iii 49 "Distract" is used for "distraught" in *Comedy of Errors*, iv iii 42, *King Lear*, iv vi 288

5 *the deep tragedian*] Mr Craig suggests that this may be an allusion to Burbage, the "deep tragedian" of Shakespeare's company, or to some other well known actor

7 *at wagging of a straw*] The proverbial use of this phrase seems to be illustrated by a passage which Mr Craig points out from Nash, *Lenten Stuffe*, 1599 (McKerrow, ii 219) "but upon the least wagging of a straw to

put them in feare where no feare is" Mr Craig also sends a parallel from North's *Plutarch, Life of Fabius* (ed Rouse, 1898, ii 195) "To be afeard of the wagging of every straw, or to regard every common prating, it is not the part of a worthy man of charge"

8 *Intending*] pretending, as *Timon of Athens*, ii ii 219 See also iii vii 45 below *New Eng Dict* quotes *Marriage of Witte and Science*, c 1570, act iv "Friend Wit, are you the man indeed which you *intend*?"

12-21 See Appendix II

At any time to grace my stratagems

But what, is Catesby gone?

*Glou* He is, and see, he brings the mayor along

*Enter the LORD MAYOR and CATESBY*

*Buck* Lord mayor,—

*Glou* Look to the drawbridge there! 15

*Buck* Hark! a drum

*Glou* Catesby, o'erlook the walls

*Buck* Lord mayor, the reason we have sent—

*Glou* Look back, defend thee, here are enemies

*Buck* God and our innocency defend and guard us! 20

*Glou* Be patient, they are friends, Ratcliff and Lovel

*Enter LOVEL and RATCLIFF, with HASTINGS' head*

*Lov* Here is the head of that ignoble traitor,

The dangerous and unsuspected Hastings

*Glou* So dear I lov'd the man, that I must weep

I took him for the plainest harmless creature 25

That breath'd upon the earth a Christian,

Made him my book, wherein my soul recorded

The history of all her secret thoughts

So smooth he daub'd his vice with show of virtue,

That, his apparent open guilt omitted— 30

11 *At any time*] Ff, omitted Qq 12-14 *But what mayor,—*] Ff, *Enter Mayor* *Glo* *Here comes the Mayor* *Buc* *Let me alone to entertaine him*  
*Lo Mayor* Qq 16 18 *Buck Hark!* *sent—*] Ff, *Buc* *The reason we*  
*have sent for you* *Glo* *Catesby overlooke the wals* *Buck* *Harke, I heare a*  
*drumme* Qq 16 *Hark*] *Hark, hark* Capell 17 *Catesby*] *Some one*  
*Hanner* 18 *sent—*] *sent for you* Capell 20 *and guard*] Ff, omitted  
Qq 21 *Be Lovel*] Ff, *O, O, be quiet, it is Catesby* Qq *Enter*  
*Lovel and Ratcliffe* ] after 20 Ff, *Enter Catesby* Qq 22 *Lov* ]  
*Louell* Ff, *Cat* Qq 25 *harmless*] *harmless't* Steevens *creature*] Ff,  
*man* Qq 26 *the earth*] Q 4, Ff, *this earth* Qq 1 3, 5-8 27 *Made*] I  
*made, Qq* 5 8 aft. 26 Qq inserts *Look ye my Lo Mayor*, which Capell  
inserts at end of 34

25 *plainest harmless*] Steevens altered to "plainest harmless't," citing the latter word as a common contraction in Leicestershire and Warwickshire, and referring to "covert'st" in line 33 immediately below But "covert'st shelter'd" is exactly parallel to "plainest harmless," and, to be consistent, he should have read the phrase "covert'st shelter'd'st" One superlative is quite sufficient in each case For "plain," compare 1 ii 237 above 29 *daub'd virtue*] *New Eng Dict* explains "to daub" as "to cover with a specious exterior, to whitewash, cloak, gloss" 30 *open*] evident, as *Twelfth Night*, 11 v 175

I mean, his conversation with Shore's wife—

He liv'd from all attainder of suspects

*Buck* Well, well, he was the covert'st shelter'd traitor

That ever liv'd

Would you imagine, or almost believe, 35

Were't not that, by great preservation,

We live to tell it, that the subtle traitor

This day had plotted, in the council-house

To murder me and my good Lord of Gloucester?

*May* Had he done so? 40

*Glou* What, think you we are Turks or infidels?

Or that we would, against the form of law,

Proceed thus rashly in the villain's death,

But that the extreme peril of the case,

The peace of England, and our persons' safety, 45

Enforc'd us to this execution?

*May* Now, fair befall you! he deserv'd his death,

And your good graces both have well proceeded,

To warn false traitors from the like attempts

32 *liv'd*] *Ff*, *laid* Qq suspects] *Ff*, *suspect* Qq 34 36 *That ever*  
*preservation*] *Ff*, *That ever liv'd, would you have imagined, Or almost believe,*  
*were't not by great preservation* Qq 37 *tell it, that*] *Ff*, *tell it you? the* Qq,  
*tell it you, the Camb* 38 *This day had*] *Ff*, *Had this day* Qq 40  
*Had* so] *Ff*, *What, had he so* Qq, *Ay, had he so* Capell (conj) 41  
*you*] *ye* Qq 3-8 42 *form*] *course* Qq 3 8 43 *in*] *Ff*, *to* Qq 44  
*extreme*] *very extreame* Q 4 48 *your good graces*] *Ff*, *you my good Lords* Qq

32 *from*] free from, without Com-  
 pare *Othello*, I i 132. In the passage  
 from More, cited above in the note on  
 III iv 24, "he had beene from them"

= he had been away from them  
 attainder of suspects] Compare *Love's*  
*Labour's Lost*, I i 158

34 Capell, followed by Steevens,  
 gave an imperfect finish to this im-  
 perfect line by transferring the words  
 "Look you, my lord mayor" from after  
 line 26 in Qq, where they obviously  
 are out of place. It is difficult to see  
 where they were intended to stand,  
 and *Ff* dismiss them altogether

36 *by great preservation*] "And so  
 had God holpen them, that the mis-  
 chiefe turned vpon them that would  
 haue doone it" (More)

38, 39. It would have been impos-  
 sible to disprove this accusation, since

the lords who were present at the  
 council were either Gloucester's crea-  
 tures, or were imprisoned as suspect of  
 complicity with Hastings

41 *Turks or infidels*] Compare  
*Merchant of Venice*, IV i 32, where  
 the "infidel" Shylock is reminded that  
 Antonio's misfortunes are enough to  
 "pluck commiseration of his  
 state

From stubborn Turks and Tartars  
 never train'd

To offices of tender courtesy"

Compare also the famous phrase in the  
 third Collect for Good Friday "Have  
 mercy upon all Jews, Turks, Infidels  
 and Hereticks"

47 *fair befall you*] Compare I iii  
 282 above, *Taming of the Shrew*, V ii  
 III

*Buck* I never look'd for better at his hands, 50  
 After he once fell in with Mistress Shore  
 Yet had we not determin'd he should die,  
 Until your lordship came to see his end,  
 Which now the loving haste of these our friends,  
 Something against our meanings, have prevented 55  
 Because, my lord, I would have had you heard  
 The traitor speak, and timorously confess  
 The manner and the purpose of his treasons,  
 That you might well have signified the same  
 Unto the citizens, who haply may 60  
 Misconster us in him and wail his death  
*May* But, my good lord, your grace's words shall serve,  
 As well as I had seen and heard him speak  
 And do not doubt, right noble princes both,  
 But I'll acquaint our duteous citizens 65  
 With all your just proceedings in this case  
*Glo* And to that end we wish'd your lordship here,

50 *Buck*] Ff, omitted Qq 52 61 Qq 4, 6 8 give to *Glo*, *Dut* Qq  
 1, 2, *Clo* Qq 3, 5 52 *we not*] Ff, *not we* Qq 53 *end*] Ff, *death*  
 Qq 54 *loving*] Ff, *longing* Qq 55 *Something*] Ff, Pope, *Some-*  
*what* Qq 54 *meanings*] Ff, *meaning* Qq, Pope *have*] *hath* Pope 55  
 1] Ff, *we* Qq *heard*] *hear* Keightley (conj) 58 *treasons*] Ff, *treason* Qq  
 60 *haply*] Ff, *happily* Qq 61 *Misconster*] Qq 1-5, Ff 1-3, *Misconstrue*  
 Q 6, F 4 62 *Bu*] omitted Qq 3 8, *Tut* Hammer *words*] Ff, *word* Qq  
 63 *and heard*] Ff, *or heard* Qq 64 *do not doubt*] Ff, *doubt you not* Qq  
 65 *our*] Ff, *your* Qq 66 *case*] Ff, Qq 7, 8, *cause* Qq 1-5, *ease* Q 6  
 67 *wish'd*] *wish* Qq 6 8

50, 51 Qq assign these lines to the Mayor, by whom they might have been spoken. The whole case of Jane Shore was a disgrace in citizenship which would have touched the Londoner deeply. However, the words "I never look'd for better at his hands" seem to point either to Gloucester or Buckingham as the speaker, for the Mayor had nothing to look for at the hands of Hastings. That the words are Buckingham's is most probable. Gloucester already, in line 31, had brought in the mention of Shore's wife to raise the Mayor's prejudice against Hastings. It was now Buckingham's turn to underline the insinuation.

52 61 These words are clearly a continuation of Buckingham's speech.

Gloucester adds his further improvement in lines 67, 68. Probably "Dut," before line 52 in Qq 1, 2 is a misprint for "Buc."

55 *have*] The verb apparently has been attracted into the plural after "friends" in the previous line.

61 *Misconster us in him*] *misconstrue* our behaviour towards him. "Misconster" is the form common to the early Qq and three of the folios. On Mr Daniel's hypothesis as to the text, the editor of F 1 restored it in place of the new reading "Misconstrue" in Q 6. F 1 has "misconsters" in *As You Like It*, I ii 277, "conster," *Twelfth Night*, III i 63, but "construe," *Merry Wives of Windsor*, I iii 50. *Julius Caesar*, I iii 34, II i 307.

To avoid the censures of the carping world

*Buck* But, since you come too late of your intent,

Yet witness what you hear we did intend 70

And so, my good lord mayor, we bid farewell

[*Exit Mayor*]

*Glou* Go after, after, cousin Buckingham!

The mayor towards Guildhall hies him in all post

There, at your meetest vantage of the time,

Infer the bastardy of Edward's children 75

Tell them how Edward put to death a citizen,

Only for saying he would make his son

Heir to the crown—meaning indeed his house,

Which, by the sign thereof, was termed so

Moreover, urge his hateful luxury 80

And bestial appetite in change of lust,

Which stretcht unto their servants, daughters, wives,

Even where his raging eye or savage heart,

Without control, listed to make a prey

68 *censures of the carping*] Ff, *carping censures of the* Qq 69 *Bur*  
Qq, *Which* Ff *come*] *came* Qq 3-8 *too late of*] *too late for* Capell  
*intent*] Ff, *intents* Qq 70, 71 *Yet* *farewell*] Ff, *Yet witness what*  
*we did intend, and so my Lord adue* (one line) Qq 72 *Go*] Ff, omitted  
Qq 74 *meetest*] Qq 6 8, Ff, *meetsi* Qq 1-5 *vantage*] Ff, *advantage*  
Qq 82 *stretcht unto*] Ff, *stretched to* Qq 83 *raging*] Ff, *lustful* Qq,  
*raging* Pope *a prey*] Ff, *his prey* Qq

68 *censures*] Here, if Ff be adopted, in the usual sense of "adverse judgments," as in *Othello*, v ii 368, *Henry VIII* i i 33, iii i 64 Qq, transferring to it the epithet "carping," give it the simple sense of "judgments," as ii ii 144 above

69 *too late of*] For the preposition compare *King Lear*, i ii 6

73 *in all post*] For this phrase compare i i 146 above See also *Richard II* ii. i 296, and compare "haste post haste," *Othello*, i ii 37 Mr Craig notes three instances from *Henry VI* viz i ii 48, iii iii 222, v v 84

74 *vantage of the time*] Compare *Troilus and Cressida*, iii iii 2

75 *Infer*] See iii vii 12 below, in Buckingham's account of the speech which Gloucester here advises him to make Compare *Timon of Athens*, iii v 73, and Mr Deighton's note, The

sense in the present case is "bring in as evidence"

76-79 The story of one Burdet, "a marchaunt dwelling in Chepesyd at ye signe of ye croune ouer agaynst soper lane," was foisted into More's narrative by Halle, to explain an allusion to Burdet's execution in the text Halle seems to have confused two separate incidents, for Burdet, punished in 1476, was a squire of Arrow in Worcestershire, and "the word spoken in hast" for which he suffered had nothing to do with the crown The citizen's name is given otherwise as Walker See Boswell-Stone, *Shakespeare's Holinshed*, p 375, note 2

80 *luxury*] lechery, as *Hamlet*, i v 83, *Measure for Measure*, v i 506, *King Lear*, iv vi 119 Compare "luxurious," *Macbeth*, iv iii 58 Tourneur, *Revenge's Tragedy*, twice uses the substantive "luxur" as a term of opprobrium.

Nay, for a need, thus far come near my person 85  
 Tell them, when that my mother went with child  
 Of that insatiate Edward, noble York,  
 My princely father, then had wars in France,  
 And, by true computation of the time,  
 Found that the issue was not his begot, 90  
 Which well appeared in his lineaments,  
 Being nothing like the noble duke my father  
 Yet touch this sparingly, as 'twere far off,  
 Because, my lord, you know my mother lives  
*Buck* Doubt not, my lord, I'll play the orator, 95  
 As if the golden fee for which I plead  
 Were for myself, and so, my lord, adieu  
*Glou* If you thrive well, bring them to Baynard's Castle,  
 Where you shall find me well accompanied  
 With reverend fathers and well-learned bishops 100  
*Buck* I go, and towards three or four o'clock  
 Look for the news that the Guildhall affords [*Exit*

85 *come*] comes Q 4 87 *insatiate*] Ff, *unsatiate* Qq 88 *wars*] *wares*  
 Q 6 89 *true*] Ff, *rust* Qq 93 *Yet*] Ff, *But* Qq 'twere] Ff, *it were*  
 Qq *far*] a *farre* Q 4 94 *my lord, you know*] Ff, *you know, my Lord* Qq  
*my mother*] *my brother* Qq 5, 7, 8, *me brother* Q 6 95 *Doubt*] Ff, *Fear*  
 Qq 97 *and so adieu*] Ff, omitted Qq 101, 102 *I go affords*] Ff,  
*About three or foure a clocke look to heare What news Guildhall affordeth,*  
*and so my Lord farewell Exit ] Exx Buck and Catesby severally Pope*

85 *for a need*] if necessary So 93 *touch far off*] touch hint-  
 Chapman, *All Fools*, act iv — ingly. Compare *Merry Wives of*  
 "If tears, which so abundantly Windsor, i i 216, iii i 170 above  
 distil 98 *Baynard's Castle*] This castle,  
 Out of my inward eyes, and for a which gives its name to a ward of the  
 need city of London, was on the Thames,  
 Can drown these outward " between Blackfriars and London  
 87 *insatiate*] Qq have "unsatiate," Bridge It was founded after the Con-  
 as they have "unviolable" in ii i 27 quest by one Baynard, and eventually  
 above Compare Fletcher, *Woman passed to the Crown through the hands*  
*Hater*, iii i "woman, *unsatiate* of the Clares, Fitzwalters, and Hum-  
 woman" The distinction between phrey, Duke of Gloucester From  
 the prefixes "un-" and "in-" was Henry VI it passed to Richard, Duke  
 not thoroughly recognised in Shake- of York, and remained in the possession  
 speare's day, although, during his later of his family till the death of Richard  
 years, it becomes more marked Mar- III In 1483 it was the residence of  
 ston's *Insatiate Countess* was printed the Dowager Duchess of York In  
 in 1613 In *Richard II* ii ii 126, Ff Shakespeare's time it belonged to  
 have "impossible" for Qq "unpos- William Herbert, the Earl of Pembroke  
 sible", but they have "uncapable" in whose name is familiar to all Shake-  
*Merchant of Venice*, iv i 5, *Othello*, spearean students  
 iv ii 235 See note on iii vii 7 99, 100 *accompanied With*] So *Corti-*  
 below *olanus*, iii iii 6, 7

*Glou* Go, Lovel, with all speed to Doctor Shaw,  
 [To Cates] Go thou to Friar Penker, bid them both  
 Meet me within this hour at Baynard's Castle 105  
 [Exeunt all but Gloucester]  
 Now will I go to take some privy order  
 To draw the brats of Clarence out of sight,  
 And to give order, that no manner person  
 Have any time recourse unto the princes [Exit]

SCENE VI—*The same A street*

*Enter a Scrivener with a paper in his hand*

*Scriv* Here is the indictment of the good Lord Hastings,  
 Which in a set hand fairly is engross'd,  
 That it may be to-day read o'er in Paul's  
 And mark how well the sequel hangs together

103 105 Go Castle] Ff, omitted Qq 104 To Cates] Capell 105  
 Exeunt] Exit Ff, Exeunt Lov and Cates severally Theobald 106  
 go] Ff, in Qq 108 order] Ff, notice Qq manner] Qq 3, 4, Ff, manner of  
 Qq 1, 2, 5 8 109 Have any time] Ff, At any time have Qq Exit]  
 Exeunt Ff 1, 2

## Scene VI

SCENE VI] omitted Ff, scene continued Pope The same A street] Capell  
 with hand] Qq, omitted Ff 1 Here] Ff, Thus Qq 3 to-day]  
 Ff, this day Qq o'er] Ff, over Qq

103 Doctor Shaw] "John Shaw, reading peculiar to Qq 3, 4 Compare  
 clearke, brother to the maior" (More, ap Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, iv x 7 "all  
 Holinshed, iii 725) manner wights"

104 Friar Penker] Among the  
 learned men of Richard's reign enumer-  
 ated by Bale, Holinshed (iii 761) men-  
 tion's "John Penketh an Augustine  
 frier of Warrington in Lancashire, a  
 right subtil fellow in disputation"  
 More calls him "prounciall of the  
 Augustine friers" The name Penketh  
 or Penker is derived, no doubt, from the  
 village of Penketh on the Mersey,  
 about four and a half miles south west  
 of Warrington Of Shaw and Penker  
 More says that they were "both doctors  
 of diuinitie, both great preachers, both  
 of more learning than virtue, of more  
 fame than learning"

106 take order] make some  
 arrangement Qq read "take order"  
 at 1 iv 281 above

108 no manner person] It is interest-  
 ing to find Ff coinciding here with a

Scene VI  
 The material for this scene is  
 gathered from a passage in More (ap  
 Holinshed, iii 724) "Now was this  
 proclamation made within two houres  
 after that he was beheaded, and it was  
 so curiouslie indicted, & so faire  
 written in parchment, in so well a set  
 hand (line 2), and therewith of it selfe  
 so long a processe, that euerie child  
 might well perceue that it was prepared  
 before For all the time, betweene his  
 death and the proclaiming, could scant  
 haue sufficed vnto the bare writing  
 alone, all had it bene but in paper, and  
 scribled forth in hast at aduenture"  
 In the prose narrative the reflections  
 are given to "one that was schole-  
 maister of Powles," and to a merchant  
 that talked with him

Eleven hours I have spent to write it over, 5  
 For yesternight by Catesby was it sent me,  
 The precedent was full as long a-doing  
 And yet within these five hours Hastings liv'd,  
 Untainted, unexamind, free, at liberty  
 Here's a good world the while! Who is so gross, 10  
 That cannot see this palpable device?  
 Yet who so bold, but says he sees it not?  
 Bad is the world, and all will come to nought,  
 When such ill dealing must be seen in thought [Exit

SCENE VII—*Baynard's Castle*

*Enter* GLOUCESTER and BUCKINGHAM, at several doors

*Glou* How now, how now, what say the citizens?

*Buck* Now, by the holy mother of our Lord,

The citizens are mum, say not a word!

*Glou* Touch'd you the bastardy of Edward's children?

5 *I have spent*] Ff, *I spent* Qq, *I've spent* Pope 6 *sent*] Ff, *brought* Qq  
 7 *precedent*] Ff, *president* Qq 8 *Hastings liv'd*] Ff, *lived* Lord Hastings  
 Qq 10, 11 *Here's device*] *Here's while* Who is *device*  
 Ff, *Heeres while*, *Why whoes so grosse That sees not device* Qq,  
*Here's while! Why, who's so gross, That seeth not device* Camb  
 12 *who*] Qq 3 7, Ff, *whoes* Q 1, *whose* Q 2, *who's* Q 8 *bold*] Ff, *blinde*  
 Qq 13 *nought*] *naught* Qq 1, 2 14 *ill*] Ff, *bad* Qq *dealing*] *dealings* Q 4

## Scene VII

SCENE VII *Baynard's Castle*] Theobald *Enter Gloucester* ] *Enter*  
*Richard* Ff, *Enter Gloucester at one doore, Buckingham at another* Qq  
 1 *How now, how now*] Ff, *How now my Lord* Qq 3 *say*] Ff, *and speak* Qq

7 *precedent*] the rough copy of the 10 *gross*] dull of perception Com  
 document, as *King John*, v 11 3 Ff pare *Othello*, iii 11 404

spell the word as we spell it now, in  
 the present instance, but in the pass  
 age just referred to, and in *Merchant*  
*of Venice*, iv 1 220, *Richard II* 11 1  
 130, *Henry VIII* 1 11 91, the form in  
 Ff is "president," as in Qq here  
 "President" occurs again in all the  
 early editions of Suckling's *Sessions of*  
*the Poets*, st 12, in *Fragmenta Aurea*  
 (1st ed 1646)

9 *untainted*] without suspicion of  
 guilt Compare iii v 32 above See  
 Griffith's description of Wolsey's fall,  
*Henry VIII* iv 11 14, "a man sorely  
 tainted"

## Scene VII

3 *mum*] silent Shakespeare ordin-  
 arily uses the word as an interjection,  
 e g 2 *Henry VI* 1 11 89, *Measure for*  
*Measure*, v 1 288 Compare Lodge  
 and Greene, *Looking Glass for Lon-*  
*don* (Dyce, 133) —

"Strike up the drum,  
 And say no words but *mum*",  
 Wilkins, *Miseries of Inforst Marriage*,  
 act 11 "But *mum* they have felt  
 thy cheek, Clare, let them hear thy  
 tongue"

*Buck* I did, with his contract with Lady Lucy, 5  
 And his contract by deputy in France,  
 The unsatiate greediness of his desire,  
 And his enforcement of the city wives,  
 His tyranny for trifles, his own bastardy,  
 As being got, your father then in France, 10  
 And his resemblance, being not like the duke  
 Withal I did infer your lineaments,  
 Being the right idea of your father,  
 Both in your form and nobleness of mind,  
 Laid open all your victories in Scotland, 15  
 Your discipline in war, wisdom in peace,  
 Your bounty, virtue, fair humility,  
 Indeed, left nothing fitting for your purpose  
 Untouch'd or slightly handled in discourse  
 And, when my oratory diw toward end, 20

5-7 *his contract* France] Ff, omitted Qq (*I did desires* one line)  
 7 *unsatiate*] Ff, *insatiate* Qq *desire*] Ff, *desires* Qq 8 *And his*  
*wives*] Ff, omitted Qq 11 *And his duke*] Ff, omitted Qq *his*  
*resemblance*] *disresemblance* Collier 14 *your*] one Qq 3 6 15 *open*] *draw*  
*upon* Qq 6 8 18 *your*] Ff, *the* Qq 20 *my*] *mine* Qq 1-2  
*toward*] Ff, *grew* to Qq *end*] *an end* Qq 1, 2

5 *Lady Lucy*] See note on lines 179 82 below

7 *insatiate*] Compare III v 87 and note above In the present case Qq and Ff reverse their previous readings

9 *His tyranny for trifles*] Edward IV "neuer asked little, but euerie thing was hawsed aboue the measure, amerce-ments turned into fines, fines into ransoms, small trespasses into mis-  
 prison [*sic*], misprison into treason" (More)

11 The construction may be ex-panded thus "[I touched] the fact that his resemblance, if it were a resemblance to anybody, was not to the duke" The sentence is one substantival clause, and the comma might be deleted with advantage More says that, to those who knew the family best, there was some un-certanty as to the parentage of Edward and Clarence "as those that by their fauours more resembled other knowne men than him"

13 *Being*] The construction is that

of III v 92 above Buckingham repeats Gloucester's words in that passage with a slight alteration More says that Buckingham asserted that Gloucester "as well in all princelie behauour, as in the lineaments and fauour of his visage, represented the verie face of the noble duke his father"

*right idea*] exact image For "idea" = image, form, compare Mil-ton, *Apology for Smectymnuus* "whether a vehement vein throwing out indignation and scorn upon an object that merits it, were among the aptest *ideas* of speech to be allowed"

15 Gloucester had been entrusted with the command of the Scottish expedition of 1482, in which the English took the part of Alexander, Duke of Albany, against his brother James III The English army ad-vanced as far as Edinburgh the substantial advantage of the invasion was the capture of Berwick, which was ceded finally to England by the concluding treaty

I bid them that did love their country's good  
Cry "God save Richard, England's royal king!"

*Glou* And did they so?

*Buck* No, so God help me! they spake not a word,  
But, like dumb statues or breathing stones, 25  
Star'd each on other, and look'd deadly pale  
Which when I saw, I reprehended them,  
And ask'd the mayor, what meant this wilful silence?  
His answer was, the people were not used  
To be spoke to, but by the recorder 30  
Then he was urg'd to tell my tale again  
"Thus saith the duke, thus hath the duke inferr'd,"  
But nothing spoke in warrant from himself  
When he had done, some followers of mine own,  
At lower end of the hall, hurl'd up their caps, 35  
And some ten voices cried "God save King Richard!"  
And thus I took the vantage of those few,  
"Thanks, gentle citizens and friends!" quoth I,  
"This general applause and cheerful shout  
Argues your wisdom and your love to Richard" 40  
And even here brake off, and came away

21 *bid*] *bad* Qq 5-8      *did love*] *lous* Qq 3-8      23 *And*] *Ff*, *A and* Qq  
24 *they*      *word*] *Ff*, omitted Qq      25 *statues*] illegible misprint Q 1,  
*statuas* Steevens, Reed, Camb      26 *Star'd*] *Ff*, *Gande* Qq      28 *meant*]  
*meanes* Qq 6-8      29 *used*] *Ff*, *wont* Qq      30 *but*] *except* Pope      *by the*]  
*by their own* Capell      33 *spoke*] *Ff*, *spake* Qq 1-5, 7, 8, *speake* Q 6      35  
*At*      *of the*] *Ff*, *At the*      *of the* Qq, *At*      *o' th'* Pope, *At lower end*  
*the* Capell      37 *And thus*      *few*] *Ff*, omitted Qq      38 *gentle*] *Ff*,  
*loung* Qq 1-6, *noble* Qq 7, 8      39 *cheerful*] *Ff*, *loung* Qq      40 *wisdom*]  
*wisdomes* Qq 1, 2      *love*] *lous* Qq 3-6      41 *even here*] *Ff*, so Qq

25 *statues*] a trisyllable, as *Julius Caesar*, II ii 76 (see Mr Macmillan's note), III ii 192. In all these cases, later editors, following the advice of Reed, have printed the hybrid forms "statua, statuas." The plural "statuas" is used by Bacon. In Greene, *Orlando Furioso* (Dyce, 89), "statues" (Q 1 "statutes") is a dissyllable. Similarly in Lodge and Greene, *Looking Glass for London* (Dyce, 137), "statues" is a dissyllable in the line "The statues of our gods are thrown down," where Qq 1-3 print "statutes,"

and "thrown" must be read as a dissyllable (thrown).

30 *recorder*] The accent is on the first syllable, as in "récord." Such emendations as those of Pope and Capell are therefore unnecessary. The recorder's name was Fitzwilliam, "a sad man, and an honest" (More).

37 *the vantage of those few*] the opportunity offered by those few. Compare III v 74 above. Halle gives the name of the ringleader of those who shouted for Gloucester as Nash-field.

*Glou* What tongueless blocks were they<sup>1</sup> would they not speak?

*Buck* No, by my troth, my lord

*Glou* Will not the mayor then and his brethren come?

*Buck* The mayor is here at hand intend some fear, 45

Be not you spoke with, but by mighty suit

And look you get a prayer-book in your hand,

And stand between two churchmen, good my lord,

For on that ground I'll make a holy descant

And be not easily won to our requests, 50

Play the maid's part, still answer nay, and take it

*Glou* I go, and if you plead as well for them

As I can say nay to thee for myself,

No doubt we'll bring it to a happy issue

*Buck* Go, go up to the leads<sup>1</sup> the lord mayor knocks 55

[*Exit Gloucester*]

*Enter the LORD MAYOR and Citizens*

Welcome, my lord<sup>1</sup> I dance attendance here,

I think the duke will not be spoke withal

42 *What* *speake*] one line as Qq, *What*. *were they, Would*  
*speake* (two lines) Ff 43 *Buck* *No* *lord*] Qq, omitted Ff 45 *at*  
*hand*] omitted Qq 3-8 *intend*] Ff, *and intend* Qq 46 *you spoke with*] Ff,  
*spoken withall* Qq 48 *between*] Ff, *between* Qq 49 *make*] Ff, *build* Qq  
 50 *And*] Ff, omitted Qq *easily*] Q 1, Ff, *easie* Qq 2 8 *requests*] Ff,  
*request* Qq 51 *still answer nay, and*] Ff, *say no, but* Qq 52 *I go, and*  
*if you*] Ff, *Fear not me, if thou canst* Qq 53 *can say* *thee*] must say  
*them* Johnson conj 54 *we'll*] Qq, *we* Ff 55 *Go, go* *knocks*] Ff,  
*You shall see what I can do, get you up to the leads* Qq 55 *Exit Gloucester* ]  
*Camb*, *Exit* Qq, omitted Ff aft 55 *Enter the Lord Mayor* ] *Enter*  
*the Mayor* Ff, omitted Qq 56 *Welcome, my lord*] Ff, *Now my L*  
*Mayor* Qq 57 *spoke*] *spoken* Qq 3-8

46 *by mighty suit*] by earnest entreaty

51 *still take it*] The expression is proverbial Compare Lodge and Greene, *Looking Glass for London* (Dyce, 123) —

"Tut, my Remilia, be not thou so coy,

*Say nay, and take it*"

See *Two Gentlemen of Verona*, I ii 55 Mr Bond, in his note on the above passage (Arden ed. 1906, p 13), quotes

from Steevens the original proverb, "Maids say nay, and take it" Mr Craig finds in Middleton, *A Trick to Catch the Old One*, 1608, III 1 "You do so ravish me with kindness, that I am constrained to *play the maid, and take it*"

53 *to thee*] It is to Buckingham, as introducer and spokesman of the citizens, that Richard will have to play "the maid's part"

*Enter CATESBY*

Now, Catesby, what says your lord to my request?

*Cates* He doth entreat your grace, my noble lord,  
To visit him to-morrow or next day 60  
He is within with two right reverend fathers,  
Divinely bent to meditation,  
And in no worldly suits would he be mov'd,  
To draw him from his holy exercise

*Buck* Return, good Catesby, to the gracious duke, 65  
Tell him, myself, the mayor and aldermen,  
In deep designs, in matter of great moment,  
No less importing than our general good,  
Are come to have some conference with his grace

*Cates* I'll signify so much unto him straight [*Exit* 70

*Buck* Ah, ha, my lord! this prince is not an Edward  
He is not lolling on a lewd love-bed,  
But on his knees at meditation,  
Not dallying with a brace of courtesans,  
But meditating with two deep divines, 75  
Not sleeping, to engross his idle body,

58 Now Catesby request] Ff, Here comes his servant how now Catesby  
what says he Qq, Catesby request Pope, Here comes his servant how  
now, Catesby, What says he (two lines) Camb 59 He doth lord] Ff,  
My Lord, he doth intreat your grace Qq 61 right] omitted Qq 3-8 63  
suits] Ff, suite Qq 65 the gracious duke] Ff, thy lord again Qq 66  
aldermen] Ff, Citizens Qq 67 in matter] Ff, and matters Qq 68  
than] them then Qq 6-8 70 I'll straight] Ff, Ile tell him what you say  
my Lord Qq 72 lolling] Pope, lulling Qq, Ff love-bed] Ff, day-bed Qq

72 lolling] For "lulling," the form common to Qq and Ff, compare the description of Covetysse in *Piers the Plowman*, A-text (Vernon MS), v. 110 "And like a leperne pors lulledde his chekes"

love-bed] Qq have "day-bed," i.e. a couch or sofa, as in *Twelfth Night*, II v 54, 55 *New Eng Dict* quotes Overbury's *Characters*, 1613 (An Ordinary Fencer) "Three large bavins set up his trade, with a bench, which, in the vacation of the afternoons, he uses as his day-bed" Compare Fletcher, *Rule a Wife and have a Wife*, 1640, III 1 (quoted by Nares), where Margarita asks her servant Altea whether there

are "day beds in all chambers," in preparation for company

76 engross] fatten *New Eng Dict* cites W. Harrison, *Description of England*, 1577 "They (i.e. the Scotch) so ingrosse their bodies" Compare Bishop Hall, *Contemplations*, book ix (*Works*, ed Pratt, 1886) "It is a marvel, that neither any noise in his dying, nor the fall of so gross a body, called in some of his attendants" Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, II. vi 46, uses "engroste" in a kindred sense —

"The waves thereof so slow and sluggish were,  
Engroste with mud which did them fowle agrise"

But praying, to enrich his watchful soul  
 Happy were England, would this virtuous prince  
 Take on his grace the sovereignty thereof!  
 But, sure, I fear, we shall not win him to it 80  
*May* Marry, God defend his grace should say us nay!  
*Buck* I fear he will Here Catesby comes again

*Re-enter CATESBY*

Now, Catesby, what says his grace?  
*Cates* He wonders to what end you have assembled  
 Such troops of citizens to come to him, 85  
 His grace not being warn'd thereof before  
 He fears, my lord, you mean no good to him  
*Buck* Sorry I am, my noble cousin should  
 Suspect me, that I mean no good to him  
 By heaven, we come to him in perfect love! 90  
 And so once more return and tell his grace

*[Exit Catesby]*

When holy and devout religious men  
 Are at their beads, 'tis much to draw them thence,  
 So sweet is zealous contemplation

*Enter GLOUCESTER aloft, between two Bishops*

*CATESBY returns*

*May* See, where his grace stands 'tween two clergymen! 95

78 virtuous] Ff, gracious Qq, 79. his grace] Ff, himselfe Qq thereof]  
 Ff, thereon Qq 80 not] Ff, neuer Qq, ne'er Capell, Camb 81 defend]  
 Ff, forbid Qq, shield Pope 82 here again] Ff, omitted Qq Re-enter]  
 Enter Qq, Ff 33 Now grace] Ff, how now Catesby, What saves your  
 Lord Qq 84 He] Ff, My Lo he Qq, My lord, He Camb 85 come to] Ff,  
 speaks with Qq 87 He fears, my lord] Ff, My Lord, he feares Qq 90 we  
 come love] Ff, I come in perfect loue to him Qq perfect] perfit Ff  
 91 Exit Catesby] Qq 16, Exit Ff 93 much] Ff, hard Qq. thence]  
 hence Qq 5-8 94 Enter Gloucester] Enter Richard . Ff, Enter  
 Rich with two Bishops a loste Q 1, Enter Rich with aloft Q 2, Enter  
 Rich and aloft Qq 3 8 Catesby returns] Theobald, Catesby again,  
 below Capell aft 94 SCENE VIII Pope 95 his grace] Ff, he Qq.  
 'tween] tweene Ff, between Qq

80 win] persuade, as *Richard II.* ii  
 m 163

83-95 This passage is a close following  
 of the chroniclers Shakespeare  
 introduces Catesby as the messenger  
 employed by Richard, and makes  
 Buckingham, for brevity's sake, take

on himself the responsibility of the  
 message, which, in the prose  
 chroniclers, is sent back to the Pro-  
 tector by the mayor and aldermen

aft 94 *Enter Gloucester aloft*, etc.]  
 More's words, "with a byshop on  
 euery hand of him," are omitted by

- Buck* Two props of virtue for a Christian prince,  
 To stay him from the fall of vanity  
 And see, a book of prayer in his hand !—  
 True ornaments to know a holy man  
 Famous Plantagenet, most gracious prince, 100  
 Lend favourable ear to our requests,  
 And pardon us the interruption  
 Of thy devotion and right Christian zeal
- Glou.* My lord, there needs no such apology  
 I do beseech your grace to pardon me, 105  
 Who, earnest in the service of my God,  
 Deferr'd the visitation of my friends  
 But, leaving this, what is your grace's pleasure?
- Buck* Even that, I hope, which pleaseth God above,  
 And all good men of this ungovern'd isle 110
- Glou* I do suspect I have done some offence  
 That seems disgracious in the city's eye,  
 And that you come to reprehend my ignorance
- Buck* You have, my lord would it might please your grace,  
 On our entreaties, to amend your fault 115
- Glou* Else wherefore breathe I in a Christian land?
- Buck* Know, then, it is your fault that you resign  
 The supreme seat, the throne majestical,  
 The sceptred office of your ancestors,  
 Your state of fortune and your due of birth, 120

98, 99 *And see* . *man*] Ff, omitted Qq ornaments] ornament Dyce  
 101 *ear*] Ff, *eares* Qq *our*] Q 1, Ff, *my* Qq 2-8 requests Ff, request  
 Qq 105 *do beseech your grace to*] Ff, *I rather do beseech you* Qq 106  
*my God*] God F 2, *th' hgh God* Ff 3, 4 107 *Deferr'd*] Ff, *Neglect* Qq  
 112 *eye*] Ff, *eyes* Qq 114 *You* *grace*] one line as Qq, *You*  
*Lord Would* *Grace* (two lines) Ff *might*] Ff, omitted Qq 115  
*On*] Ff, *At* Qq *your*] Ff, *that* Qq 117 *Know then*] Ff, *Then know*  
 Qq 120 *Your* *birth*] Ff, omitted Qq *due*] *Deaw* Ff 1, 2

Holnshed, but adopted by Halle  
 From this point to the end of the  
 scene, Shakespeare expands his au-  
 thorities freely

99 ornaments] refers to the bishops  
 as well as the prayer book This line  
 is the mayor's criticism of the whole  
 scene in the gallery above

112 disgracious] used again below,  
 iv iv 178 *New Eng Dict* quotes  
 Speed, *Hist Great Britaine*, 1611

"As for these causes he was in highest  
 grace with the king, so hee was the  
 more *disgracious* or hated of the  
 people" For "*disgrace*" used in this  
 sense, compare Pottenham (?), *Arte of*  
*English Poetrie*, iii 12 (Arber, 181)  
 "This insertion is no disgrace  
 but rather a bewtie and to very good  
 purpose"

118 *majestical*] Compare *Henry V*  
 iv. i 284

The lineal glory of your royal house,  
 To the corruption of a blemish'd stock,  
 Whiles, in the mildness of your sleepy thoughts,  
 Which here we waken to our country's good,  
 This noble isle doth want his proper limbs, 125  
 His face defac'd with scars of infamy,  
 His royal stock graff'd with ignoble plants,  
 And almost should' red in the swallowing gulf  
 Of dark forgetfulness and deep oblivion  
 Which to recure, we heartily solicit 130  
 Your gracious self to take on you the charge  
 And kingly government of this your land—  
 Not as protector, steward, substitute,  
 Or lowly factor for another's gain,  
 But as successively, from blood to blood, 135

123 *Whiles*] Ff, *Whilst* Q 1, *Whilist* Qq 2 8, *While* Pope 124 *our*] *your* Q 6 125 *This*] Qq, *The* Ff *his*] *her* Qq 1, 2 126 *His*] Ff, *Her* Qq *scars*] *stars* Qq 2-4 127 *His* *plants*] Ff, omitted Qq *His*] *Her* Pope 128 *in the*] *in this* Qq 3-8, *into th'* Hanmer 129 *dark*] Ff, *blind* Qq *deep*] Ff, *darke* Qq 130 *recure*] *recouer* Qq 6-8 131, 132 *Your* *land*] Ff, *Your gracious selfe* to take on you the soueraignty thereof Qq 134 *Or*] *Nor* Qq 3-8

125 127 *his* *his* *His*] We naturally should expect "her," which we find in Qq, lines 125, 126 But the repetition of "his" and its occurrence in a line peculiar to Ff (127) suggest that it is deliberate and not merely an error

127 Malone implies that this line is intended to recall the text of Dr Shaw's sermon at Paul's Cross, viz Wisdom iv 3, "Spuria vitilamina non agent radices altas"

128 *should' red in*] The metaphor, as Hanmer and Steevens understood, is that of violent jostling in a crowd Compare Milton, *Apology for Smectymnus* "That just government which pride and ambition hath shouldered out of the church" Steevens quotes Drayton, *Barons' Wars*, i st. 45 —

"Strongly inveigled with delightful hope,  
 Stoutly t' affront and shoulder  
 with debate"

Buckingham says that England, in her adverse circumstances, is almost thrust into the gulf of oblivion Malone believed that the meaning was "up to the

shoulders in," quoting Spenser's *Ruines of Rome*, st 16, where the sea "in a great mountaine heap't" is "eftsoones of thousand billowes shouldred narre" This passage, alleged with much doubt by Malone, is rightly quoted by Aldis Wright in support of the meaning "thrust violently out of place," as implied above Johnson proposed "smoulder'd," i.e. "almost smother'd, covered and lost"

130 *recure*] Compare Beaumont and Fletcher, *Faithful Shepherdess*, v 5 —

"That may raise thee, and *re-cure*  
 All thy life that was impure"

134 *factor*] agent, used again below, iv iv 72 Compare 1 *Henry IV* iii ii 147 The word is still used in Scotland of a land-agent

135 *successively*] by right of succession So in Chapman (?), *Alphonsus*, act 1, the King of Bohemia speaks in the name of

"The seven princes of the German empire,  
 To whom *successively* it doth belong  
 To make election of our emperors"

Your right of birth, your empery, your own.

For this, consorted with the citizens,

Your very worshipful and loving friends,

And by their vehement instigation,

In this just cause come I to move your grace. 140

*Glou* I cannot tell, if to depart in silence,

Or bitterly to speak in your reproof,

Best fitteth my degree or your condition

If not to answer, you might haply think

Tongue-tied ambition, not replying, yielded 145

To bear the golden yoke of sovereignty,

Which fondly you would here impose on me

If to reprove you for this suit of yours,

So season'd with your faithful love to me,

Then, on the other side, I check'd my friends 150

Therefore, to speak, and to avoid the first,

And then, in speaking, not to incur the last,

Definitively thus I answer you

Your love deserves my thanks, but my desert

Unmeritable shuns your high request 155

First, if all obstacles were cut away,

And that my path were even to the crown,

As the ripe revenue and due of birth,

138 *very* *loving*] *worshipfull and very louing* Qq 3 8 140 *cause*  
Ff, *sute* Qq 141 *cannot tell, if*] Ff, *know not whether* Qq 1-4, *know not*  
*whither* Qq 5-8 144 53 *If not* *answer you*] Ff, omitted Qq 144  
*If not*] *For not* Ff 2-4 152 *not to*] *not* Pope 158 *As the*] Ff, *As my* Qq  
*ripe*] Q 1, Ff, *right* Qq 2 8 *of birth*] Ff, *by birth* Qq

See also note on III 1 73 above Mr territorial sovereignty In *Titus An-*  
Craig quotes Peele, *Anglorum Ferre* *dronicus*, I 1 22, we find "the Roman  
(Bullen, II 347) — empery", but, three lines before, the

"In her hereditary royal right

Successively to sit enthronized"

136 *emperry*] *empire* Compare sovereign power Marlowe, in the  
*Cymbeline*, I VI 120 — two parts of *Tamburlaine*, gives it the

"A lady

So far, and fasten'd to an *em-*  
*pery*"

(see Prof Dowden's note), Chap- 143 *degree* *condition*] Compare  
man (?), *Alphonsus*, act II — 2 *Henry IV* IV III 1-6

"How far is Richard now unlike 150 *I check'd*] *e* I should check  
the man 155 *Unmeritable*] used again in

That cross'd the seas to win an 158 *revenue*] The accent, until a  
*emperry*" comparatively recent date, was usually

In these passages the word implies on the second syllable Compare

*Julius Caesar*, IV 1 12  
*Tronius and Cressida*, II II 206 But

Yet so much is my poverty of spirit,  
 So mighty and so many my defects, 160  
 That I would rather hide me from my greatness,  
 Being a bark to brook no mighty sea,  
 Than in my greatness covet to be hid,  
 And in the vapour of my glory smother'd  
 But, God be thank'd! there is no need of me; 165  
 And much I need to help you, were there need  
 The royal tree hath left us royal fruit,  
 Which, mellow'd by the stealing hours of time,  
 Will well become the seat of majesty,  
 And make, no doubt, us happy by his reign 170  
 On him I lay that you would lay on me,  
 The right and fortune of his happy stars,  
 Which God defend that I should wring from him!  
*Buck* My lord, this argues conscience in your grace,  
 But the respects thereof are nice and trivial, 175  
 All circumstances well considered  
 You say that Edward is your brother's son  
 So say we too, but not by Edward's wife,  
 For first was he contract to Lady Lucy—

161. *That I would* Ff, *As I had* Qq 165. *thank'd! there is* Ff, *thanked*  
*there's* Qq *of me* for me Qq 3-8 166. *were there need* Ff, *if need were*  
 Qq 170. *no doubt, us* us (no doubt) Ff 24, *us doubtless* Pope 171  
*that you* Ff, *what you* Qq 179. *was he* Ff, *he was* Qq *contract*  
*contracted* Q 6

Shakespeare also accentuates the first syllable, as here and in *Richard II* II 1 226

173 *wring* Compare 3 *Henry VI* II 1 154

175 *the respects* 'thereof' the considerations on which your arguments are founded Compare *Much Ado About Nothing*, II III 176, *King Lear*, I 1 251; and "unrespectful boys" at IV. II 29 below

*nice* scrupulous, fastidious, as 3 *Henry VI* IV VII 58, *Taming of the Shrew*, III 1 80

179-82 Shakespeare followed More in the details of Edward IV's supposed marriage or contract In the petition ratified by the Parliament of January, 1484, when the crown was settled upon Richard, it was stated that Lady

Eleanor Butler, a daughter of the Earl of Shrewsbury, was Edward's troth-plight wife at the time of his marriage with Elizabeth The statement rested on the evidence of only one witness, and, at Henry VII's accession, every copy of the scandalous petition was destroyed, and an alternative legend grew up Holinshed's story is that, just before Edward had fallen in love with Lady Grey, there had been talk of his marriage with Bona of Savoy, sister to the Queen of France, and Warwick had been sent to Louis XI at Tours, to arrange such a treaty The Comte de Dammarin was about to come to England and there conclude preliminaries, when Edward pledged his honour to Lady Grey His mother was so annoyed that, "under pretext of her

Your mother lives a witness to his vow— 180  
 And afterward by substitute betroth d  
 To Bona, sister to the king of France  
 These both put off, a poor petitioner,  
 A care-craz'd mother to a many sons,  
 A beauty-waning and distressed widow, 185  
 Even in the afternoon of her best days,  
 Made prize and purchase of his wanton eye,  
 Seduc'd the pitch and height of his degree  
 To base declension and loath'd bigamy  
 By her, in his unlawful bed, he got 190  
 This Edward, whom our manners call the prince  
 More bitterly could I expostulate,  
 Save that, for reverence to some alive,  
 I give a sparing limit to my tongue  
 Then, good my lord, take to your royal self 195  
 This proffer'd benefit of dignity,  
 If not to bless us and the land withal,  
 Yet to draw forth your noble ancestry  
 From the corruption of abusing times,  
 Unto a lineal true-derived course 200

180 *his*] Ff, *that* Qq 183 *put off*] Ff, *put by* Qq 184 *mother to*] Ff,  
*mother of* Qq *a many*] Q 1, Ff, *many* Qq 2 8 *sons*] Ff, *children* Qq  
187 *wanton*] Ff, *lustful* Qq 188 *his degree*] Ff, *all his thoughts* Qq  
191 *call*] Ff, *term* Qq 198 *forth* *ancestry*] Ff, *out your royall stocke*  
Qq 199 *abusing times*] Ff, *abusing time* Qq 1-5, *a busing time* Q 6, *a*  
*busse time* Qq 7, 8 200 *true derived*] Theobald, *true, derived* Pope

datie to Godward," she determined to  
 break the engagement by any means,  
 and asserted that Edward already was  
 ensured to Elizabeth Lucy When  
 called upon for evidence, the lady con-  
 fessed that Edward had seduced her  
 under a vague promise of marriage,  
 but that no formal contract had passed  
 between them

184 *care-craz'd*] shattered by care  
 Compare IV iv 17 below, *Midsummer*  
*Night's Dream*, I i 92, in which cases  
 "crazed" means "cracked, broken"  
 Mr Craig refers to the phrase "a crazy  
 boat" for a damaged, broken boat In  
 Lincolnshire "crazy" is still applied to  
 cracked china, etc, e g "a crazy plate"

187 *purchase*] booty, as I *Henry*  
 IV ii 1 101 Compare Wilkins,  
*Miseries of Inforst Marriage*, act iv

"Down with your dust, our morning's  
 purchase"

188 *pitch*] a metaphor from falconry  
 Compare *Richard II* I i 109, *Julius*  
*Cæsar*, I i 78

189 *declension*] Compare *Hamlet*,  
 II ii 149, where the word is used of a  
 gradual change to the worse Here it  
 implies a sudden apostasy from the  
 duties of station

*loath'd bigamy*] The use of "bigamy"  
 in connection with a marriage with  
 a widow, as More uses it, is curious  
 "Loath'd"=loathsome see note on  
 "unmanner'd," I ii 39 above, and  
 compare "effeminate" for "feminine"  
 at line 211 below

192 *expostulate*] expound, discuss  
 the matter Compare *Hamlet*, II ii 86

199 *the corruption of abusing times*]

*May* Do, good my lord! your citizens entreat you

*Buck* Refuse not, mighty lord, this proffer'd love

*Cates* O! make them joyful, grant their lawful suit

*Glou* Alas! why would you heap this care on me?

I am unfit for state and majesty 205

I do beseech you, take it not amiss,

I cannot nor I will not yield to you

*Buck* If you refuse it, as, in love and zeal,

Loath to depose the child, your brother's son—

As well we know your tenderness of heart, 210

And gentle, kind, effeminate remorse,

Which we have noted in you to your kindred,

And egally, indeed, to all estates—

Yet know, whether you accept our suit or no,

Your brother's son shall never reign our king, 215

But we will plant some other in the throne,

To the disgrace and downfall of your house,

And in this resolution here we leave you

Come, citizens 'zounds! I'll entreat no more

*Glou* O! do not swear, my Lord of Buckingham 220

[*Exit Buckingham with the Citizens*]

*Cates* Call him again, sweet prince, accept their suit

If you deny them, all the land will rue it

*Glou* Will you enforce me to a world of cares?

202 *Buck Refuse* . love] Ff, omitted Qq 204 *this care*] Ff; *these*  
*cares* Q 1, *ihose cares* Qq 2-8 205 *majesty*] Ff; *dignitie* Qq 212  
*kindred*] Ff, *kin* Qq 214 *know*] Ff, omitted Qq *whether*] Qq, *where*  
Ff, *wher* Theobald *accept*] *except* Q 6 219 *'zounds! I'll*] Qq, *we will*  
Ff 220 *Glou O Buckingham*] Qq, omitted Ff *Exit Citizens* ]  
Capell 221 *him*] Ff, *them* Qq, Pope *sweet prince*] Ff, Pope, *my lord*  
Qq *accept*] Ff, Pope, *and accept* Qq 222 *If you rue it*] Ff, *Ano*  
*Doe, good my lord, least all the land do rue it* Qq 223 *Will*] Ff, *Would*  
Qq *cares*] Ff, *care* Qq

the corruption which it has suffered by periods of abuse "Abusing time" of the earlier Qq would imply that the abuse came in the natural course of time the "abusing times" of Ff are the years following Edward's marriage to Elizabeth

207 *nor I will not*] Compare the double negative below, iv iv 496

211 *remorse*] in the common Shakespearean sense of "pity," as *Macbeth*, i, v. 45.

213 *egally*] Nares notes that in Puttenham (?), *Arte of English Poesie*, i 20, the forms "egall" and "equall" occur within a few lines of each other In the same passage "egally" and "unegall" are also employed Shakespeare uses "egal," *Titus Andronicus*, iv iv 4 Mr Craig, among other references, gives one from Surrey in *Tottel's Miscellany*, 1557 (ed Arber, p 27) "The egall frend, no grudge, no strife"

Call them again I am not made of stones,  
 But penetrable to your kind entreaties, 225  
 Albeit against my conscience and my soul

*Re-enter BUCKINGHAM and the rest*

Cousin of Buckingham, and sage, grave men,  
 Since you will buckle fortune on my back,  
 To bear her burthen, whether I will or no,  
 I must have patience to endure the load 230  
 But, if black scandal or foul-fac'd reproach  
 Attend the sequel of your imposition,  
 Your mere enforcement shall acquittance me  
 From all the impure blots and stains thereof,  
 For God doth know, and you may partly see, 235  
 How far I am from the desire of this  
*May* God bless your grace! we see it, and will say it  
*Glou* In saying so, you shall but say the truth  
*Buck* Then I salute you with this royal title—  
 Long live King Richard, England's worthy king! 240  
*All* Amen  
*Buck* To-morrow may it please you to be crown'd?  
*Glou* Even when you please, for you will have it so

224 *Call*] Ff, *Well, call* Qq after *again*] *Exit Catesby* Theobald.  
*stones*] *stone* Pope, Camb 225 *entreaties*] Ff, *intreaties* Qq 1 3, 5 7 aft 226  
*Re enter* ] *Enter* . Ff, omitted Qq 227 *sage*] Ff, *you sage* Qq  
 229 *her*] *the* Qq 3 8 *whether*] *where* F 1, *where* Steevens (conj) 231  
*foul-fac'd*] *soule-fac't* Q 2, *so foule fac't* Qq 3 8, *four fac'd* F 3 235 *doth*  
*know*] Ff, *he knows* Qq 236 *of this*] Ff, *thereof* Qq 239 *royal*]  
 Ff, *kingly* Qq 240 *King*] omitted Qq 1, 2 *worthy*] Ff, *royall* Qq  
 241 *All*] Ff, *Ma* Qq, *May and Cst* Camb 242 *may*] Ff, *will* Qq  
 243 *please, for*] Ff, *will, since* Qq

225 *entreaties*] For other substantives of this kind, compare "suspects," for "suspicious," 1 iii 89 above, "exclaims" for "exclamations," iv iv 135 below, "relent" for "relentment" in Lodge, *Wounds of Civil War*, act 11, "repent" for "repentance" in Greene, *Orlando Furioso* (Dyce, 106)

232 *your imposition*] the charge which you lay upon me Compare *All's Well that Ends Well*, iv iv 29

242 *To morrow*] The interview with the Mayor and citizens took place on 25th June, 1483, the day following Buckingham's ill omened speech at the Guildhall. Richard was crowned eleven days later, on 6th July. His accession was dated from 26th June, when he went publicly to Westminster Hall and there took on him the government of the realm.

*Buck* To-morrow, then, we will attend your grace ,  
 And so most joyfully we take our leave

245

*Glou* Come, let us to our holy work again

Farewell, my cousin , farewell, gentle friends

[*Exeunt*]

245 *And so* *leave*] Ff, omitted Qq      246 *Glou* ] Johnson adds *To*  
*the Clergymen* *work*] Ff, *taske* Qq      247 *my cousin*] Pope, *my Cousins*  
 Ff, *good coosine* Qq

## ACT IV

### SCENE I — *Before the Tower*

*Enter, on one side, QUEEN ELIZABETH, the DUCHESS OF YORK, and the MARQUESS OF DORSET, on the other, ANNE, DUCHESS OF GLOUCESTER, leading LADY MARGARET PLANTAGENET, Clarence's young daughter*

*Duch* Who meets us here? my niece Plantagenet,  
Led in the hand of her kind aunt of Gloucester?  
Now, for my life! she's wandering to the Tower,  
On pure heart's love to greet the tender princes  
Daughter, well met!

*Anne* God give your graces both 5

A happy and a joyful time of day!

*Q Eliz* As much to you, good sister! Whither away?

*Anne* No farther than the Tower, and, as I guess,

*ACT IV SCENE I*] *ACT III SCENE VIII* Rann (Johnson conj) *Before the Tower*] Theobald *Enter daughter*] Malone, Camb (after Theobald), *Enter Quee mother, Duchesse of Yorke, Marques Dorset, at one doore, Duchesse of Glocest at another doore* Qq, *Enter the Queene, Anne Duchesse of Gloucester, the Duchesse of Yorke, and Marquesse Dorset* Ff 1 *Who Plantagenet*] one line as Qq, *Who heere?* My Neece Plantagenet (two lines) Ff 2 6 *Led time of day*] Ff, omitted Qq 4 *princes*] Theobald, *Prince* Ff 5, 6 *God give time of day*] arranged as Pope, Camb, *God give a happye And time of day* Ff 7 *As much away*] Ff, *Sister well met, whether aware so fast* Qq 8 *Anne*] Ff, *Duch* Q 1, *Du* Q 2, *Dut Glo* Qq 3-8

1 *niece*] Compare "cousins," II 11 4 *On pure heart's love*] Compare 8 above, and "niece" in *King John*, *Measure for Measure*, IV 1 37, "on II 1 469 your knowledge", *Antony and Cleo* 2 *in the hand*] Compare *Coriolanus*, *patra*, III vi 57, "on my free v III 23, *Titus Andronicus*, v III 138 will"

Upon the like devotion as yourselves,  
 To gratulate the gentle princes there 10  
*Q Elz* Kind sister, thanks we'll enter all together.

*Enter BRAKENBURY*

And, in good time, here the lieutenant comes  
 Master lieutenant, pray you, by your leave,  
 How doth the prince, and my young son of York?  
*Brak* Right well, dear madam—by your patience, 15  
 I may not suffer you to visit them  
 The king hath strictly charg'd the contrary  
*Q Elz* The king? who's that?  
*Brak* I mean the lord protector  
*Q Elz* The Lord protect him from that kingly title!  
 Hath he set bounds between their love and me? 20  
 I am their mother who shall bar me from them?  
*Duch* I am their father's mother I will see them  
*Anne* Their aunt I am in law, in love their mother  
 Then bring me to their sights, I'll bear thy blame,  
 And take thy office from thee, on my peril 25  
*Brak* No, madam, no, I may not leave it so  
 I am bound by oath, and therefore pardon me [*Exit*

10 gentle] *Ff*, tender *Qq* aft 11 *Enter Brakenbury* ] Capell, Camb, *Enter*  
*Lieutenant* *Qq* 1, 2, *Enter the Lieutenant of the Tower* *Qq* 3-8 14 *How*  
*doth* *York*] *Ff*, *How fares the Prince* *Qq* 15, *How fears the Prince*  
*Q* 6 15 *Brak* ] *Lieu* *Qq*, *Ff* (and lines 18, 26) *Right well*  
*patience*] *Ff*, *Wel Madam, and in health, but by your leave* *Qq* 16 *them*] *Ff*,  
*him* *Qq* 17 *strictly*] *Ff*, *straightlie* *Qq* 18 *who's that*] *Ff*, *where*,  
*whose that* *Qq* 1, 2, *why, who's that* *Qq* 3-7, *why who is that* *Q* 8 *I mean*] *Ff*,  
*I crse you mercie, I means* *Qq* 20 *between*] *Ff*, *betwixt* *Qq* 21  
*shall bar*] *Ff*, *should keepe* *Qq* 22 *Duch* ] *Du* *yor* *Q* 1, *Duch Yorke*  
*Ff*, omitted *Qq* 2-8 *I am their father's mother* ] *Ff*, *I am their Fathers*,  
*Mother, I* *Q* 1, *I am their father, Mother, and* *Qq* 2-8 (*theirs* *Q* 4) 24 *Then*  
*sights*] *Ff*, *Then feare not thou* *Qq* 26, 27 *No, madam* *pardon*  
*me*] *Ff*, *I doe beseech your graces all to pardon me* *I am bound by oath, I may*  
*not doe it* *Qq*. *Exit*] *Exit Lieutenant* *Ff*, omitted *Qq*

9 *Upon the like devotion*] This may mean "from the same impulse of devotion," in which case the use of "upon" is parallel to that of "on," already noticed in line 4. It may also mean "upon the same devout errand", "with the same devout object"

10 *gratulate*] So *Titus Andronicus*, 1 i 221, Lodge and Greene, *Looking-Glass for London* (Dyce, 117) "See where she comes to gratulate my fame"  
 24 *their sights*] Compare *Timon of Athens*, 1 i 255

*Enter LORD STANLEY*

*Stan* Let me but meet you, ladies, one hour hence,  
 And I'll salute your grace of York as mother  
 And reverend looker-on of two fair queens 30  
 [*To Anne*] Come, madam, you must straight to West-  
 minster,

There to be crowned Richard's royal queen

*Q Eliz* Ah! cut my lace asunder,  
 That my pent heart may have some scope to beat,  
 Or else I swoon with this dead-killing news! 35

*Anne* Despiteful tidings! O unpleasing news!

*Dor* Be of good cheer mother, how fares your grace?

*Q Eliz* O Dorset, speak not to me, get thee gone!  
 Death and destruction dog thee at thy heels,  
 Thy mother's name is ominous to children 40  
 If thou wilt outstrip death, go, cross the seas,  
 And live with Richmond, from the reach of hell  
 Go, hie thee, hie thee from this slaughter-house,  
 Lest thou increase the number of the dead,  
 And make me die the thrall of Margaret's curse, 45  
 Nor mother, wife, nor England's counted queen!

*Stan* Full of wise care is this your counsel, madam  
 Take all the swift advantage of the hours

28 one hour] Ff, an hour Qq 1 4, at an hour Qq 5 8 30 reverend] Ff,  
 Q 8, reverent Q 1, reverent Qq 2-7 31 To Anne] Capell, Camb straight]  
 Ff, go with me Qq 33-35 Ah news] arranged as Ff, O heart,  
 May else I sound With newes Qq 33 Ah] Ff, O Qq asunder]  
 Ff, in sunder Qq 35 swoon] Ff, sound Qq dead killing] Ff; dead kill-  
 ing Qq 1 4, dead liking Qq 5-8, dead striking Capell conj 36 Despiteful  
 news] Ff, omitted Qq 37 Be mother] Ff, Madame, have comfort  
 Qq 38 gone] Ff, hence Qq 39 dog] Qq, Ff 3, 4, dogges Ff 1, 2  
 thy heels] Ff, the heeles Qq 41 outstrip] ouerstrip Qq 6 8 42 reach]  
 race Qq 6 8 48 hours] Ff, time Qq

33 cut my lace] See Prof Case's note on *Antony and Cleopatra*, I III 71, and compare *Winter's Tale*, III II 174

35 dead killing] The first part of the compound is merely intensive. In this play, the ordinary type of compound epithet is that of which the first part qualifies the second, and may be expressed as an adverb, e.g., "childish-foolish," I III 142, "deep revolving," IV II 42 "ill-dispersing," in line 52

below, is formed rather exceptionally, for this play. Mr Craig notes the occurrence of the Irishism "kill her dead" in *Midsummer-Night's Dream*, III II 269, and "kill'd me dead" in *Titus Andronicus*, III I 92

48-50 Stanley, of course, is speaking to Dorset "My son" is Richmond, whose mother, Lady Margaret Beaufort, Stanley had married about 1482

You shall have letters from me to my son,  
 In your behalf, to meet you on the way 50  
 Be not ta'en tardy by unwise delay  
*Duch* O ill-dispersing wind of misery!  
 O my accursed womb, the bed of death!  
 A cockatrice hast thou hatch'd to the world,  
 Whose unavoided eye is murderous 55  
*Stan* Come, madam, come, I in all haste was sent.  
*Anne* And I in all unwillingness will go  
 O! would to God that the inclusive verge  
 Of golden metal, that must round my brow,  
 Were red-hot steel, to sear me to the brains! 60  
 Anointed let me be with deadly venom,  
 And die ere men can say, God save the queen!  
*Q Eliz* Go, go, poor soul, I envy not thy glory,  
 To feed my humour, wish thyself no harm  
*Anne* No! why? When he that is my husband now 65  
 Came to me, as I follow'd Henry's corse,  
 When scarce the blood was well wash'd from his hands,  
 Which issued from my other angel husband,  
 And that dear saint which then I weeping follow'd—  
 O! when, I say, I look'd on Richard's face, 70  
 This was my wish "Be thou," quoth I, "accurs'd,

50 *In your way*] Ff, *To meete you on the way, and welcome you* Qq  
 51 *ta'en*] *ta'ne* Ff, *tane* Q 1, *taken* Qq 2-8 52 *ill dispersing*] hyphenated  
 Theobald 56 *Come, madam, come*] Ff, *Come Madam* Qq *sent*] Qq 1, 2,  
 Ff, *sent for* Qq 3 8, *sent for you* Capell (conj.) 57 *Anne*] Ff, *Duch* Qq  
*in all*] Qq, *with all* Ff 58 *O*] Ff, *I* Qq 60 *brains*] Ff, *braine* Qq  
 61 *venom*] Ff, *poyson* Qq 63 *Go, go*] Ff, *Alas* Qq 65 *Anne*] Ff,  
*Duch* Glo Qq *No! why*] Ff, *No* Qq 66 *corse*] Ff, *course* Qq  
 69 *dear*] Ff, *dead* Qq *which*] *whom* Capell (conj.)

54 *cockatrice*] See note on "basilisks," I II 150 above The cockatrice and the basilisk were synonymous in vulgar tradition Compare Chapman, *All Fools*, act III "Is this the cockatrice that kills with sight", *Romeo and Juliet*, III II 47, *Twelfth Night*, III IV 215 Sir Thomas Browne quotes Scaliger on the confusion between the basilisk (a real serpent) and the purely imaginary cockatrice "Basilisci formam mentiti sunt vulgo gallinaceo similem, et pedibus binis," etc

55 *unavoided*] unavoidable Chapman, *All Fools*, act II has "youth and love Were th' unresisted (i.e. irresistible) organs to seduce you", *Eastward Ho*, act IV "this your unbelieved (i.e. incredible) absence" See also note on I II 39 above  
 58 *verge*] Used again of the rim of the crown, *Richard II* II I 102, of a magic circle, *Henry VI* I IV 25

For making me, so young, so old a widow !  
 And, when thou wed'st, let sorrow haunt thy bed,  
 And be thy wife, if any be so mad,  
 More miserable by the life of thee 75  
 Than thou hast made me by my dear lord's death !"  
 Lo, ere I can repeat this curse again,  
 Within so small a time, my woman's heart  
 Grossly grew captive to his honey words,  
 And prov'd the subject of mine own soul's curse, 80  
 Which hitherto hath held mine eyes from rest,  
 For never yet one hour in his bed  
 Did I enjoy the golden dew of sleep,  
 But with his timorous dreams was still awak'd

74 *mad*] Qq 1, 2, Ff, *badde* Qq 3 8 75 *More*] Ff, *As* Qq *life*] Ff,  
*death* Qq 76 *Than*] Ff, *As* Qq 77 *ere*] Ff, *care* Q 1, *even* Qq 2 8  
78 *Within* a time] Ff, *Even in so short a space* Qq 79 *Grossly*] Q 1,  
Ff, *Crossly* Q 2, *Crosly* Qq 3-8 80 *subject*] Qq 1, 8, Ff, *subiectes* Qq  
2-7 (*subjects* Q 3) *mine*] Ff, Qq 7, 8, *my* Qq 1 6 81 *hitherto*] Ff, *ever*  
*since* Qq *held*] Ff, *kept* Qq *mine*] Qq 6 8, Ff, *my* Qq 1 5 *rest*] Ff,  
*sleep* Qq 83 *Did I enjoy*] Ff, *Have I enjoyed* Qq *dew*] *dew* Qq 3-5,  
Ff 1, 2 84 *with his* *awak'd*] Ff, *have bene waked by his timorous*  
*dreames* Qq

74 76 Anne's curse in its original form, I II 26 28 above, is delivered before Gloucester comes on the scene. She there wishes that his wife may be made more miserable by his death than she is made by the deaths of those he has murdered Qq in both passages have "as" as "instead of "more than"—a variation which, on its own merits, is merely a matter of taste Qq also have "death" in both cases, which Ff alter here into "life" (line 75) Ff are clearly right, as the rest of the passage, emphasising the fulfilment of the curse, shows, and probably the editors retained "death" in I II 27 by an oversight. The clause "if any be so mad" (line 74) does not occur in I II, while it is rather curious that two of the later Qq, which here accept the mistaken reading "badde" for "mad," read "mad" for "made" in I II 26.

79 *Grossly*] stupidly, without perception. See note on III VI 10 above "Gross," "grossly," and kindred words, are used by Shakespeare in two derived senses (1) the subjective sense, "without fineness of perception," as

here and in the parallel instance (compare "grossness," III 1 46 above), (2) the objective sense, implying anything which it needs no fineness of perception to recognise, i.e. anything plain and obvious. For the latter use, see *King Lear*, I 1 295. There is also the third and concrete sense, implying size or extent, as *King Lear*, IV VI 14 compare "engross," III VII 76 above *honey*] See note on I III 291 above.

83 *golden dew of sleep*] Mr Craig cites "golden sleep," *Romeo and Juliet*, II III 38, "the honey heavy dew of slumber," *Julius Caesar*, II 1 230, and several passages from other authors. The occurrence of the phrase "golden sleep" in Bacon has been cited on behalf of the Baconian authorship of the plays. Equally improbable traces of Baconian authorship are to be found in Holinshed (ed 1809, II IV 32) "So that he needed now no more for that cause either to wake or to break his *golden sleep*," Fletcher, *Women Pleased*, 1647 "Sweet rest about thee, sweet and *golden sleep*," etc.

Besides, he hates me for my father Warwick, 85  
 And will, no doubt, shortly be rid of me  
*Q Eliz* Poor heart, adieu! I pity thy complaining  
*Anne* No more than with my soul I mourn for yours  
*Dor* Farewell, thou woful welcomer of glory!  
*Anne* Adieu, poor soul, that tak'st thy leave of it! 90  
*Duch* [To Dorset] Go thou to Richmond, and good fortune  
 guide thee!  
 [To Anne] Go thou to Richard, and good angels tend thee!  
 [To *Q Eliz*] Go thou to sanctuary, and good thoughts  
 possess thee!  
 I to my grave, where peace and rest lie with me!  
 Eighty odd years of sorrow have I seen, 95  
 And each hour's joy wrack'd with a week of teen  
*Q Eliz* Stay! yet look back with me unto the Tower  
 Pity, you ancient stones, those tender babes,  
 Whom envy hath immur'd within your walls!  
 Rough cradle for such little pretty ones, 100  
 Rude ragged nurse, old sullen playfellow

86 *no doubt*] *Q* 1, *Ff*, omitted *Qq* 2 8 87 *Poor heart, adieu*] *Ff*, *Alas*  
*poore soule* *Qq* *complaining*] *Ff*, *complaints* *Qq* 88 *with*] *Ff*, *from* *Qq*  
 89 *Dor*] *Q* 1, *Ff*, *Qu* *Qq* 2 8, *Q Eliz* *Camb* 90 *that*] *Ff*, *thou* *Qq*  
 91 *(To Dorset)* Go guide thee] *F* 4, Go to Richmond, to Dorset, to Anne,  
 to the Queene, and good fortune guide thee *F* 2, 3 92 *To Anne*] *F* 4 *tend*]  
*Ff*, *guard* *Qq* 93 *To Q Eliz*] *F* 4, *(Camb)* and good] *Ff*, *good* *Qq*  
 96 *wrack'd*] *F* 4; *wrackt* *Qq*, *Ff* 1 3, *wreck'd* *Camb* 97 103 *Stay*  
*farewell*] *Ff*, omitted *Qq*

85 Richard had fled to the Netherlands with Edward IV when Warwick invaded England in the Lancastrian interest. At Barnet, where Warwick fell, Richard was one of the generals on the winning side.

95 *Eighty odd*] The Duchess of York was born in 1415, and, therefore, was only sixty-eight in 1483. But the tragic pity of the situation is more important than historical accuracy.

96 *teen*] sorrow. Shakespeare uses this old English word again, *Love's Labour's Lost*, IV iii 164, *Romeo and Juliet*, I iii 13, *The Tempest*, I ii 64, etc. It is used several times by Spenser and by poets of his school, e.g. William Browne. Mr. Craig says that the word "is frequent in a book which Shakespeare loved, Golding's

*Ovid*," and has noted at least six instances there.

101 Johnson, with little sympathy for bold metaphor, thought that "nurse" and "playfellow" were harsh epithets for the Tower, and conjectured that the Queen addressed Brakenbury under these titles. Monck Mason attributed them to the Tower, but explained that the words "foolish sorrow" in line 103 were intended as an excuse for them. Malone justly said that Shakespeare "never could intend to apologize for a practice, of which numerous examples are found in his plays, and in which, assuredly, he perceived no impropriety." The epithet "ragged," applied to a mediæval castle like the Tower, is peculiarly appropriate the raggedness

For tender princes, use my babies well!  
So foolish sorrow bids your stones farewell

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II—*London The Palace*

*Sennet Enter RICHARD, in pomp, crowned, BUCKINGHAM, CATESBY, a Page, and others*

*K Rich* Stand all apart! Cousin of Buckingham!

*Buck* My gracious sovereign!

*K Rich* Give me thy hand [*Here he ascendeth the throne*  
Thus high, by thy advice

And thy assistance, is king Richard seated

But shall we wear these glories for a day? 5

Or shall they last, and we rejoice in them?

*Buck* Still live they, and for ever let them last!

*K Rich* Ah, Buckingham, now do I play the touch,  
To try if thou be current gold indeed

Young Edward lives think now what I would speak 10

*Buck* Say on, my loving lord

*K Rich* Why, Buckingham, I say I would be king

103 *sorrow bids*] Rowe, Camb, *Sorrows bids* Ff 1-3, *sorrows bid* F 4

*Scene II*

*London The Palace*] Camb, *The same* A Room of State in the  
Palace Capell, *The Court Pope Sennet*] Camb, *Sound a Sennet* F 1, *Sound*  
*a Sennet* Ff 2-4, *The Trumpets sound* Qq *Enter others*] Camb, *Enter*  
*Richard crown'd, Buckingham, Catesby with other Nobles* Qq, *Enter Richard in*  
*pompe, Buckingham, Catesby, Ratcliffe, Louel* Ff 1 *K Rich*] Camb,  
*Rich* Qq, Ff 2 *Buck sovereign*] Ff, omitted Qq 3, 4 *K Rich*  
*Grove seated*] arranged as Qq (which print *Grove* *advice* as two short  
lines), *Grove* *hand, Thus assistance, Is seated* (three lines) Ff  
3 *Here throne*] Qq, *Sound* Ff 5 *glories*] Ff, *honours* Qq 7 *let*  
*them*] Ff, *may they* Qq 8 *Alk*] Ff, *O* Qq *do I*] Qq 1, 2, Ff, *I do* Qq  
3-8 *play*] ply Warburton 10 *speak*] Ff, *say* Qq 11 *loving lord*] Ff,  
*gracious sovereign* Qq

of the angles of a Norman keep, seen "touch-stone" when employed as  
in profile, strikes every observer building material Nares quotes Jonson,  
Compare 2 *Henry IV* ind 35, and the *The Forest*, 1616, II II —  
metaphor in *King Lear*; III iv 31 "Thou art not, Penshurst, built to  
envious show

*Scene II*

Of touch or marble"

8 *play the touch*] play the part of a  
touch-stone Timon, *Timon of Athens*,  
IV III 390, calls gold the "touch of  
hearts" "Touch" was used for

Lyly, *Euphues* (Arber, 79), has "the  
tree is known by his fruit, the gold  
by his touch, the sonne by the fire,"  
and (p 74) "as the true gold is tryed  
by the touch," etc

*Buck* Why, so you are, my thrice-renowned lord

*K Rich* Ha! am I king? 'tis so but Edward lives

*Buck* True, noble prince

*K Rich* O bitter consequence, 15

That Edward still should live! "True, noble prince!"

Cousin, thou wast not wont to be so dull

Shall I be plain? I wish the bastards dead,

And I would have it suddenly perform'd

What say'st thou now? speak suddenly, be brief 20

*Buck* Your grace may do your pleasure

*K Rich* Tut, tut! thou art all ice, thy kindness freezes

Say, have I thy consent that they shall die?

*Buck* Give me some little breath, some pause, dear lord,

Before I positively speak in this 25

I will resolve you herein presently [Exit

*Cates* [Aside to a stander-by] The king is angry—see, he gnaws his lip

*K Rich* I will converse with iron-witted fools

And unresponsive boys, none are for me

13 lord] Ff, *liege* Qq 14 king] a king Pope 16 live! "True,"  
Camb, *live true* Qq, Ff, *live, True* Rowe, *live—true* Theobald 17 wast]  
Ff, *wert* Qq 20 say'st thou now] Ff, *saist thou* Qq 1-5, *saist thou* Qq 6 8  
22 freezes] Ff, *freezeth* Qq 24 little breath, some pause] Ff, *breath, some*  
*little pause* Qq 16, *breath* Qq 7, 8 dear lord] Ff, *my lord* Qq 25 in  
this] Ff, *herein* Qq 26 you herein presently] Ff, *your grace immediately*  
Qq Exit] Q 1, Exit *Buck* Ff, omitted Qq 2-8 27 Aside  
Capell, Camb, *Aside* Hammer gnaws his] Ff, *bites* the Qq 1-6, *bites*  
his Qq 7, 8 28 *K Rich*] Malone adds *Descends from his throne*

15 consequence] Compare *Romeo and Juliet*, I iv 107

26 resolve you] give you a definite answer, assure you, as 3 *Henry VI* III ii 19

27 gnaws his lip] This personal trait was derived by Holinshed (iii 760) from Polydore Vergil through Halle "When he stood musing, he would bite and chaw busilie his nether lip, as who said, that his fierce nature in his cruell bodie alwaies stirred, chafed, and was euer unquiet." More (ap Holinshed, iii 722) says that, when Richard returned to the council before Hastings' arrest, he was "all changed, with a woonderfull soure angrie countenance, knitting the brows, frowning, and fretting and gnawing his lips"

28 iron-witted] Compare *Romeo and Juliet*, iv v 125, Nash, *Unfortunate Traveller*, 1594 (Gosse, 103)

"onely iron wits are not wonne without a long siege of intreatie"

29 unresponsive] thoughtless, inconsiderate (compare "considerate" in next line) See "respects" III vii 175 above In *Troilus and Cressida*, II ii 71, this epithet is applied by metaphor to a sieve For the antithesis "respective," see *Romeo and Juliet*, III i 128, Hooker, *Ecclesiastical Polity*, v i "wary and respective men", Chapman, *All Fools*, act II —

"The bold and careless servant still obtains,  
The modest and respective nothing gains"

That look into me with considerate eyes 30  
 High-reaching Buckingham grows circumspect.  
 Boy!

*Page* My lord?

*K Rich* Know'st thou not any whom corrupting gold  
 Will tempt unto a close exploit of death? 35

*Page* I know a discontented gentleman,  
 Whose humble means match not his haughty spirit  
 Gold were as good as twenty orators,  
 And will, no doubt, tempt him to anything

*K Rich* What is his name?

*Page* His name, my lord, is Tyrrel 40

*K Rich* I partly know the man go, call him hither  
 [*Exit Page*]

The deep-revolving witty Buckingham  
 No more shall be the neighbour to my counsels

31 33 *High reaching* lord] Ff, Boy, *high reaching* circumspect  
 Boy My Lord Qq 1-7, Boy *High reaching* circumspect Boy My  
 Lord Q 8 35 Will] Ff, Would Qq 36 I] Ff, My lord, I Qq 37  
 spirit] Ff, mind Qq 41 hither [*Exit Page*] Camb, hither [*Exit Boy*]  
 Pope, hither, Boy *Exit* Ff, hither presentie Qq 42 deep revolving]  
 hyphenated Pope 43 counsels] Ff, counsell Qq

31 *High-reaching*] For the idea involved compare *Two Gentlemen of Verona*, III 1 156 Mr Craig refers to 2 *Henry VI* III 1 158, and *Pericles*, II 11 20

36 The conversation with the page, in More's account, took place at Warwick, during Richard's journey to Gloucester after his coronation. He had sent his servant John Greene to Brakenbury, and Brakenbury had refused to kill the children. In his impatience, Richard complained to "a secret page of his" that he could trust nobody "Sir" (quoth his page) 'there lieth one on your pallet without, that I dare well saie, to doo your grace pleasure, the thing were right hard that he would refuse'. Meaning this by Sir James Tirrell, which was a man of right goodlie personage, and for natures gifts worthe to haue serued a much better prince, if he had well serued God, and by grace obtained as much truth and good will as he had strength and wit. The man had an

high heart, & sore longed vpward, not rising yet so fast as he had hoped, being hindered & kept vnder by the meanes of Sir Richard Ratcliffe, and Sir William Catesbie, which kept him by secret drifts out of all secret trust." The page, being Tyrrel's special friend, took this opportunity to advance him. The king obeyed the hint, broke the business immediately to Tyrrel, and "found him nothing strange" in the matter. One weak point in this story is its implications as to Richard's unfamiliarity with Tyrrel. Gairdner shows (pp 23, 24, 121) that Tyrrel had been used in offices of trust by Richard at a much earlier date.

42 *deep revolving*] deeply pondering. For "revolving" compare *Cymbeline*, III 11 14 witty] cunning, as *Much Ado About Nothing*, IV 11 27, Tourneur, *Revenger's Tragedy*, act v. "'Twas somewhat witty carried, tho' we say it"

Hath he so long held out with me untir'd,  
And stops he now for breath? Well, be it so! 45

*Enter STANLEY*

How now, Lord Stanley, what's the news?

*Stan* Know, my loving lord,

The Marquess Dorset, as I hear, is fled  
To Richmond, in the parts where he abides

*[Stands apart*

*K Rich* Come hither, Catesby! rumour it abroad 50

That Anne my wife is very grievous sick  
I will take order for her keeping close  
Inquire me out some mean poor gentleman,  
Whom I will marry straight to Clarence' daughter  
The boy is foolish, and I fear not him 55  
Look, how thou dream'st! I say again, give out  
That Anne, my queen, is sick and like to die  
About it! for it stands me much upon

45 *Well, be it so!* Ff, omitted Qq      aft 45 *Enter Stanley* ] Ff, *Enter*  
*Darby* Qq      46 *How now*      *news*] Ff, *How now, what newes with you*  
Qq      47 49 *Know*      *abides*] arranged as Craig, *Know*      *Dorset As*  
*Richmond, In*      *abides* Ff, *My Lord, I heare the Marques Dorset Is*  
*fled to Richmond, in those partes beyond the seas where he abides* Qq, *My lord,*  
*I hear*      *fled To Richmond*      *sea Where he abides* Camb      50 *Come*  
*abroad*] Ff, *Catesby*      *Cat My lord King Rumor it abroad* Qq      51  
*very grievous sick*] Ff, *sicke and like to die* Qq      53 *poor*] Ff, *borne* Qq  
57 *queen*] Ff, *wife* Qq

47-50 Spedding suggested the existence of interlinear alterations in the MS, which may have misled the printer of F 1. If Ff represent a return to an original version of the play, Qq reading may be the result of an effort to improve the defective metre of that original. This latter reading, however, was evidently disarranged in printing the Cambridge reading, perhaps, represents the real intention of the reviser. The call for Catesby and the answer which follows, corresponding in Qq to line 50, are probably stage amplifications of the original text.

51 Halle and Holinshed (in 751) say that Richard ordered the queen's death to be reported, "to the intent that she, taking some conceit of this strange fame, should fall into some

sudden sicknesse or greeuous maladie and to prooue, if afterwards she should fortune by that or anie other waies to lease her life, whether the people would impute hir death to the thought or sicknesse, or thereof would laie the blame to him." When this report came to Anne's ears, she sought an interview with Richard, and was answered with fair words. But "howsoever that it fortun'd, either by inward thought and pensiuenesse of hart, or by infection of poison (which is affirmed to be most likeliest), within few daies after the queene departed out of this transitorie life" Anne's death really happened on 16th March, 1485.

58 *it stands me much upon*] it concerns me, depends upon me, greatly Compare *Antony and Cleopatra*, II 1 50, 51, Milton, *Of Prelat Episcopacy*,

To stop all hopes whose growth may damage me

[*Exit Catesby*

I must be married to my brother's daughter, 60

O! else my kingdom stands on brittle glass

Murder her brothers, and then marry her!

Uncertain way of gain! But I am in

So far in blood that sin will pluck on sin

Tear-falling pity dwells not in this eye 65

*Re-enter Page with TYRREL*

Is thy name Tyrrel?

*Tyr* James Tyrrel, and your most obedient subject

*K Rich* Art thou indeed?

*Tyr* Prove me, my gracious lord

*K Rich* Dar'st thou resolve to kill a friend of mine?

*Tyr* Please you, but I had rather kill two enemies 70

*K Rich* Why, there thou hast it, two deep enemies,

Foes to my rest and my sweet sleep's disturbers

Are they that I would have thee deal upon

Tyrrel, I mean those bastards in the Tower

*Tyr* Let me have open means to come to them, 75

And soon I'll rid you from the fear of them

*K Rich* Thou sing'st sweet music Hark! come hither, Tyrrel!

59 *Exit Catesby*] Capell 64 *will pluck*] Q 1, Ff, *plucke* Qq 2-5, *plucks* Qq 6-8 65 *Tear-falling*] Ff, *Teare falling* Qq 1-5, *Teares falling* Qq 6-8  
aft 65 *Re-enter* ] Capell, *Enter Tyrrel* Qq, *Enter Tyrrel* Ff 68 *indeed?*] Pope adds *He takes him aside* lord] Ff, *soueraigne* Qq 70  
*Please you*] Ff, *I my lord* Qq *two*] Q 1, Ff, *two deepe* Qq 2-8 71 *there*] Qq, then Ff 72 *disturbers*] Ff, *disturbs* Qq 77 *Thou sing'st*  
*Tyrrel*] one line as Qq, *Thou sing'st sweet Musique* Hearke *Tyrrel* (two lines) Ff *Hark*] Ff, omitted Qq

1641 "*it stood them much upon* long ere this to uphold their now well tasted hierarchy" See also Lyly, *Euphuus*, 1579 (Arber, 94) "if thy reuenge stand onely upon thy wish, thou shalt neuer lue to see my woe", and Mr Craig refers to Golding's *Cæsar*, 1565 "Cæsar thought that *it stood him upon* to be ware"

64 *pluck on*] draw on, as *Measure for Measure*, II iv 147, etc

65 *Tear-falling*] that lets fall tears For the transitive use of "fall," compare Ff stage direction at I ii 182 above, "She fals the sword" As to

Richard's description of his temperament, see note on I ii 157 above

70 *two enemies*] The reading of Q 2 and its successors is an obvious printer's error The epithet "deepe" has been taken up from the next line and repeated to the detriment of sense and metre

72 *disturbers*] Qq "disturbs" is a substantive of the formation noticed at III vii 225 above *New Eng Dict* quotes Daniel, *Civil Wars*, 1601 2 vi st 47 "From all disturbs to be so long kept free"

77, *Thou sing'st sweet music*] Aldis

Go, by this token rise, and lend thine ear [ *Whispers*  
 There is no more but so say it is done,  
 And I will love thee, and prefer thee for it 80  
*Tyr* I will despatch it straight [*Exit*

*Re-enters* BUCKINGHAM

*Buck* My lord, I have considered in my mind  
 The late request that you did sound me in  
*K Rich* Well, let that rest Dorset is fled to Richmond  
*Buck* I hear the news, my lord 85  
*K Rich* Stanley, he is your wife's son, well, look to it.  
*Buck* My lord, I claim the gift, my due by promise,  
 For which your honour and your faith is pawn'd—  
 The earldom of Hereford and the moveables,  
 Which you have promised I shall possess 90  
*K Rich* Stanley, look to your wife ' if she convey .  
 Letters to Richmond, you shall answer it  
*Buck* What says your highness to my just request?  
*K Rich* I do remember me, Henry the sixth  
 Did prophesy that Richmond should be king, 95  
 When Richmond was a little peevish boy  
 A king ' perhaps, perhaps,—

78 *this*] Ff, *that* Qq *Whispers*] Ff, *He whispers in his ears* Qq  
 79. *There is*] Ff, *Tis* Qq *it is*] Qq 3-5, Ff, *is it* Qq 1, 2, 6-8 81  
*I straight*] Ff, *Tis done my gracious lord King Shall we heare from thee*  
*Turrel ere we sleep* Enter *Buc* *Tyr* *Ye shall my lord* Qq (*Yea, my good lord*  
 Qq 6 8) *Exit*] Ff, omitted Qq aft 81 *Re-enters Buckingham*] Camb,  
 Enter *Buckingham* Ff, Enter *Buc* Qq (see preceding note) 83 *request*]  
 Ff, demand Qq 84 *rest*] Ff, *pass* Qq 85 *the news*] Ff, *that news*  
 Qq 86 *son*] *sonnes* Qq 1-3 *to it*] Qq, *unto it* Ff 87 *the gift*] Ff, *your*  
*gift* Qq 89 *Hereford*] *Herford* Qq 1-3, 5 8, *Herford* Q 4, *Hertford* Ff 90  
*Which you have promised*] Ff, *The which you promised* Qq *shall*] Ff,  
*should* Qq 93 *request*] Ff, demand Qq 94 *I do remember me*] Ff,  
*As I remember* Qq 97 *perhaps, perhaps*—] Camb, *perhaps perhaps*. Qq  
 1 3, 5, 6, 8, *perhaps*, Q 4, *perhaps, perhaps*, Q 7, *perhaps* Ff

Wright, in a note on I 1 27, alludes to Richard's well-known love of music. Various allusions scattered through the play, as in this passage, may have a reference to this love, but there is no authority for it in the chief sources from which Shakespeare derived his knowledge.

79 *no more but so*] So Chapman (?),

*Alphonsus*, act II " nay, tell her more than so "

89, 90 See III 1 195 above, and note. The "moveables" are the appurtenances of the earldom not attached to the soil. See *Richard II* II 1 161, *Taming of the Shrew*, II 1 198, Fletcher and Massinger, *Spanish Curate*, IV 5 "My sheep and oxen, and my moveables."

*Buck* My lord !

*K Rich* How chance the prophet could not at that time

Have told me, I being by, that I should kill him ? 100

*Buck* My lord, your promise for the earldom,—

*K Rich* Richmond ! When last I was at Exeter,

The mayor in courtesy show'd me the castle,

And call'd it Rougemont, at which name I started,

98 115 *My lord to day*] Qq, omitted Ff 98 *My lord*] Lord Qq 3, 4  
104 *Rougemont*] *Ruge mount* Qq

98-115 The reason for the omission of these lines from Ff is obscure. That it was deliberate appears probable from the alteration in the Ff version of line 116, which has been retained here. On the other hand, Ff reading may be equally well the original form of line 116, afterwards altered to suit the purpose of Qq. Spedding, while classing this among the alterations in F 1 not intended by Shakespeare, leans noticeably to the conclusion that it may have been due to Shakespeare's feeling that the action was delayed by the intermediate matter. No such feeling, however, seems to have crossed Shakespeare's or his editors' mind, when the long rhetorical speeches in iv iv, serious impediments to the action, were retained in F 1. Mr Daniel can account for the omission only on the supposition that the passage was a theatrical insertion, not in the original draught of the play, introduced for the benefit of the chief actor, and so struck out by the editor in the Q from which F 1 was prepared. He further accounts for the omission by Ff of the second "perhaps" in line 97, by suggesting that the word was struck out by accident, when the editor of F 1 drew his line through the succeeding passage. Pickersgill suggests that the metre of lines 107-112 may have proved a bar to the smoothing hand of the editor of F 1. It is also possible that the editor of F 1, for some reason which we can only conjecture, decided to omit the passage, even though it was original perhaps he felt it to be irrelevant, or thought the double play on words which it contains far-fetched. Even if the passage is a later insertion, at any

rate the resort which its author made to Shakespeare's own historical sources, and his selection of this striking anecdote, make it highly probable that the author who inserted it was Shakespeare himself.

102-106 This anecdote, "interlaced" into Holinshed's text by his posthumous editors, came from John Hooker or Vowell, the chamberlain and historian of Exeter. Richard paid a visit to Exeter in November, 1483, after the failure of Buckingham's rebellion and Richmond's first expedition, and was received by the mayor. "He came to the castell, and, when he understood that it was called Rougemont, suddenlie he fell into a dumepe, and (as one astonished) said 'Well, I see my daies be not long,'" etc (Holinshed, iii 746).

104 *Rougemont*] The castle of Exeter, the building of which was ordered by William I after the taking of the city in 1067, and committed by him to Baldwin of Brionne. The name comes from the natural formation of the site, "rubeus mons extra portam aquilonarem civitatis Exonie." Richmond was the name given to the castle built by Alan of Brittany at the mouth of Swaledale after 1072, and either was derived from a castle of Richemont in Brittany, or was a gallicised form of the English *Rices-munt* (hill of sove reignty). The vast Earldom of Richmond was vested in Henry VII. his title, derived from his Yorkshire estates, merely lent its name to the Surrey Richmond when Shene Palace became his favourite residence. The popular pronunciation of "Rougemont" and "Richmond" may have been so nearly alike as to make the play on the words tolerable.

Because a bard of Ireland told me once, 105  
I should not live long after I saw Richmond

*Buck* My lord!

*K Rich* Ay, what's o'clock?

*Buck* I am thus bold to put your grace in mind  
Of what you promis'd me

*K Rich* Well, but what's o'clock? 110

*Buck* Upon the stroke of ten

*K Rich* Well, let it strike

*Buck* Why let it strike?

*K Rich* Because that, like a Jack, thou keep'st the stroke  
Betwixt thy begging and my meditation

I am not in the giving vein to-day 115

*Buck* May it please you to resolve me in my suit?

*K Rich* Thou troublest me, I am not in the vein

[*Exeunt all but Buckingham*]

*Buck* And is it thus? repays he my deep service

With such contempt? made I him king for this?

O, let me think on Hastings, and be gone 120

To Brecknock, while my fearful head is on!

[*Exit*]

110 *Well*] omitted Pope 116 *May . suit*] *Ff*, *Whie then resolve me*  
*whether you wil or no Qq* 117 *Thou*] *Ff*, *Tut, tut, thou Qq* *Exeunt*  
] *Camb.*, *Exit Qq*, *Ff* *Exeunt Richard and train Capell* 118 *And*  
*. repays*] *Ff*, *Is it even so, rewards* (*rewardst Q 1*) *Qq* *deep*] *Ff*, *true*  
*Qq* 119 *such*] *Ff*, *such deepe Qq*

105 *a bard of Ireland*] There is no authority for this description in Holinshed

113 *Jack*] The Jack of the clock was the figure which struck the hours on the bell of an old clock. Compare *Richard II* v v 60. Steevens quotes Decker, *Lanthorne and Candle Light* "The *Jacke* of a Clocke-house goes uppon Screws, and his office is to do nothing but strike," and *Guls Horn Booke*, where the Jacks of the clock in old St. Paul's are mentioned. *New Eng Dict* quotes from the accounts of St. Lawrence's Church, Reading, in 1498-9 "It payed for the setting of Jak with the hangyng of his bell and mending his hond, myd" Two wooden Jacks in armour strike the quarters on the clock which is now in

the north transept of York Minster. A sitting Jack, locally known as Jack Blandiver, strikes the quarters with his heels on the bell of the clock, once in Glastonbury Abbey, now in the north transept of Wells Cathedral. Other examples are at Southwold and Blythburgh in Suffolk at Rye in Sussex two gilded cherubs perform the office of Jacks. The expression probably is connected with the rather slighting use of the name, alluded to at i iii 53 above. Richard likens Buckingham's hesitation to a Jack suspending his stroke on the clock-bell, and bids him strike at once

121 *Brecknock*] The lordship of Brecon, and the castle founded by Bernard of Neufmarché about 1092, came through the Braoses to the

SCENE III — *The same**Enter* TYRREL

*Tyr* The tyrannous and bloody act is done,  
 The most arch deed of piteous massacre  
 That ever yet this land was guilty of  
 Dighton and Forrest, whom I did suborn  
 To do this piece of ruthless butchery, 5  
 Albeit they were flesh'd villains, bloody dogs,  
 Melted with tenderness and mild compassion,  
 Wept like to children in their deaths' sad story  
 "O! thus," quoth Dighton, "lay the gentle babes "  
 "Thus, thus," quoth Forrest, "girdling one another 10  
 Within their alabaster innocent arms

SCENE III.] Pope, omitted Ff      *The same*] Capell, Camb      *Enter Tyrrel*]  
 Ff, *Enter Sir Francis Tyrrell* Qq 1 act] Ff, *deed* Qq 2 *arch deed*] Ff,  
*arch act* Qq 1-6, *arch acts* Q 7, *arch act* Q 8 4 *whom*] who F 1 5  
*piece of ruthless*] Pope, *ruthless peece of* Qq 1, 2, *ruthfull peece of* Qq 3-8,  
*peece of ruthfull* Ff 6 *Albeit*] Ff, *Although* Qq 7 *Melted*] Ff, *Melting*  
 Qq *mild*] Ff, *kild* Qq 1-5, omitted Qq 6 8 8 *like to*] Ff, *like two* Qq  
*deaths*] Theobald, *deaths* Qq, Ff *story*] Ff, *stories* Qq 9 *O! thus*] Ff,  
*Lo thus* Qq *the gentle*] Ff, *those tender* Qq 1-5, *these tender* Qq 6-8 10  
*one*] on Qq 1, 2 11 *alabaster innocent*] F 4, *Alabaster innocent* Ff 1-3,  
*innocent alabaster* Qq 1-7, *innocent alabaster* Q 8

Bohuns, Earls of Hereford, from whom it passed by marriage to Thomas of Woodstock, son of Edward III, and so to the house of Stafford See note on III 1 195 above

2 *arch deed*] Compare *Othello*, IV 1 71, where Ff have the hyphen, apparently rejected in the present case So "arch enemy (3 *Henry VI* II II 2) and "arch-villain" (*Measure for Measure*, V 1 57) are hyphenated in Ff

4 More tells us that Dighton, "a big, broad, square, and strong knave," was Tyrrel's "horsekeeper" Forrest, "a fellow fleshed (see below) in murder before his time," was one of the warders of the Princes in the Tower

6 *flesh'd*] Hounds were said to be fleshed when they ate of the first game which they killed So Fletcher and Massinger, *Elder Brother*, IV 3, of one using a sword for the first time "This is my grief, I shall be *flesh'd* on cowards" Compare *King John*, V 1 71. The word is also applied, at any

rate in the eighteenth century, without distinction, to the custom of giving the hounds a portion of the killed game, as in Smollett, *Peregrine Pickle*, 1751, chapter viii. Metaphorically, it is used of one who has tasted slaughter and is become accustomed to it Compare *Henry V* III III 11 Fletcher and Massinger, *Spanish Curate*, IV 2, use the word in the transferred sense of a hardened knave —

"Tush, he's *flesh'd*,  
 And knows what vein to strike for  
 his own credit"

11 *alabaster*] The form in most of the early editions, "alabaster," is a very common corruption For the various spellings current in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, see the extracts from the Nottingham Records, etc., in W H St John Hope, *On the Early Working of Alabaster in England* (*Archæol Journal*, LXI, 1904, 221-40) In Leland's *Itinerary* and Holland's version of Camden's *Britannia*, "ala

Their lips were four red roses on a stalk,  
 And in their summer beauty kiss'd each other  
 A book of prayers on their pillow lay,  
 Which once," quoth Forrest, "almost chang'd my mind, 15  
 But O! the devil!"—there the villain stopp'd,  
 Whilst Dighton thus told on "We smothered  
 The most replenished sweet work of nature  
 That from the prime creation e'er she fram'd"  
 Hence both are gone with conscience and remorse 20  
 They could not speak, and so I left them both,  
 To bear this tidings to the bloody king  
 And here he comes

*Enter KING RICHARD*

All health, my sovereign lord!

*K Rich* Kind Tyrrel, am I happy in thy news?

*Tyr* If to have done the thing you gave in charge 25

Beget your happiness, be happy then,  
 For it is done

*K Rich* But didst thou see them dead?

*Tyr* I did, my lord

*K Rich* And buried, gentle Tyrrel?

*Tyr* The chaplain of the Tower hath buried them,

But where, to say the truth, I do not know 30

12 were four] Q 1, Ff, four Q 2, like four Qq 3 8 13 And in] Ff 1, 2,  
 And Ff 3, 4, Which in Qq 1-5, When in Qq 6 8 15 once] Qq, one Ff  
 16 devil!—there] devil—there Rowe, diuell their Q 1, diuel, their Q 2,  
 diuel there Qq 3, 4, diuell there Qq 5 8, Diuell, there Ff 17 Whilst]  
 Qq, When Ff 19 e'er she] Ff, euer he Qq 20 Hence remorse]  
 Ff, Thus remorse Qq 1, 2, omitted Qq 3 8 22 bear] Ff, bring Qq  
 23 Enter ] Camb, after 22 Qq, Ff health] Ff, hail Qq lord] Ff,  
 lege Qq 25 gave] give Qq 1, 2 27 done] Ff, done my Lord Qq 30  
 where truth] Ff, how or in what place Qq

baster" is the form used Leland, 1  
 fol 42 (ed Hearne, 1710 12, 1 40), men-  
 tions a popular corruption current in  
 the Isle of Axholme "The upper part  
 of the Isle hath plentiful Quarres of  
 Alabaster, communely there caullid  
 Plaster" The same form is appaent  
 in the term "plaster of Paris"

18 replenished sweet] The first epi-  
 thet qualifies the second, and the two

might be hyphenated together "Re-  
 plenish'd," in the sense of "complete,  
 fully furnished," occurs in *Winter's  
 Tale*, II 1 79

30 where, to say the truth] Shake-  
 speare departs from his authority, which  
 expressly says that Tyrrel ordered the  
 murderers "to burie them at the stare  
 foot, meethe deepe in the ground, vnder  
 a great heape of stones."

*K Rich* Come to me, Tyrrel, soon, at after-supper,  
 When thou shalt tell the process of their death  
 Meantime, but think how I may do thee good,  
 And be inheritor of thy desire  
 Farewell till then

*Tyr.* I humbly take my leave 35

[*Exit Tyrrel*]

*K Rich* The son of Clarence have I pent up close,  
 His daughter meanly have I match'd in marriage,  
 The sons of Edward sleep in Abraham's bosom,  
 And Anne my wife hath bid this world good night  
 Now, for I know the Breton Richmond aims 40  
 At young Elizabeth, my brother's daughter,  
 And, by that knot, looks proudly on the crown,  
 To her go I, a jolly thriving wooer

31 *K Rich* ] *King* Qq 3-8, *Rich* Ff, *Tyr* Qq 1, 2 soon, at] *soone at* Qq 1-6, *soone*, and Ff, *soone* Qq 7, 8, *soon*, *soon* Rowe after supper] hyphenated Staunton, Craig 32 *When* Ff, *And* Qq thou shalt] thou there shalt Ff 2-4 35 *then*] Ff, *soone* Qq *Tyr* I leave] Ff 1, *Tyr* I humbly take leave Ff 2-4, omitted Qq *Exit Tyrrel*] Qq, omitted Ff 36 *K Rich* ] *Rich* Ff, omitted Qq 39 *this world*] Ff, *the world* Qq good night] *godnight* Qq 1, 2 40 *Breton*] *Capell*, *Brittayne* Qq, *Britaine* Ff 1, 2, *Brittain* F 3, *Britain* F 4, *Briton* Rowe 42 *on*] Ff, *ore* Qq 43 *go I*] Ff, *I go* Qq

31 *soon, at after supper*] Probably Ff reading, which makes no great sense, is founded on a misunderstanding of the phrase. The comma after "soon," which Mr Craig inserts in his "Little Quarto" edition, makes the meaning clear. For "after supper," the "re-supper" or dessert taken after supper and served in another room, see Mr Cunningham's note on *Midsummer-Night's Dream*, v 1 34. In that case, where the meaning is unmistakable, the Cambridge editors allow the hyphen. Here they read "soon at after supper" within commas. "Soon at night" commonly means "this very night," as *Othello*, III iv 198. "Soon at supper time" occurs in *Comedy of Errors*, III ii 179, and "soon at supper" in *Merchant of Venice*, II iii 5. This reading presumes either (1) that "at after" is a preposition meaning "after," as in Chaucer, *Canterbury Tales*, B 1455, etc., or (2) that "soon at" = "soon," which seems improbable.

34 *inheritor*] possessor. Compare "inherit," *Richard II* 1 1 85, *The Tempest*, IV 1 154, etc.

40 *Breton*] Richmond was in exile in Brittany, and was welcome, Richard implies, to his place of retreat.

42 *by that knot*] i.e. by virtue of that proposed alliance. The marriage of Richmond and Elizabeth had been arranged at Brecon by Buckingham and the Bishop of Ely, during Ely's semi captivity there. It was communicated to the Countess of Richmond by means of her confidential secretary Reginald Bray, and by her, through her physician Lewis, to the Queen-Dowager. Richmond accepted the proposition, and swore at Rennes on Christmas Day, 1483, to observe this necessary condition of his enterprise. It was not till 1485 that the rumour of Richard III's intention to marry Elizabeth was spread abroad (Boswell Stone, *Shakspeare's Holmshed*, p 388).

*Enter CATESBY**Cates* My lord!*K Rich* Good or bad news, that thou com'st in so bluntly? 45*Cates* Bad news, my lord Morton is fled to Richmond,  
And Buckingham, back'd with the hardy Welshmen,  
Is in the field, and still his power increaseth*K Rich* Ely with Richmond troubles me more near  
Than Buckingham and his rash-levied strength 50  
Come, I have learn'd that fearful commenting  
Is leaden servitor to dull delay,  
Delay leads impotent and snail-pac'd beggary  
Then fiery expedition be my wing,  
Jove's Mercury, and herald for a king! 55  
Go, muster men! my counsel is my shield,  
We must be brief, when traitors brave the field [*Exeunt*SCENE IV—*Before the Palace**Enter QUEEN MARGARET**Q Mar* So! now prosperity begins to mellow  
And drop into the rotten mouth of death  
Here in these confines shily have I lurk'd,

aft 43 *Enter Catesby*] *Qq*, *Enter Ratchiffe* *Ff* 44 *Cates*] *Cate* *Qq*,  
*Rat* *Ff* (and 46) 45 *or bad news*] *Ff*, *newes or bad* *Qq* 46 *Morton*] *Mourton* *Ff*, *Ely* *Qq* 50 *rash-levied*] hyphened *Pope* *strength*] *Ff*,  
*army* *Qq* 51 *learn'd*] *Ff*, *heard* *Qq* 55 *Jove's*] *Ioues* *Qq* 1, 2, *Ff*,  
*Ioue*, *Qq* 3, 5-8, *Loue*, *Q* 4 56 *Go*] *Ff*, *Come* *Qq*

*Scene IV**SCENE IV*] *Scena Tertia* *Ff* *Before the Palace*] *Capell* *Enter Queen Margaret*] *Enter Queene Margaret sola* *Qq*, *Enter old Queene Margaret* *Ff*

46 The Bishop of Ely escaped secretly from Brecon, "and came to his see of Ely, where he found monie and friends, and so sailed into Flanders" For Buckingham's expedition and its fate, see the end of the next scene

50 *rash levied*] hastily raised Compare *King John*, II 1 67

55 *Jove's Mercury*] "Fiery expedition" is to herald Richard's entry into the field, and be the Mercury to his Jove The second half of the line explains the allusion Theobald wished to read "Jove's Mercury's an herald for a king"

57 *brave the field*] boastfully dispute the field Compare *King John*, IV II 243, *ibid* V 1 70 Schmidt hesitates between this sense and that of "make fine, splendid," which is the sense at V III 280 below

*Scene IV*

1, 2 Steevens quotes what is probably a reminiscence of this passage from Marston, *Antony and Melinda*, 1602 —

"now is his fate grown mellow,  
Instant to fall into the rotten jaws  
Of chap-fall'n death"

To watch the waning of mine enemies  
 A dire induction am I witness to, 5  
 And will to France, hoping the consequence  
 Will prove as bitter, black, and tragical  
 Withdraw thee, wretched Margaret! who comes here?

*Enter QUEEN ELIZABETH and the DUCHESS OF YORK*

*Q Elis* Ah! my poor princes! ah! my tender babes!  
 My unblown flowers, new-appearing sweets! 10  
 If yet your gentle souls fly in the air,  
 And be not fix'd in doom perpetual,  
 Hover about me with your airy wings,  
 And hear your mother's lamentation!

*Q Mar* Hover about her! say, that right for right 15  
 Hath dimm'd your infant morn to aged night!

*Duch* So many miseries have craz'd my voice,  
 That my woe-wearied tongue is still and mute  
 Edward Plantagenet, why art thou dead?

*Q Mar* Plantagenet doth quit Plantagenet, 20  
 Edward for Edward pays a dying debt

*Q Elis* Wilt thou, O God, fly from such gentle lambs,  
 And throw them in the entrails of the wolf?  
 When didst thou sleep, when such a deed was done?

*Q Mar* When holy Harry died, and my sweet son 25

<sup>4</sup> *enemies*] Ff, *aduersaries* Qq <sup>9</sup> *poor*] Ff, *young* Qq <sup>10</sup> *unblown*] *unblown* F 1 *flowers*] *flower* Qq 6 8 *new appearing*] hyphened Pope 13 *about*] *about* Qq 6-8 <sup>15</sup> *right for right*] *wrong for wrong* Warburton 17-19 *Duch* So *dead*] as Ff, inserted after 34 in Qq <sup>18</sup> *still and* *mute*] Ff, *mute and dumbe* Qq <sup>20, 21</sup> *Q Mar Plantagenet debt*] Ff, omitted Qq <sup>24</sup> *When*] *Why* Ff 2-4 <sup>25</sup> *Harry*] Qq 1, 2, F 1, *Henry* Ff 2-4, *Mary* Qq 3-8

6 As a matter of fact, Margaret's departure to France took place in 1476, after which time she never returned to England

<sup>15</sup> *right for right*] Johnson explains, "justice answering to justice" Heaven has given the house of York its just revenge for the atrocities which the house of Lancaster has committed on it, and now the sins of the house of York are to be visited upon its own head

<sup>17</sup> *craz'd*] broken, cracked, as Chaucer, *Canterbury Tales*, G 934

"I am right siker that the pot was *crazed*", Milton, *Paradise Lost*, and ed 1674, xii 210 —

"God looking forth will trouble all his host

And *craze* their chariot wheels"  
 Mr Craig quotes a parallel from *Comedy of Errors*, v 1 307-10 See note on "care craz'd," III vii 184 above

*Duch* Dead life, blind sight, poor mortal living ghost,  
 Woe's scene, world's shame, grave's due by life usurp'd,  
 Brief abstract and record of tedious days,  
 Rest thy unrest on England's lawful earth, [*Sitting down*  
 Unlawfully made drunk with innocent blood! 30

*Q Eliz* Ah, that thou wouldst as soon afford a grave,  
 As thou canst yield a melancholy seat!  
 Then would I hide my bones, not rest them here  
 Ah! who hath any cause to mourn but we?

[*Sitting down by her*

*Q Mar* If ancient sorrow be most reverend, 35  
 Give mine the benefit of seniority,  
 And let my griefs frown on the upper hand  
 If sorrow can admit society, [*Sitting down with them*  
 Tell o'er your woes again by viewing mine  
 I had an Edward, till a Richard kill'd him, 40  
 I had a Henry, till a Richard kill'd him

26 *Dead life, blind sight*] Ff, *Blind sight, dead life* Qq 28 *Brief*  
*days*] Ff, omitted Qq 29 *thy*] *they* Q 5, *thir* Qq 6-8 *Sitting down*  
*Camb*, *Sitting down on it* Capell 30 *Unlawfully*] *Unlawfull* Qq 6, 7  
*innocent*] Ff, *innocents* Qq 31 *Ah*] Ff, O Qq *as soon*] Ff, *as well* Qq  
34 *Ah*] Ff, O Qq *we*] Ff, I Qq *Sitting down by her*] *Camb*, *Throw-*  
*ing herself down upon the earth* Hanmer (at 31) 35 *If ancient*] *If any ancient*  
Pope *reverend*] *reuerent* Qq, Ff 36 *seniory*] *signorie* Qq 1-5, *signoria*  
Qq 6, 7, *signeure* F 1, *signiory* Q 8, *signeury* Ff 24, *seigneurie* Rowe,  
*seniory* Pope. 37 *griefs*] Ff, *woes* Qq *hand*] Warburton, *hand*, Qq,  
*hand* Ff 38 *Sitting down with them*] *Camb*, *joining, and taking seat*  
*between them* Capell 39 *Tell* *mine*] Qq, omitted Ff *o'er*]  
Warburton, *ouer* Qq 41 *I had a Henry*] Rann (Capell conj), Craig, *I*  
*had a Harry* Camb., *I had a Richard* Qq, *I had a Husband* Ff

26-30 Pope put this speech of strained paradoxes into his margin. No doubt, in writing Constance's lamentations in *King John*, III 1, Shakespeare remembered this earlier and more stilted attempt

28 *Brief abstract*] Compare *Hamlet*, II. II 548, 549

31 *thou*] Elizabeth addresses the earth. The transition is rather abrupt

36 *seniory*] This is the spelling adopted by most modern editions. The word, in the present passage, implies both superior age (line 35) and superior cause for sorrow (line 37)

40-46 Margaret makes her sorrows common with those of her Yorkist

rivals. Richard has murdered, not only Prince Edward and Henry VI, but also his own nephews, Edward V and Richard of York. The Duchess retorts by reminding Margaret of her responsibility for the deaths of York and Rutland at Wakefield. Margaret answers her by adding the death of Clarence to the list of Richard's crimes, and upbraids her with being the mother of the arch criminal

41 *Henry*] Qq are obviously wrong. It is difficult to imagine that the reading in Ff was derived from an original source, as it breaks a sequence of proper names to which the lines owe their point

Thou hadst an Edward, till a Richard kill'd him,  
 Thou hadst a Richard, till a Richard kill'd him  
*Duch* I had a Richard too, and thou didst kill him,  
 I had a Rutland too, thou holp'st to kill him 45  
*Q Mar* Thou hadst a Clarence too, and Richard kill'd him.  
 From forth the kennel of thy womb hath crept  
 A hell-hound that doth hunt us all to death  
 That dog that had his teeth before his eyes,  
 To worry lambs and lap their gentle blood, 50  
 That foul defacer of God's handiwork,  
 That excellent grand tyrant of the earth,  
 That reigns in galled eyes of weeping souls,  
 Thy womb let loose to chase us to our graves.  
 O upright, just, and true-disposing God, 55  
 How do I thank thee, that this carnal cur  
 Preys on the issue of his mother's body,  
 And makes her pue-fellow with other's moan!  
*Duch* O Harry's wife, triumph not in my woes!  
 God witness with me! I have wept for thine 60  
*Q Mar* Bear with me, I am hungry for revenge,  
 And now I cloy me with beholding it  
 Thy Edward he is dead, that kill'd my Edward,  
 Thy other Edward dead, to quit my Edward,

45 *holp'st* Ff 2 4, *hop'st* F 1, *hopst* Qq 46 *Thou* *him*] one line as  
 Qq, *Thou* *too*, *And* *him* (two lines) Ff *and*] Q 1, Ff, *till* Qq 2-8  
 50 *blood*] Ff, Q 8, *blouds* Qq 1-7 52, 53 *That excellent* *souls*] arranged  
 as Capell, transposed Ff, omitted Qq 55 *true disposing*] hyphenated Ff  
 58 *And* *moan*] omitted Pope *pue fellow*] Qq 3-7, Ff, *puefellow* Qq 1, 2  
 59 *wife*] *wifes* Q 1 60 *thine*] Q 1, Ff, *thee* Qq 2 8 63 *kill'd*] Ff, *stabd*  
 Qq 64 *Thy*] Qq, *The* Ff

52, 53 The reversal of these lines in Ff is, no doubt, the result of a crowded interlineation or marginal insertion—probably both combined—in the margin of a printed copy of Q

52 *excellent*] merely in a superlative sense, like Sir Andrew's "*Excellent* good, 't' faith" in *Twelfth Night*, II III

46 53 *galled eyes*] Compare *Hamlet*, I II 155

56 *carnal*] used with much the same significance as "flesh'd," IV III 6

above Richard has tasted flesh, and now hunts after it persistently

58 *pue-fellow*] companion Nares quotes, without a reference "When I was a treuantly scholar in the noble university of Cambridge, though I hope I had as good a conscience as other of my *pew fellows*" See also Decker, *Bel Man of London* (Smeaton, 146). "The *Foist* and the *Nip* are *pew fellows* together and of one religion" Shakespeare uses the word "pue," *King Lear*, III IV 55

Young York he is but boot, because both they 65  
 Match'd not the high perfection of my loss  
 Thy Clarence he is dead, that stabb'd my Edward,  
 And the beholders of this frantic play,  
 The adulterate Hastings, Rivers, Vaughan, Grey,  
 Untimely smother'd in their dusky graves 70  
 Richard yet lives, hell's black intelligencer,  
 Only reserv'd their factor, to buy souls  
 And send them thither but at hand, at hand,  
 Ensues his piteous and unpitied end  
 Earth gapes, hell burns, fiends roar, saints pray, 75  
 To have him suddenly convey'd from hence  
 Cancel his bond of life, dear God, I pray,  
 That I may live and say, The dog is dead!

*Q Elizabeth* O! thou didst prophesy the time would come

66 *Match'd*] Ff 3, 4, *Matcht* Ff 1, 2, *Match* Qq 67 *stabb'd*] Ff, *kild* Qq  
 68 *frantic play*] Ff, *tragick plase* Qq, *tragick scene* Capell (conj) 69  
*adulterate*] *adulterer* Warburton 72 *their*] *the* Hanmer 73 *at hand,*  
*at hand*] *at hand* at *handes* Q 1, *at hand* Qq 7, 8 75 *Earth gapes*] *Earth*  
*gapes, heaven lowers* Seymour (conj) *hell burns*] *hell burns, heaven weeps* S  
 Walker *roar*] *roar for him* Capell *pray*] *pray for vengeance* Pope 76  
*To have* *hence*] omitted Pope *from hence*] Ff, *away* Qq 78 *and*  
*say*] Ff, *to say* Qq

65. *boot*] the additional item thrown in to equalise a bargain, as *Winter's Tale*, iv iv 650 See also *Measure for Measure*, ii iv 11, *Troutus and Cressida*, iv v 40 Margaret reckons that the death of young York is thrown in to equalise the sorrows of herself and her enemies

69 *adulterate*] Shakespeare uses this form in *Comedy of Errors*, ii ii 142, *Hamlet*, i v 42, and three times in the poems See also Machin and Markham, *Dumb Knight*, act v Steevens understands the epithet in a double sense Hastings was not only an adulterer, he was also adulterate, base metal, to Margaret, who had made experience of his treachery

71 *intelligencer*] agent, go-between, as *Henry IV* iv ii 20. Compare *Winter's Tale*, ii iii 68 Mr Craig notes two instances from Nash one from *The Unfortunate Traveller*, "never anie discredited the trade of *intelligencers* but Judas", the other from *Pierce Pennilesse* (Grosart, ii 19),

"throwing himself abruptly into my company like an *intelligencer*" See also Webster, *Duchess of Malfi*, 1623, i i "flatterers, panders, *intelligencers*, atheists, and a thousand such political monsters"

72 *their factor*] the agent of the powers of hell Aldis Wright remarks that the "plural of respect" is used by Shakespeare after the mention of heaven and hell alike, and refers to *Othello*, iv ii 48, on which see Mr Hart's note The term "factor" repeats and emphasises "intelligencer" in the foregoing line. Compare Fletcher and Massinger, *Spanish Curate*, ii 2 — "a young factor"

They call Leandro, that has robb'd his master

75 In a line of heavily stressed monosyllables, containing four short sentences, nothing is more likely than that a foot should have been missed out by the author The necessary pauses in the line make the omission almost unnoticeable

That I should wish for thee to help me curse 80  
 That bottled spider, that foul bunch-back'd toad !  
*Q Mar* I call'd thee then vain flourish of my fortune  
 I call'd thee then poor shadow, painted queen,  
 The presentation of but what I was,  
 The flattering index of a direful pageant, 85  
 One heav'd a-high, to be hurl'd down below,  
 A mother only mock'd with two fair babes,  
 A dream of what thou wast, a garish flag,  
 To be the arm of every dangerous shot,  
 A sign of dignity, a breath, a bubble, 90  
 A queen in jest, only to fill the scene  
 Where is thy husband now? where be thy brothers?  
 Where be thy two sons? wherein dost thou joy?  
 Who sues and kneels and says "God save the queen"?  
 Where be the bending peers that flatter'd thee? 95  
 Where be the thronging troops that follow'd thee?  
 Decline all this, and see what now thou art  
 For happy wife, a most distressed widow,  
 For joyful mother, one that wails the name,  
 For one being sued to, one that humbly sues; 100  
 For queen, a very catiff crown'd with care,

81 *bunch back'd*] *Q 1, Ff, hunch-backt Qq 2 8* 85 *pageant*] *page War*  
*burton* 86 *a-high*] *hyphened Camb, on high Pope* 87 *only mock'd*] *Ff, Q 8, onlie, mockt Qq 1 7* *far*] *Ff, sweete Qq* 88 *what thou wast*] *Ff, which thou wert Qq* 88-90 *a garish flag* *bubble*] *Ff, a breath, a*  
*bubble, A signe of dignitie, a garish flag, To be* *shot Qq* 93 *be*] *are*  
*Qq 1, 2* *two sons*] *Ff, children Qq* 94 *and kneels and says*] *Ff, to thee*  
*(me Q 7), and cries Qq* 100, 101 *For one* *care*] *Ff, transposed Qq*

86 *a-high*] *on high* So Berners' *Froissart*, (ed Macaulay), i 164 "he [Chandos] said to the prince 'Sir, it were good that you rested here and set your banner a high in this bush, that your people may draw hither'", *ibid* 1 160 "the king was on a white courser and said a-high to his men" "An hye" occurs in Chaucer, *Hous of Fame*, 215 Compare "on lofte," where we say "aloft" in *Parliament of Foules*, 683 Compare "an end" above, i iii 304, and "a height" in *King Lear*, iv vi 58

88 90. The arrangement of these

phrases in *Qq* may have been derived from a stage misquotation of the original text

88 *garish*] Mr Craig quotes several instances Familiar examples are from Milton, *Il Penseroso*, line 141 "Hide me from Day's *garish* eye," and "I lov'd the *garish* day" from Newman's hymn, "Lead, kindly Light"

97 *Decline all this*] So *Trailus and Cressida*, ii iii 55

101 *catiff*] literally, a "captive" Hence the word comes to mean a "poor wretch," and is used with a compassionate sense by Shakespeare in this

For she that scorn'd at me, now scorn'd of me,  
 For she being fear'd of all, now fearing one,  
 For she commanding all, obey'd of none  
 Thus hath the course of justice whirl'd about, 105  
 And left thee but a very prey to time,  
 Having no more but thought of what thou wast,  
 To torture thee the more, being what thou art  
 Thou didst usurp my place, and dost thou not  
 Usurp the just proportion of my sorrow? 110  
 Now thy proud neck bears half my burthen'd yoke,  
 From which even here I slip my wearied head,  
 And leave the burthen of it all on thee  
 Farewell, York's wife, and queen of sad mischance!  
 These English woes shall make me smile in France 115

*Q Elizabeth* O thou well-skill'd in curses, stay awhile,  
 And teach me how to curse mine enemies!

*Q Margaret* Forbear to sleep the night, and fast the day,  
 Compare dead happiness with living woe,  
 Think that thy babes were sweeter than they were, 120  
 And he that slew them fouler than he is  
 Bettering thy loss makes the bad causer worse  
 Revolving this will teach thee how to curse

*Q Elizabeth* My words are dull, O! quicken them with thine!

*Q Margaret* Thy woes will make them sharp and pierce like  
 mine [Exit 125

102 *For she* of me] Ff, *For one* of me Qq (aft 104) 103 *For*  
*she* one] Ff, *For one* one Pope, omitted Qq 104 *For she*  
*none*] Ff, *For one* none Qq 105 *whirl'd*] Ff, *wheeld* Qq 107  
*wast*] Ff, *wert* Qq 1, 2, *art* Qq 3-8 112 *wearied head*] Ff, *wearie necke*  
Qq 1-5, *wearied necke* Qq 6-8 115 *woes*] *wars* Q 4 *shall*] Ff, *will* Qq  
118 *night* *day*] Qq 3-8, Ff, *nights* *dases* Qq 1, 2 120 *sweeter*]  
Ff, *fairer* Qq 122 *bad causer worse*] *bad causes worse* Q 4, *bad cause*  
*worser* Q 8, *bad causer worse* Steevens 125 *Thy* mine] one line as  
Qq, *Thy* sharpe And mine (two lines) Ff *Exit*] *Exit Margaret*  
Ff, *Exit Mar* (aft 126) Qq

and other passages Compare *Romeo*  
*and Juliet*, v 1 52, *Othello*, iv 1 109,  
 and see Mr Hart's note on the latter  
 passage

105 Compare *Love's Labour's Lost*,  
 iv iii 384

111 *burthen'd*] burdensome, as  
 "unmanner'd," i ii 39 above It may  
 be, however, that the epithet may be

used in its ordinary sense, and be  
 merely transferred from "neck" to  
 "yoke", or, again, that it may agree  
 with the possessive case of the personal  
 pronoun implied in "my"

122 *bad causer*] "Causur" has been  
 used above, i ii 117 Steevens' read-  
 ing, "bad causer," destroys the true  
 force of the epithet

*Duch* Why should calamity be full of words?

*Q Eliz* Windy attornies to their client woes,

Airy succeders of intestate joys,

Poor breathing oratois of miseries!

Let them have scope though what they will impart 130

Help nothing else, yet do they ease the heart

*Duch* If so, then be not tongue-tied go with me,

And in the breath of bitter words let's smother

My damned son, that thy two sweet sons smother'd

The trumpet sounds be copious in exclams 135

*Enter KING RICHARD, marching, with drums and trumpets*

*K Rich* Who intercepts me in my expedition?

*Duch* O! she that might have intercepted thee,

By strangling thee in her accursed womb,

From all the slaughters, wretch, that thou hast done!

*Q Eliz* Hid'st thou that forehead with a golden crown, 140

Where should be branded, if that right were right,

The slaughter of the prince that ow'd that crown,

And the dire death of my poor sons and brothers?

Tell me, thou villain slave, where are my children?

*Duch* Thou toad, thou toad, where is thy brother Clarence? 145

And little Ned Plantagenet, his son?

*Q Eliz* Where is the gentle Rivers, Vaughan, Grey?

127 *their client*] Hanmer, Camb, *their Clients* Ff, *your Client* Qq 1-3, 58, *your clients* Q 4, *your client's* Pope 128 *intestate*] Qq, *intestine* Ff 130 *will*] Ff, *do* Qq 131 *nothing else*] Ff, *not at all* Qq 1-6, *not all* Qq 7, 8 134 *that*] Ff, *which* Qq 135 *The trumpet sounds*] Ff, *I heare his drum* Qq aft 135 SCENE V Pope *Enter trumpets*] Qq, *Enter King Richard, and his Train* Ff 136 *me in*] Ff, omitted Qq 137 *O! she*] Ff, *A she* Qq 141 *Where*] Qq, *Where't* Ff *should*] *would* Q 4 *branded*] Ff, *grauen* Qq *right*] Qq, *right* Ff 143, *poor*] Ff, *two* Qq 144 *villain slave*] Qq, *hyphened* Ff 145 *Thou Clarence*] one line as Qq, *Thou Toad, thou Toade, Where Clarence* (two lines) Ff 147 *the gentle*] Ff, *kind Hastings*, Qq

127 *client*] This is evidently the right reading. Woes are the clients to whom words are but windy attornies. The misreading in the next line seems to point to the Ff editor's misunderstanding of the text at this point, and to an attempt at altering it on his own account. If "clients" is the right reading, it must be in apposition to

"woes," and not in the genitive, qualifying it.

142 *ow'd*] owned. Compare, among many other instances, *Macbeth*, I iv 10.

147, 148 Aldis Wright, while retaining Qq reading, points out its inherent improbability. Elizabeth would not be likely to speak of her enemy as "kind

*Duch* Where is kind Hastings?

*K Rich* A flourish, trumpets! strike alarum, drums!

Let not the heavens hear these tell-tale women 150

Rail on the Lord's anointed! strike, I say!

[*Flourish Alarums*]

Either be patient, and intreat me fair,

Or with the clamorous report of war

Thus will I drown your exclamations

*Duch* Art thou my son? 155

*K Rich* Ay, I thank God, my father, and yourself

*Duch* Then patiently hear my impatience

*K Rich* Madam, I have a touch of your condition,

That cannot brook the accent of reproof

*Duch*. O! let me speak

*K Rich* Do, then, but I'll not hear 160

*Duch* I will be mild and gentle in my words

*K Rich* And brief, good mother, for I am in haste

*Duch* Art thou so hasty? I have stay'd for thee,

God knows, in torment and in agony

*K Rich* And came I not at last to comfort you? 165

*Duch* No, by the holy rood! thou know'st it well,

Thou can'st on earth to make the earth my hell

A grievous burthen was thy birth to me,

148 *Duch* . Hastings] Ff, omitted Qq 151 *Flourish Alarums*]  
Ff, *The trumpets* Q 1, *The trumpets sound* Qq 2, 8, *The trumpets sounds* Qq  
3-7 159 *That*] Ff, *Which* Qq 160 *Duch* O hear] Ff, omitted  
Qq 161 *words*] Ff, *speech* Qq 164 *torment and in*] Ff, *anguish, paine*  
and Qq

Hastings" The tragedy of her own family would also be too present in her mind to admit the memory of any kindred crime, and, even if it occurred to her, she hardly would give it the first place in her reproaches. It is natural that the Duchess, on the other hand, recalling the loyalty of Hastings to her eldest son and his family, should add his name to those of the members of the Woodville family and faction

151 *the Lord's anointed*] The strength, such as it is, of Shakespeare's Richard II, proceeds from his high sense of his dignity as "the deputy

elect by the Lord" (*Richard II* III ii 57) Richard III, on the other hand, to whom such a belief is superstition, uses it to awe his adversaries into silence

152 *intreat me fair*] Compare *Richard II* III i 37

158 *condition*] temperament, disposition, as *Henry V* v ii 314, *Othello*, II i 255

168 See note on II iv 27, 28 above. For Richard's character at the various periods of his life, Shakespeare merely draws inferences from the general description given by More.

Tetchy and wayward was thy infancy,  
 Thy school-days frightful, desperate, wild, and furious, 170  
 Thy prime of manhood daring, bold, and venturous,  
 Thy age confirm'd, proud, subtle, sly, and bloody,  
 More mild, but yet more harmful, kind in hatred  
 What comfortable hour canst thou name,  
 That ever grac'd me with thy company? 175  
*K Rich* Faith! none but Humphrey Hour, that call'd your  
 grace

171 *Thy venturous*] omitted Qq 3-8 172 *sly, and bloody*] Ff, *bloudie,*  
*trecherous* Qq 173 *More hatred*] Ff, omitted Qq 175 *with*] Ff,  
 in Qq 176 *Faith grace*] one line as Qq, *Faith* , *Howe*, *That*  
*Grace* (two lines) Ff

169 *Tetchy*] Compare *Romeo and Juliet*, i iii 32, *Troilus and Cressida*, i i 99 The word has been explained as equivalent to "touchy," e.g. by Halliwell, Nares, etc. Skeat, however, defines it as "full of tetches or teches, i.e. full of bad habits, freaks, whims, vices" In *Romeo and Juliet* (4 s) it is used perhaps instead of "tettish" compare Fletcher's *Wit without Money*, 1639, v 2 "He's the most tettish knave!"

172 *age confirm'd*] Aldis Wright explains, "in the full vigour of manhood" More, perhaps, than this is implied in "confirm'd," which means "fixed, resolved," as in *Coriolanus*, i iii 65, etc. "Age confirm'd" would thus denote the time of life at which early tendencies and character become fixed and settled

173 *harmful, kind*] Ff have "harm full, Kinde," and S. Walker suggested "harmful kind," which, if accepted, should be hyphenated. However, the meaning of the paradox "kind in hatred" is clear enough. It exactly describes Richard's attitude towards Clarence at the beginning of the play

176 *Humphrey Hour*] The only satisfactory explanation of this play upon words is that suggested by Steevens, and adopted by Malone. "Shakespeare might indeed by this strange phrase have designed to mark the hour at which the good Duchess was as hungry as the followers of Duke Humphrey." Q. 8 reads "Humphreys houre," which may be intended to

make the phrase clearer. Loiterers who could not buy or beg a dinner, and spent the dinner interval in lounging about the nave of St. Paul's, were said to "dine with Duke Humphrey." Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, son of Henry IV., died in 1447, and was buried at St. Albans Abbey, but "a proper chapel and fair monument" on the south side of St. Paul's nave, marking the burial place of Sir John Beauchamp (d. 1358), were supposed vulgarly to mark that of Duke Humphrey Decker, *Guls Horn-Booke*, ch. iv, speaks of this part of the nave of St. Paul's as "Duke Humfries Walke." Gabriel Harvey, *Four Letters and certain Sonnets*, 1592, has "to seeke his dinner in Poules with Duke Humphrey to licke dishes, to be a beggar." For other references, see Steevens' note, Nares s.v. Duke Humphrey, Brand, *Popular Antiquities*, iii 384-7. Shakespeare thus may have intended to make Richard answer his mother's question literally with a far-fetched pun: the only hour he can name is Duke Humphrey's hour, and that called her away from his company to eat her breakfast. The mention of breakfast instead of dinner is immaterial. Besides this explanation, the only other that seems reasonable is that the "comfortable hour" was a certain Humphrey Hour, for whom there is no historical authority. Shakespeare may have invented the name for a serving-man, merely for the sake of the pun. The idea that Humphrey Hour was a gallant of the Duchess is not warrantable.

My tongue should to thy ears not name my boys,  
 Till that my nails were anchor'd in thine eyes,  
 And I, in such a desperate bay of death,  
 Like a poor bark, of sails and tackling reft,  
 Rush all to pieces on thy rocky bosom 235

*K Rich* Madam, so thrive I in my enterprise  
 And dangerous success of bloody wars,  
 As I intend more good to you and yours  
 Than ever you and yours by me were harm'd!

*Q Eliz* What good is cover'd with the face of heaven, 240  
 To be discover'd, that can do me good?

*K Rich* The advancement of your children, gentle lady

*Q Eliz* Up to some scaffold, there to lose their heads?

*K Rich* Unto the dignity and height of fortune,  
 The high imperial type of this earth's glory 245

*Q Eliz* Flatter my sorrow with report of it!  
 Tell me, what state, what dignity, what honour,  
 Canst thou demise to any child of mine?

*K Rich* Even all I have, ay, and myself and all,  
 Will I withal endow a child of thine, 250  
 So in the Lethe of thy angry soul

236, 237 *Madam* wars] two lines as *Ff*, *Madam, so thrive I in my dangerous attempt of hostile armes* (one line) *Qq* 239 and yours] *Qq* 6-8, *Ff*, or yours *Qq* 1-5 by me were harm'd] *Ff*, *wee by me wrong'd* *Qq* 242 gentle] *Ff*, *mightie* *Qq* 244 Unto] *Ff*, *No to* *Qq* fortune] *Ff*, honor *Qq* 245 high] *Q* 1, *Ff*, height *Qq* 2-8 246 sorrow] *Ff*, sorrows *Qq* 248 demise] *deuse* *Ff* 2-4 249 ay] *Ff*, yea *Qq*

237 success] sequel, result, as  
*Othello*, III iii 222

245 type] emblem, badge The phrase is explained by another in Halle's *Chronicle*, p. 414, cited by Aldis Wright, where Richard, in his speech to his soldiers before Bosworth, says "I haue obteyned the crowne type of this famous realm & noble region" See *Henry VIII*, I iii. 31, where "types of travel" = emblems of travel In *Henry VI* I iv 121, "the type of King of Naples" probably means the style or semblance of king, though Schmidt takes it to mean the crown A more unrestricted use, again, is found in Chapman (?), *Alphonsus*, 1654, l. 2 —

"to unite anew

Unto her former strength and glorious type  
 Our half declining Roman monarchy"

248 demise] Aldis Wright notes this law-term as an *ἐπαξ λεγόμενον* in Shakespeare, like "pleasing" in I i 13 above A "demise" is a conveyance or transfer of an estate or other real property Thus, Blackstone defines "the demise of the crown" as meaning "that, in consequence of the disunion of the King's natural body from his body politic, the kingdom is transferred or demised to his successor, and so the royal dignity remains perpetual" Perhaps the word was suggested here by the mention, immediately preceding, of "the high imperial type of this earth's glory."

- Thou drown the sad remembrance of those wrongs,  
Which thou supposest I have done to thee
- Q Elz* Be brief, lest that the process of thy kindness  
Last longer telling than thy kindness' date 255
- K Rich* Then know, that from my soul I love thy  
daughter
- Q Elz* My daughter's mother thinks it with her soul
- K Rich* What do you think?
- Q Elz* That thou dost love my daughter from thy soul  
So from thy soul's love didst thou love her brothers, 260  
And from my heart's love I do thank thee for it
- K Rich* Be not so hasty to confound my meaning  
I mean, that with my soul I love thy daughter,  
And do intend to make her queen of England
- Q Elz* Well then, who dost thou mean shall be her king? 265
- K Rich* Even he that makes her queen who else should be?
- Q Elz* What, thou?
- K Rich* Even so how think you of it?
- Q Elz* How canst thou woo her?
- K Rich* That I would learn of you, 270  
As one being best acquainted with her humour
- Q Elz* And wilt thou learn of me?
- K Rich* Madam, with all my heart
- Q Elz* Send to her, by the man that slew her brothers,  
A pair of bleeding hearts, thereon engrave 275  
Edward and York, then haply will she weep  
Therefore present to her—as sometime Margaret

255 kindness' date] Ff, kindnes doe Qq 256 Then daughter] one  
line as Qq, Then know, That Daughter (two lines) Ff 260 soul's  
love didst thou love] Q 1, Ff, soules loue didst thou Qq 2-5, soule didst thou  
loue Qq 6-8 264 do intend] Ff, meane Qq 265 Well then] Ff, Sate  
then Qq 266 Even be] one line as Qq, Even Queene Who  
bee (two lines) Ff else should be] Ff, should be else Q 1, should else Qq  
2-8 268 Even so] Ff, I euen I Qq, Even I Capell, Ay, even I Malone  
how] Ff, what Qq of it] Ff, of it, madam Qq 270 That] omitted Pope  
I would] would I Qq 1, 2 271 being] Ff, that are Qq 1, 2, that were  
Qq 3-8 273 Madam] omitted Pope 275 engrave] engraven Collier  
MS 276 will she] Ff, she will Qq 277 sometime] sometimes Qq  
1, 2, 7, 8

271 humour] disposition, as *Love's* word is used in its common sense of  
*Labour's Lost*, v 1 10, 2 *Henry* "mood" here it implies natural char  
VI v 1 132 Above, iv 1 64, the acter

Did to thy father, steep'd in Rutland's blood—  
 A handkerchief, which, say to her, did drain  
 The purple sap from her sweet brother's body, 280  
 And bid her wipe her weeping eyes withal  
 If this inducement move her not to love,  
 Send her a letter of thy noble deeds,  
 Tell her thou mad'st away her uncle Clarence,  
 Her uncle Rivers, ay, and, for her sake, 285  
 Mad'st quick conveyance with her good Aunt Anne  
*K. Rich* You mock me, madam, this is not the way  
 To win your daughter  
*Q. Eliz* There is no other way,  
 Unless thou could'st put on some other shape,  
 And not be Richard that hath done all this 290  
*K. Rich* Say that I did all this for love of her  
*Q. Eliz* Nay, then indeed she cannot choose but hate thee,  
 Having bought love with such a bloody spoil  
*K. Rich* Look, what is done, cannot be now amended  
 Men shall deal unadvisedly sometimes, 295  
 Which after-hours gives leisure to repent  
 If I did take the kingdom from your sons,  
 To make amends, I'll give it to your daughter

278, 279 *Did* handkerchief] Ff, *Did to thy father, a handkercher (handkercheffe* Qq 2 8) *steep in Rutlands bloud* (one line) Qq 279, 280 *which*  
*body*] Ff, omitted Qq 280 *sap*] tide Pope *brother's body*] *brothers bodies*  
*Rowe, brothers' bodies* Warburton 281 *wipe*] Ff, *drie* Qq *withal*] Ff,  
*therewith* Qq 282 *move*] Ff, *force* Qq 283 *letter*] Ff, *storie* Qq  
*deeds*] Ff, *acts* Qq 285 *ay*] Ff, *yea* Qq 287 *You mock me, madam*  
*Ff, Come, come, you mocke me* Qq 1, 2, *Come, come, ye mocke me* Qq 3-8  
*this is*] *this* F 1 288 *There is*] *There's* Pope 291-345 *K. Rich* *Say*  
*years*] Ff, omitted Qq 291 *her*] *her's* Capell 292 *hate*] *have*  
*Steevens (Mason conj), love* Grant White (Tyrwhitt conj) 293 *bought*] *brought*  
*Pope* 296 *repent*] *repent* of Rowe

286 *conveyance*] For the sense of dishonest dealing implied here in this word, compare *1 Henry VI* i iii. 2, *3 Henry VI* iii iii. 160

291 Richard makes use of the argument with which he had tempted Anne, i ii. 115 24 above Dr A W Ward (*History of English Dramatic Literature*, new ed 1899, ii 99) calls this part of the scene "a weak sort of repetition of the powerful scene between Richard and Anne" Johnson remarked

that "part of the dialogue is ridiculous, and the whole improbable" An opposite, but paradoxically expressed opinion is that of Dr Brandes (*William Shakespeare*, English translation, 1898, ii 159) "The scene has the air of a repetition Shakespeare has lavished his whole art on the passage" The last sentence is surely extravagant  
 293 *spoil*] waste, havoc (Johnson) Compare *1 Henry IV* iii. iii. 11, *Henry V* v ii. 249

If I have kill'd the issue of your womb,  
 To quicken your increase, I will beget 300  
 Mine issue of your blood upon your daughter  
 A grandam's name is little less in love  
 Than is the doting title of a mother,  
 They are as children but one step below,  
 Even of your mettle, of your very blood, 305  
 Of all one pain, save for a night of groans  
 Endur'd of her, for whom you bid like sorrow.  
 Your children were vexation to your youth,  
 But mine shall be a comfort to your age  
 The loss you have is but a son being king, 310  
 And by that loss your daughter is made queen  
 I cannot make you what amends I would,  
 Therefore accept such kindness as I can  
 Dorset your son, that with a fearful soul  
 Leads discontented steps in foreign soil, 315  
 This fair alliance quickly shall call home  
 To high promotions and great dignity  
 The king that calls your beauteous daughter wife,  
 Familiarly shall call thy Dorset brother

315 *Leads*] *Treads* Collier (Capell conj.)

305 *mettle*] temper, disposition  
 The same word as "metal" See Mr  
 Macmillan on *Julius Cæsar*, I i 66,  
 and Mr Hart on *Measure for Measure*,  
 II iv 48 Here the spelling in Ff is  
 "mettall," as in *Troilus and Cressida*,  
 I III. 22, *1 Henry IV* II iv 383, IV  
 III 22, and V iv 24, and in line 385  
 below "Metal" occurs in *Measure*  
*for Measure*, I i 49, where a play is  
 intended on the double meaning of the  
 word The spelling in *Henry V* III v  
 15 is "mettell" "Mettle," however,  
 is the form used in the large majority  
 of Shakespearean instances, whether  
 the meaning be that of "metal," "dis-  
 position," or, as is very common, be  
 applied in the double sense

307 *bid*] endured, a past tense  
 formed from "bide" Chaucer, *Canter-*  
*bury Tales*, E 1888, uses a past parti-  
 ciple "biden" from "bide," with the  
 intransitive sense of "waited" But  
 the past tense used here is uncommon,  
 if not unique Capell read "bid"

314 17 *Dorset your son*] On Shake-  
 speare's confusion of historical time in  
 this scene, see note on line 447 below  
 Dorset, on leaving sanctuary (see IV i  
 38 above), had "gathered together a  
 great band of men in Yorkshire" to help  
 Buckingham It was after the failure  
 of Buckingham's expedition that he  
 went abroad and joined Richmond  
 See also IV ii 48, 49 According to  
 More (ap Holinshed, III 750), one of  
 the chief inducements by which Richard  
 won over the Queen Dowager was his  
 offer of promotion to Dorset She  
 actually was so "blinded by avaricious  
 affection, & seduced by flattering words"  
 that she sent letters to her son, "will-  
 ing him in any wise to leave the earle,  
 and without delay to repaire into Eng-  
 land" The whole passage in More is  
 epitomised in this speech

315 *Leads*] used in the sense of  
 "drags, draws along his steps"

- Again shall you be mother to a king , 320  
 And all the ruins of distressful times  
 Repair'd with double riches of content  
 What ! we have many goodly days to see  
 The liquid drops of tears that you have shed  
 Shall come again, transform'd to orient pearl, 325  
 Advantaging their loan with interest  
 Of ten times double gain of happiness  
 Go then, my mother, to thy daughter go ,  
 Make bold her bashful years with your experience ,  
 Prepare her ears to hear a wooer's tale , 330  
 Put in her tender heart the aspiring flame  
 Of golden sovereignty, acquaint the princess  
 With the sweet silent hours of marriage joys  
 And when this arm of mine hath chastised  
 The petty rebel, dull-brain'd Buckingham, 335  
 Bound with triumphant garlands will I come,  
 And lead thy daughter to a conqueror's bed,  
 To whom I will retail my conquest won,  
 And she shall be sole victress, Cæsar's Cæsar  
 Q *Eliz* What were I best to say? her father's brother 340  
 Would be her lord? or shall I say, her uncle?

326 *loan*] Theobald, *Loue* Ff  
*victress*] F 4, *Victoressa* Ff 1-3

336 *garlands*] *laurels* Capell 339

325 *orient pearl*] See Prof Case's note on *Antony and Cleopatra*, I v 41, for the two possible derivations of "orient," viz (1) oriental, eastern, (2) from the resemblance of the colour of a pearl to the clearness of the air before sun-rising. A passage in Decker, *Bel-Man of London* (Smeaton, 112), speaks for the second of these "So are these *Villantes* paynted over with fresh orient cullers, because their looks may be more pleasing." For another example of "orient" see the passage from Drayton quoted at v iii 251 below.

326 *Advantaging*] "Advantage" is the name given to the favourable terms on which a lender receives back more than the amount of his loan see *Merchant of Venice*, I iii 71, *1 Henry IV* II iv 599.

*loan*] Theobald conjectured, with every probability, that Ff "Loue" was really "Lone," with the *n* turned

upside down. He explains the passage thus "The tears that you have lent to your afflictions, shall be turned into gems, and requite you by way of interest."

335 *dull-brain'd Buckingham*] Richard, almost secure in the hope of his new marriage, speaks slightly of Buckingham. However, the "deep-revolving witty Buckingham" (iv ii 42), while aiding him, had never been his dupe. In iv ii 28-31, Richard reckons "high reaching" Buckingham as one of those who look into him "with considerate eyes," and contrasts him with "iron-witted fools" like Tyrrel, and "unresponsive boys" like Tyrrel's friend, the page.

338 *retail*] "Richard means to say that he will transmit the benefit of his victories to Elizabeth" (Steevens). Probably the real meaning is simply "tell," as at iii i 77 above.

Or, he that slew her brothers and her uncles ?

Under what title shall I woo for thee,

That God, the law, my honour, and her love,

Can make seem pleasing to her tender years ? 345

*K Rich* Infer fair England's peace by this alliance

*Q Eliz* Which she shall purchase with still lasting war

*K Rich* Tell her the king, that may command, entreats

*Q Eliz* That at her hands which the king's King forbids

*K Rich* Say, she shall be a high and mighty queen 350

*Q Eliz* To wail the title, as her mother doth

*K Rich* Say, I will love her everlastingly

*Q Eliz* But how long shall that title, ever, last ?

*K Rich* Sweetly in force unto her fair life's end

*Q Eliz* But how long fairly shall her sweet life last ? 355

*K Rich* As long as heaven and nature lengthens it

*Q Eliz* As long as hell and Richard likes of it

*K Rich* Say, I, her sovereign, am her subject low

*Q Eliz* But she, your subject, loathes such sovereignty

*K Rich* Be eloquent in my behalf to her 360

*Q Eliz* An honest tale speeds best, being plainly told

*K Rich* Then plainly to her tell my loving tale

*Q Eliz* Plain and not honest is too harsh a style

*K Rich* Your reasons are too shallow and too quick

*Q Eliz* O no ! my reasons are too deep and dead , 365

Too deep and dead, poor infants, in their graves

*K Rich* Harp not on that string, madam , that is past

348 *Tell her* Ff, *Say that* Qq *that* Ff, *which* Qq 349 *forbids* Q 1, Ff, *forbid* Qq 2-8 351 *was* Qq, *vaile* Ff 353 *ever* omitted Q 5  
355 *her sweet life* *that title* Qq 3 8 356 *As* Ff, *So* Qq *lengthens* Pope  
*lengthen* Pope 357 *As* Ff, *So* Qq *likes* *like* Pope 358 *low* Ff, *lowe* Qq, *now* Pope 362 *plainly to her tell* Ff, *in plainne termes tell her* Qq  
364 *Your* Ff, *Madame your* Qq 365-67 *Q Eliz* *O no* *past* Pope  
put in margin 365 *my* *your* Rann 366 *graves* Ff, *grauē* Qq 367, 368  
*K Rich* *Harp not* *break* Q 1, Qq 2 8 omit 367, *Harpe on it still shall I,*  
*till heart strings break* *Rich* *Harpe not on that string* *Madam, that is past*  
(transposing 367, 368) Ff

346 *Infer* in the literal sense, "bring on" See also III v 75, III

vii 12 above

364 *quick* Richard means "hasty" Elizabeth, in her answer, plays upon the other meaning, "full of life," to point her taunt

366. *Too deep* Pope's reading "Two

deep" carries the play on words unnecessarily far

367 The editor of F 1, reinserting this line in the margin of one of the later Qq, must have misled the printer into transposing it with line 368

*Harp not on that string* Compare *Measure for Measure*, v 1 64 (and

*Q Eliz* Harp on it still shall I till heart-strings break  
*K Rich* Now, by my George, my garter, and my crown,—  
*Q Eliz* Profan'd, dishonour'd, and the third usurp'd 370  
*K Rich* I swear—  
*Q Eliz* By nothing, for this is no oath  
 Thy George, profan'd, hath lost his lordly honour,  
 Thy garter, blemish'd, pawn'd his knightly virtue,  
 Thy crown, usurp'd, disgrac'd his kingly glory  
 If something thou would'st swear to be believ'd, 375  
 Swear then by something that thou hast not wrong'd  
*K Rich* Then, by myself—  
*Q Eliz* Thyself is self-misus'd  
*K Rich* Now, by the world—  
*Q Eliz* 'Tis full of thy foul wrongs  
*K Rich* My father's death—  
*Q Eliz* Thy life hath it dishonour'd  
*K Rich* Why then, by God—  
*Q Eliz* God's wrong is most of all 380  
 If thou didst fear to break an oath with Him,  
 The unity the king my husband made

369 *K Rich* [omitted Ff 372 *Thy*] Ff, *The* Qq (and so 373, 374) *lordly*]  
 Ff, *holie* Qq 373 *knightly*] *kingly* Ff 2-4 374 *glory*] Ff, *disgrace* Qq  
 375 *something thou would'st*] Ff, *something thou wilt* Qq 1-6, *nothing thou*  
*wilt* Qq 7, 8 377 *Then* *self misus'd*] Qq place between lines 379, 380  
*is self misus'd*] Ff, *thy selfe misused* Qq 1 7, *thy selfe misused* Q 8 379 *it*]  
 Ff, *that* Qq 380 *God* *God's*] Qq, *Heaven* . *Heavens* Ff 381  
*didst fear*] Ff, *hadst feared* Qq *with Him*] Ff, *by him* Qq, *with heav'n* Pope  
 382 *my husband*] Ff, *thy brother* Qq 1-6, *my brother* Qq 7, 8

see Mr Hart's note), *Coriolanus*, II iii  
 260, etc. A similar metaphor is used  
 by Fletcher, *Monsieur Thomas*, I i  
 "Touch no more *that string*, 'tis too  
 harsh and jarring", *Span Curate*, I 2 —  
 "Touch not *that string*,  
 'Twill but increase your sorrow"

Among instances supplied by Mr Craig  
 may be noted one from Speed's *Chron-*  
*icle*, p 909 "The Cardinall made a  
 countenance to the other lord that he  
 should *harpe no more on that string*"

368 *heart-strings*] Mr Craig notes  
 that Cotgrave has "Precordiaux the  
*heart-sirings* or filme of the heart," and  
 that in the old anatomy the heart-  
 strings are nerves supposed to brace  
 and sustain the heart compare W  
 Horman, *Vulgaria*, 1517 "The *hert*

*strynges* do minister the pulse" So  
 Heywood, *Faire Maide of the West*,  
 1631, III 4 —

"if she still love him,  
 I'll break her *heart-strings* with  
 some false report  
 Of his unkindness"

369 *George*] The figure of St George  
 and the dragon, which is the pendent  
 of the collar of the Garter The George,  
 as Aldis Wright notes, was not added  
 till the reign of Henry VII

377 The re-arrangement of lines in  
 Ff makes no great difference, but the  
 order in which Richard's oaths come is  
 perhaps more natural

380 *God*] For Ff reading, compare I.  
 iv 21, 117, 188, 189, etc., and notes on  
 those passages

Thou hadst not broken, nor my brothers died  
 If thou hadst fear'd to break an oath by Him,  
 The imperial metal, circling now thy head, 385  
 Had grac'd the tender temples of my child,  
 And both the princes had been breathing here,  
 Which now, two tender bedfellows for dust,  
 Thy broken faith hath made the prey for worms  
 What canst thou swear by now?

*K Rich* The time to come 390

*Q Eliz* That thou hast wronged in the time o'erpast,  
 For I myself have many tears to wash  
 Hereafter time, for time past wrong'd by thee  
 The children live, whose fathers thou hast slaughter'd,  
 Ungovern'd youth, to wail it with their age, 395  
 The parents live, whose children thou hast butcher'd,  
 Old barren plants, to wail it with their age  
 Swear not by time to come, for that thou hast  
 Misus'd ere us'd, by times ill-us'd o'erpast.

*K Rich* As I intend to prosper and repent, 400

So thrive I in my dangerous affairs  
 Of hostile arms! myself myself confound!  
 Heaven and fortune bar me happy hours!  
 Day, yield me not thy light, nor, night, thy rest!  
 Be opposite, all planets of good luck, 405  
 To my proceeding, if with dear heart's love,  
 Immaculate devotion, holy thoughts,  
 I tender not thy beauteous princely daughter!

383 *Thou hadst not*] Ff, *Had not bene* Qq *brothers died*] Ff, *brother slain* Qq 385 *head*] Ff, *brow* Qq 386 *grac'd*] Ff, *grast* Qq 1-5, *grac't* Qq 6-8 388 *two*] too Capell *bedfellows*] Ff, *plaise fellows* Qq 389 *the prey for*] Ff, *a pray for* Qq, *a prey to* Pope 390 *What now*] Ff, omitted Qq, Pope *The time*] Ff, *By the time* Qq, *By time* Pope 391 *wronged in the time*] Ff, *wrongd in time* Qq 393 *past wrong'd by thee*] Ff, *by the past wrongd* Qq 394 *fathers*] Ff, *parents* Qq 395 *with their*] Q 5, Ff, *in their* Qq 1-4, *with her* Qq 6 8 397 *barren*] Ff, *withered* Qq *with*] in Pope 398, 399 *Swear o'erpast*] Pope put in margin 399 *ere*] *eare* Qq 1-3, 5, *nere* Q 4 *times ill-us'd*] Ff, *time misused* Qq *o'erpast*] *orepast* Qq, *repast* Ff 401 *affairs*] Ff, *attempt* Qq 403 *Heaven hours*] Ff, omitted Qq, *So Heaven hours* Keightley (conj.) 406 *proceeding*] Ff, *proceedings* Qq *dear*] Ff, *pure* Qq 407 *Immaculate*] Q 1, Ff, *Immaculatd* Q 2, *Immaculated* Qq 3 8 408 *tender*] *render* Qq 3-7

393 *Hereafter time*] after this The 408 *tender*] The word is used exactly two words should perhaps be hyphenated in the present sense by Horace Walpole,

- In her consists my happiness and thine,  
 Without her, follows to myself and thee, 410  
 Herself, the land, and many a Christian soul,  
 Death, desolation, ruin, and decay.  
 It cannot be avoided but by this,  
 It will not be avoided but by this.  
 Therefore, dear mother,—I must call you so— 415  
 Be the attorney of my love to her  
 Plead what I will be, not what I have been,  
 Not my deserts, but what I will deserve  
 Urge the necessity and state of times,  
 And be not peevish found in great designs 420
- Q Elz* Shall I be tempted of the devil thus?  
*K Rich* Ay, if the devil tempt you to do good  
*Q Elz* Shall I forget myself to be myself?  
*K Rich* Ay, if yourself's remembrance wrong yourself  
*Q Elz* Yet thou didst kill my children 425  
*K Rich* But in your daughter's womb I bury them,  
 Where, in that nest of spicery, they will breed  
 Selves of themselves, to your recomforture  
*Q Elz* Shall I go win my daughter to your will?  
*K Rich* And be a happy mother by the deed 430

410 *myself and thee*] *Ff*, *this land and me* *Qq* 411 *Herself, the land*] *Ff*,  
*To thee her self* *Qq* 412 *Death, desolation*] *Ff*; *Sad desolation* *Qq* 16,  
*Sad desolate* *Qq* 7, 8 414 *by this*] *this* *Q* 1 415 *dear*] *Ff*, *good* *Qq*  
418 *my*] *Ff*, *by* *Qq* *deserts*] *desires* *F* 4 419 *and state of*] *of state and*  
*Collier MS* 420 *peevish found*] *Ff*, *pievish, fond* *Q* 1, *peevish, fond* *Q* 2,  
*peevish fond* *Qq* 38, *peevish fond* *Staunton* (*Malone conj.*), *Camb* 422  
*you*] *Ff*, *thee* *Qq* 425 *Yet*] *Ff*, *But* *Qq* 426 *I bury*] *Q* 3, *Ff*, *I buried*  
*Qq* 1, 2, *Ile burie* *Qq* 48 427 *they*] *there* *Qq* 38 *will*] *Ff*, *shall* *Qq*  
428 *recomforture*] *Ff*, *recomfiture* *Qq*

writing to Sir Horace Mann, 15th December, 1748 "Somerset tendered his pride even beyond his hate"

416 *Be the attorney*] The metaphor is common in Shakespeare See line 127 above, v iii 83 below

420. *peevish found*] For "peevish" see i iii 194, iii i 31 above The plausible reading "peevish-fond" is probably the result of the omission of a letter in *Qq* "Peevish fond" is equivalent to "childish-foolish", not in the sense of childish simplicity, as in i iii 142 above, but of childish waywardness.

Steevens defended *Ff*, quoting *Henry VIII* ii ii 79

423, 424 Elizabeth asks "Shall I forget myself, the wronged mother, to be myself, the royal queen mother?" Richard's answer, as usual, is double-edged, and is delivered with an appearance of sincerity, as though Elizabeth's words had only their surface meaning

427, 428 Richard, as Steevens notes, refers to the fable of the phoenix

428 *to your recomforture*] to the recovery of your comfort For the form "recomforture" compare "recure" in iii vii 130 above

*Q. Eliz* I go Write to me very shortly,

And you shall understand from me her mind

*K Rich* Bear her my true love's kiss, and so, farewell.

[*Exit Queen Elizabeth*]

Relenting fool, and shallow-changing woman!

*Enter RATCLIFF, CATESBY following*

How now, what news?

435

*Rat* Most mighty sovereign, on the western coast

Rideth a puissant navy, to our shores

Throng many doubtful hollow-hearted friends,

Unarm'd and unresolv'd to beat them back

'Tis thought that Richmond is their admiral,

440

And there they hull, expecting but the aid

Of Buckingham to welcome them ashore

*K Rich* Some light-foot friend post to the Duke of Norfolk

Ratcliff, thyself, or Catesby, where is he?

431 to me] to me, Richard Collier MS very] omitted Pope 432  
And mind] Ff, omitted Qq 433 and so] Ff, omitted Qq, Johnson  
adds *Kissing her* Exit Queen Elizabeth] Exit Qq 1, 2, Exit Qu Qq 3 8,  
Exit Q Ff (aft 432) 434 shallow changing woman] Ff, shallow chang-  
ing woman Qq, shallow, changing—woman Capell aft 434 Enter  
following] Capell, Camb, Enter Rat Qq, Enter Ratcliffe Ff (aft 435)  
435 How news] Ff, omitted Qq aft 435 SCENE VI Pope 436  
Most mighty] Ff, My gracious Qq 437 our shores] Ff, the shore Qq  
443 Norfolk] Norff Qq 1-5

431 Steevens reads "shortly" as a trisyllable, which removes the metrical irregularity. Possibly, however, there is an intentional break in the line after "I go"

434 More's account of Elizabeth's behaviour is most unfavourable to her strength of character. Her conduct in the present scene is the result of Shakespeare's imagination, but it is highly probable that she succumbed to personal overtures by Richard, after her departure from sanctuary

shallow-changing woman] What ever knowledge Shakespeare had of the Latin classics, he hardly can have forgotten Virgil, *Aeneid*, iv 569, 570

441 hull] drift, float at the mercy of the wind, which drives the hull of the boat along without the aid of sails

For examples, see Nares s v, and Mr Luce's note on *Twelfth Night*, i v 217 *New Eng Dict* quotes Smith, *Seaman's Grammar*, "hull, which is to beare no saile. They call it hulling also in a calme swelling sea, which is comonly before a storme, when they strike their sailes lest she should beat them against the mast by rolling" Mr Craig notes from Frobenius, *Voyage*, 1578, p 121 "being then becalmed, and lying a hull openly upon the great bay"

443 light foot] light footed, as "venom" for "venomed," i iii 291 above *New Eng Dict* quotes Spenser, *Shepheards Calendar*, June, line 26 —

"And light-foote Nymphes, can chace the lingring night"

*Cates* Here, my good lord

*K Rich* Catesby, fly to the duke! 445

*Cates* I will, my lord, with all convenient haste

*K Rich* Ratcliff, come hither! post to Salisbury

When thou com'st thither,—[*To Catesby*] Dull, unmindful villain!

Why stay'st thou here, and go'st not to the duke?

*Cates* First, mighty liege, tell me your highness' pleasure, 450

What from your grace I shall deliver to him

*K Rich* O, true, good Catesby bid him levy straight

The greatest strength and power that he can make,

And meet me suddenly at Salisbury.

*Cates* I go [Exit 455

*Rat* What, may it please you, shall I do at Salisbury?

*K Rich* Why, what wouldst thou do there before I go?

*Rat* Your highness told me I should post before

*K Rich* My mind is chang'd.

445 good] Ff, omitted Qq *Catesby, fly*] Ff, *Flie* (new line) Qq 446, 447  
*Cates* I will hither] Ff, omitted Qq 447 *Ratcliff*] *Catesby* Ff  
 post] Ff, post thou Qq (continuing 445), [To Ratcliff] Post thou Camb 448  
 thither] Ff, there Qq [To Catesby] Rowe, Camb 449 stay'st] Ff,  
 standst Qq 1-3, 5, 6, 8, stands Qq 4, 7 here] Ff, still Qq 450 liege  
 . . pleasure] Ff, *Soueraigne, let me know your minde* Qq 451 to him]  
 Ff, them Qq 1, 2, him Qq 3-8 453 that] Ff, omitted Qq 454 suddenly]  
 Ff, *presenlie* Qq 455 *Cates* I go Exit] Ff, omitted Qq 456 What  
 shall I] Ff, *What is it your highnes pleasure, I shall* Qq 1-4, *What it is*  
*your* . . shall Q 5, *What is your* shall Qq 6-8 at Salisbury] new  
 line Camb (adopting Qq in 456) 459 My chang'd] Ff, *My mind is*  
*changd, sir, my minde is changd* Qq, *My mind is changed, sir, my mind is*  
*changed* Camb

445-49 The omissions in Qq, although, without stage-directions involving the presence of Ratcliff, they make imperfect sense, may have been due to the possible fact that, in this scene, at any rate, the parts of Ratcliff and Catesby were doubled by one player. Qq direction at line 435 seems to point to this. When Catesby went out at line 455, the same player might enter again as Ratcliff, or even go on with Ratcliff's part without retiring. Ff make Richard call for Catesby in line 447: this is probably an oversight, or a too

faithful following of an oversight in the original MS.

447 *Salisbury*] Richmond was off the south-western coast, close to Dorset. Richard hastened to Salisbury to prevent his junction with Buckingham's forces from the Welsh borders. Shakespeare makes nothing of the interval which elapsed between the failure of Buckingham and the ultimate success of Richmond. Buckingham's rebellion and Richmond's first attempt failed in October, 1483: it was not until August 1485, that Richmond set out on his successful voyage.

*Enter LORD STANLEY*

Stanley, what news with you?

*Stan* None good, my liege, to please you with the hearing, 460

Nor none so bad, but well may be reported

*K Rich* Hoyday! a riddle! neither good nor bad!

What need'st thou run so many miles about,

When thou may'st tell thy tale the nearest way?

Once more, what news?

*Stan* Richmond is on the seas 465

*K Rich* There let him sink, and be the seas on him!

White-liver'd runagate, what doth he there?

*Stan* I know not, mighty sovereign, but by guess

*K Rich* Well, as you guess?

*Stan* Stir'd up by Dorset, Buckingham, and Morton, 470

He makes for England, here to claim the crown

*Enter Lord Stanley*] Ff, *Enter Darbie* (aft 459) Qq *Stanley*] Ff, *How now* Qq 460 *None liege*] Theobald, *None, good my liege* Ff, *None good my Lord* Qq, *None good, my lord* Camb 461 *well reported*] Ff, *may well be told* Qq 462 *Hoyday*] *Heyday* Pope 463 *What need'st*] Ff, *Why doest* Qq *miles*] Ff, Qq 7, 8, *mile* Qq 1-6 464 *the nearest*] Ff, *a neerer* Qq 469 *Well, as you guess*] Ff, *Well sir, as you guesse, as you guesse* Qq 1-6, *Well, sir, as you guesse* Qq 7, 8 470 *Morton*] Ff, *Else* Qq 471 *here*] Ff, *there* Qq

460 *None good, my liege*] Theobald's punctuation is probably right. An antithesis is needed to "bad" in the next line.

462 *Hoyday*] Aldis Wright refers to *Troilus and Cressida*, v 1 73. See also *Timon of Athens*, i 11 137. Mr Craig furnishes an example from R Brome, *Covent Garden Weeded*, 1639 (ed Pearson, 1873, p 33) "*Hoyday, here's a din*".

467 *White-liver'd*] cowardly. Compare *Merchant of Venice*, iii 11 86, and see Mr Pooler's note.

*runagate*] A corruption of "renegade," from *renegatus* not a variant on "runaway." See *Cymbeline*, i vi 137. Aldis Wright explains it here as "vagabond", and it looks very much as if Shakespeare had used it here in the sense which does not belong to it etymologically. But Richmond would be also, in Richard's mind, a renegade to his true sovereign.

469 *as you guess*] The impatient repetition in Qq probably originated on the stage.

470, 471 The Bishop of Ely, after the fatal Council at the Tower (iii iv), was sent to Buckingham's castle at Brecon (see note on iv 11 121). There Buckingham found him, on his return from court. Buckingham was already disposed to rebellion by Richard's cavalier treatment of his deserts. The historians tell us the story of his journey. At Tewkesbury he came to the conclusion that he was "indubitate here of the house of Lancaster." But, between Worcester and Bridgenorth, he met the Countess of Richmond herself, on her way to the shrine of Our Lady at Worcester. He then remembered, that she and his mother were first cousins, and that the Countess was a daughter of the elder branch of the house of Beaufort. Thus his "earnest title" was "turned to a titell not so good as *Est Amen*", and he was prepared, under the influence of his prisoner at Brecon, to support the claim of Richmond to the throne. Morton heard his complaints with sympathy, and threw out plausible suggestions on his

*K Rich* Is the chair empty? is the sword unsway'd?  
 Is the king dead? the empire unpossess'd?  
 What heir of York is there alive but we?  
 And who is England's king but great York's heir? 475  
 Then tell me, what makes he upon the seas?

*Stan* Unless for that, my liege, I cannot guess

*K Rich* Unless for that he comes to be your liege,  
 You cannot guess wherefore the Welshman comes  
 Thou wilt revolt and fly to him, I fear 480

*Stan* No, my good lord, therefore mistrust me not

*K Rich* Where is thy power, then, to beat him back?  
 Where be thy tenants and thy followers?  
 Are they not now upon the western shore,  
 Safe-conducting the rebels from their ships? 485

*Stan* No, my good lord, my friends are in the north

*K Rich* Cold friends to me! what do they in the north,  
 When they should serve their sovereign in the west?

*Stan* They have not been commanded, mighty king  
 Pleaseth your majesty to give me leave, 490  
 I'll muster up my friends and meet your grace,  
 Where and what time your majesty shall please

*K Rich* Ay, ay, thou would'st be gone to join with Richmond,  
 But I'll not trust thee

*Stan* Most mighty sovereign,

476 makes he] Ff, doeth he Qq, makes him Hanmer seas] Ff, Q 8, sea  
 Qq 1 7 479 Welshman] Welchman Qq 4, 7, 8. 481 my good lord] Ff,  
 mightie liege Qq 483 be] Ff, are Qq 485 Safe conducting] hyphenated  
 Ff, Conducting safe Pope 487 me] Ff, Richard Qq 489 king] Ff,  
 souveraigns Qq 490 Pleaseth] Ff, Please it Qq 493 Ay, ay, thou  
 would'st] Qq, I, thou would'st Ff, Ay, thou would'st fain Pope 494 But  
 thee] Ff, I will not trust you Sir Qq Most] omitted Pope.

own side, so that "he rather seemed to follow him, than to lead him" The end of their conference was an agreement to further the marriage of Richmond with Elizabeth of York

479 *Welshman*] On his father's side Edmund of Hadham, Earl of Richmond, was the eldest son of Owen Tudor and Katharine, widow of Henry V

494-96. In spite of Stanley's asseverations, Richard's suspicions were fully justified. "When the said lord

Stanley would have departed into his countree to visit his familie, and to recreate and refresh his spirits (as he openlie said, but the truth was, to the intent to be in a perfect readinesse to receive the earle of Richmond at his first arrivall in England), the king in no wise would suffer him to depart, before he had left as an hostage in the court George Stanleye, lord Strange, his first begotten sonne and heire"

You have no cause to hold my friendship doubtful 495  
 I never was, nor never will be false  
*K Rich* Go then, and muster men; but leave behind  
 Your son George Stanley look your heart be firm,  
 Or else his head's assurance is but frail  
*Stan* So deal with him, as I prove true to you! [*Exit* 500

*Enter a Messenger*

*Mess* My gracious sovereign, now in Devonshire,  
 As I by friends am well advertised,  
 Sir Edward Courtney, and the haughty prelate,  
 Bishop of Exeter, his elder brother,  
 With many moe confederates, are in arms 505

496 *nor never*] *nor ever* Pope 497 *Go then, and*] *Ff, Well, go* Qq, Camb  
 puts *Well* in separate line *but*] *Ff, but heare you* Qq 498 *heart*] *Ff,*  
*fasth*] Qq 500 *Exit*] Qq 6-8, omitted Qq 1, 2, *Exit Dar* Qq 3-5, *Exit*  
*Stanley Ff* 503 *Edward*] *Ff, William* Qq, *Edmond* Pope 504 *elder*  
*brother*] *Ff, brother there* Qq 505 *moe*] *more* Qq 7, 8, *Ff* 2 4

498 *George Stanley*] Ferdinando, Lord Strange, was patron of the company by whom this play was produced, from 1588 to his death in 1594, two years after he had succeeded, as fifth earl, to the earldom of Derby. The repeated mention of his ancestor (see iv v 3, v iii 62, 96, 345-47, v v 9, 10 below), by whose preservation after Bosworth the unbroken succession of the house of Stanley was secured, was probably intended as a compliment to Lord Derby. "Young George Stanley" married the heiress of Lord Strange of Knocking, and thus brought the title of Strange into the family. He predeceased his father, and his son, the second Earl of Derby, was great-grandfather of the fifth earl, who left no male issue, and was succeeded by his brother William in 1594. After the death of the fifth earl, his company of players attached themselves to the service of the Lord Chamberlain, Henry Carey, Lord Hunsdon.

503, 504 Sir Edward Courtenay of Hacombe, descended from a younger son of the second Earl of Devon, was the head of the house of Courtenay. The direct line had failed in the three brothers, Thomas, sixth Earl of Devon,

Hugh, and John, who all fell victims to the house of York. Thomas was beheaded at York after Towton (1461), Hugh was beheaded at Salisbury (1466), and John fell at Tewkesbury (1471). Their kinsman Edward was created Earl of Devon on Henry VII's accession, and his son William married Katharine, daughter of Edward IV. Shakespeare followed More in the error of calling Peter Courtenay, Bishop of Exeter 1478-87, brother of Sir Edward that he was not his elder brother is obvious, as the Bishop did not die till 1492, when Edward was already earl. Peter Courtenay was son of Sir Philip Courtenay of Powderham, whose grandfather was sixth son of the second Earl. He was attainted by Richard III and fled to Brittany. Henry VII created him Lord Keeper, and, from 1487 to his death, he was Bishop of Winchester.

505 *moe*] Compare Q 1, line 200 above. "Moe" is usually taken as a comparative of number, "more" as a comparative of size. Here and in other passages, e.g. *Richard II* ii 1 239, *Merchant of Venice*, i 1 108, etc., it implies number. But Nares remarks that, in the sixteenth century, "*mo*," and *more*, were both used and it does

*Enter another Messenger*

*Sec Mess* In Kent, my liege, the Guildfords are in arms,  
And every hour more competitors  
Flock to the rebels, and their power grows strong

*Enter another Messenger*

*Third Mess* My lord, the army of great Buckingham—

*K Rich* Out on ye, owls! nothing but songs of death? 510

[*He striketh him*

There, take thou that, till thou bring better news!

*Third Mess* The news I have to tell your majesty

Is, that by sudden floods and fall of waters,

506 *In Kent, my liege*] Ff, *My Liege, in Kent* Qq 507 *more*] still more  
Pope 508 *the rebels* strong] Ff, *their aide, and still their power*  
*increaseth* Qq 509 *great*] Ff, *the Duke of* Qq 510 *ye*] Qq 68, Ff,  
you Qq 1-5 *He striketh him*] Ff, aft 509 Qq. 511 *There* till thou]  
Ff, *Take that untill thou* Qq 1-5, *Take that untill* you Qq 68 *bring*] Ff,  
*bring me* Qq 512, 513 *The news* . *majesty is*] Ff, *Your grace mistakes,*  
*the news I bring is good, My newes is* (two lines) Qq 513 *floods*] Ff, *flood*  
Qq *waters*] Ff, *water* Qq

not appear why one or other was preferred in any particular passage, unless when it favoured a rhyme." Ff reading in line 200 countenances this statement, and compare line 507 below. See Mr Deighton's note on *Timon of Athens*, I i 41 [44].

506 *the Guildfords*] Sir Richard Guildford of Hempstead, near Cranbrook, was son of Sir John Guildford, Comptroller of the Household to Edward IV. Henry VII made him Comptroller of his Household. His grand daughter became Duchess of Northumberland, and mother of Lord Guildford Dudley, the husband of Lady Jane Grey.

507 *competitors*] associates, confederates. Mr Luce quotes this passage in illustration of *Twelfth Night*, IV ii 12. The meaning is double in *Two Gentlemen of Verona*, II vi 35. See also *Antony and Cleopatra*, I. iv. 3, II. vii 76.

512-16 Buckingham's expedition was without fortunate omens. His fellow-conspirator, Morton, took advantage of his semi-liberty to escape to Flanders, before the Duke had got his company together. The enrolment of the "great

power of wild Welshmen" was effected by compulsion, "which thing was the venge occasion why they left him desolate, & cowardlie forsooke him." In spite of the great storm which flooded the West of England the day before he set up his standard at Brecon, he made his way to Weobley, and thence marched through the Forest of Dean towards Gloucester, where he intended to cross the Severn and join the Courtenays in the West. But the river was in flood, and his passage cut off. The flood, remembered long afterwards as "the duke of Buckingham's great water," lasted ten days, and, on a march attended by delay, the Welshmen deserted their leader. Buckingham fled up the west bank of the Severn to Shrewsbury, near which he took refuge with his trusted servant, Humphrey or Ralph Banaster. His allies gave way to panic, and their leaders escaped into Brittany. Richard's proclamation for the apprehension of Buckingham was dated from Leicester, and Banaster betrayed his master, for the reward of a thousand pounds, a few days after, to the sheriff of Shropshire.

Buckingham's army is dispers'd and scatter'd,  
 And he himself wander'd away alone, 515  
 No man knows whither

*K Rich* I cry thee mercy  
 There is my purse to cure that blow of thine  
 Hath any well-advised friend proclaim'd  
 Reward to him that brings the traitor in?  
*Thrd Mess* Such proclamation hath been made, my lord 520

*Enter another Messenger*

*Fourth Mess* Sir Thomas Lovel and Lord Marquess Dorset,  
 'Tis said, my liege, in Yorkshire are in arms  
 But this good comfort bring I to your highness  
 The Breton navy is dispers'd by tempest,  
 Richmond in Dorsetshire sent out a boat 525  
 Unto the shore, to ask those on the banks  
 If they were his assistants, yea or no,  
 Who answer'd him, they came from Buckingham

514 Buckingham's] Ff, The Duke of Buckingham's Qq 515, 516 wander'd  
 away alone, No] Ff, fled, no Qq 516 I mercy] Ff, O I crye you mercie,  
 I did mistake Qq 517 There thine] Ff, Ratchiffe reward him, for the  
 blow I gaue him Qq 518 proclaim'd] Ff, giuen out Qq 519 Reward  
 to him] F, Riewardes for him Qq the traitor in] Ff, in Buckingham Qq  
 520 lord] Ff, liege Qq 522 in Yorkshire are in arms] Ff, are vp in armes  
 Qq 523 But] Ff, Yet Qq highness] Ff, grace Qq 524 Breton]  
 Capell, Brittain Qq, Ff 1, 2, Britain Ff 3, 4, Bretagne Theobald 524-26  
 dispers'd by tempest banks] Ff, disperst, Richmond in Dorshire Sent out a  
 boate to aske them on the shore (two lines) Qq

518 well advised] This may mean  
 (1) prudent compare "be advis'd," II  
 1 107, or (2) with satisfactory information,  
 as *Henry V* II prol 12

521 See note on lines 314-17 above  
 as to the historic order of Dorset's  
 movements His life "by the onelie  
 helpe of sir Thomas Louell was pre-  
 serued from all danger & perill in this  
 troublous world" He probably led  
 his Yorkshiresmen to the rendezvous  
 appointed by Buckingham and the  
 Courtenays

524-30 Richmond's navy of forty  
 ships, bearing "an armie of five  
 thousand manlie Britons," set sail on  
 12th October, 1483 Towards night, a  
 tempest—the storm so fatal to Bucking-  
 ham on shore—arose "The ships  
 were disparkled, seuered & separated

asunder" some were driven back to  
 Brittany, some to Normandy Rich-  
 mond's ship, "associat onelie with one  
 other barke," found itself next morning  
 off Poole Harbour The whole shore  
 was garrisoned by soldiers, who told  
 Richmond's messengers that they were  
 an advance-guard deputed by Bucking-  
 ham, the Duke himself being, with the  
 bulk of his army, not far off Richmond  
 was not deceived, and, seeing none of  
 his fleet in the neighbourhood, returned,  
 with a favourable breeze, to France He  
 landed in Normandy, stayed there for  
 three days, and then, under safe-conduct  
 from Charles VIII, made his way over-  
 land into Brittany  
 526 banks] shore So *Merchant of  
 Venice*, v 1 11, and see for a parallel  
 Mr Pooler's note

Upon his party he, mistrusting them,  
 Hois'd sail, and made his course again for Bretagne 530  
*K Rich* March on, march on, since we are up in arms!  
 If not to fight with foreign enemies,  
 Yet to beat down these rebels here at home

*Re-enter CATESBY*

*Cates* My liege, the Duke of Buckingham is taken,  
 That is the best news that the Earl of Richmond 535  
 Is with a mighty power landed at Milford,  
 Is colder news, but yet they must be told  
*K Rich* Away towards Salisbury! while we reason here,  
 A royal battle might be won and lost  
 Some one take order Buckingham be brought 540  
 To Salisbury, the rest march on with me

*[Flourish. Exeunt]*

530 *his course* Bretagne] *his course* Brittain Ff, away for Brit  
 taine Qq, away for Brittany Camb 535 That is] Ff, That's Qq 537  
 news] Qq 6 8, Ff, tidings Qq 1 5 but yet] Ff, yet Qq they must] it  
 must Rowe 541 Flourish] F 1, omitted Qq, Ff 2 4 Exeunt] Q 1,  
 Ff, omitted Qq 2 8

530 *Hois'd* "Halsed" is the word employed by the chroniclers. "To hoise" = to lift, hoist, heave away Compare *The Tempest*, I ii 148, Greene, *Mena phon*, 1589 (Arber, 58) "Eurilochus awaited no farther parley, but willed his men perforce to *hoise* him a ship board", Hall, *Virgideumorum* 1598, iv iv 58 —

"Or *hoyseth* sail up to a forraine shore,

That he may live a lawlesse conqueror"

534-37 See notes on lines 447, 471 above Buckingham was taken at Shrewsbury in October, 1483 Richmond set sail from Harfleur early in August, 1485, and landed at Milford Haven about a week later His "mighty power" this time consisted of only two thousand men

536 *Milford*] See *Cymbeline*, III ii 61.

SCENE V —*Lord Derby's house*

*Enter* DERBY and SIR CHRISTOPHER URSWICK

*Der* Sir Christopher, tell Richmond this from me,

That in the sty of the most deadly boar

My son George Stanley is frank'd up in hold

If I revolt, off goes young George's head,

The fear of that holds off my present aid

5

So, get thee gone commend me to thy lord

Withal say that the queen hath heartily consented

He should espouse Elizabeth her daughter

But tell me, where is princely Richmond now?

*Chris* At Pembroke, or at Ha'rford-west, in Wales

10

SCENE I ] Capell, *Scena Quarta* Ff, SCENE VII Pope Lord Derby's house ]  
*Lord Stanley's House* Hammer Enter Derby] Enter Lord Stanley Pope,  
Theobald Urrswick ] Theobald 2 the most deadly] Ff, this most bloudie  
Qq, the most bloody Collier 5 holds off] Ff, with holdes Qq 6 8 So,  
get daughter] Ff, substantially in Qq aft 18 6 So, get lord] Ff,  
Retourne unto thy Lord, commend me to him Qq, Well, his thee to thy lord,  
commend me to him Capell 7 Withal say that] Ff, Tell him Qq, Say, too,  
Pope 8 should] Ff, shall Qq 10 Pembroke] Pembroke Ff 1, 2,  
Penbrook F 3 Ha'rford-west] Capell, Harford west Q 1, Herford-west  
Qq 2, 5, Hertford west Qq 3, 4, Hertford west Qq 6, 7, Hertford West Ff,  
Hertford, west Q 8

1 *Sir Christopher*] For "Sir" applied to a priest, compare III 11 109 above Urrswick was sent into Brittany by the Countess of Richmond in 1483. He seems to have been recalled at the last moment, and Hugh Conway sent instead, as a "personage of more estimation than her chapleins." Richard Guildford sent an envoy from Kent with the same instructions, in case Conway were taken captive at Plymouth. Here Shakespeare continues to weld together the events of 1483 and 1485. George Stanley's detention belongs also to 1483.

2, 3 For the metaphor, see notes on "rooting hog," I 11 228, and "frank'd up," I 11 314.

6-8 These lines are misplaced in Qq, probably owing to the care of an editor, who thought that the words of farewell came prematurely, before the bulk of the conversation.

10-18 Richmond landed at Dale, at the north-west corner of Milford Haven, and, at sunrise the next day,

marched to Haverfordwest, where he was received with joy. Here he heard that the men of Pembroke were ready to follow his uncle, Jasper of Hatfield, "their naturall and immediate lord", but also that his expected ally, Rhys ap Thomas, was going to join Richard's party. With increased forces, he went on to Cardigan, not without fear of Sir Walter Herbert, who was said to be at Carmarthen "with a great crue of men," and with doubtful intentions. As he advanced through Wales to the passage of the Severn at Shrewsbury, these fears proved groundless. Welsh gentlemen joined him, and Rhys ap Thomas, who probably had dallied between the two parties, swore fealty to him, if he had not sworn it before, in return for a promise of the governorship of Wales. At Newport in Shropshire, he was joined by Sir Gilbert Talbot, at Stafford, by Sir William Stanley, his step-father's brother, and so, "his power increasing," he marched forward to Lichfield. Stanley, with

*Der* What men of name resort to him?

*Chris* Sir Walter Herbert, a renowned soldier,  
 Sir Gilbert Talbot, Sir William Stanley,  
 Oxford, redoubted Pembroke, Sir James Blunt,  
 And Rice ap Thomas, with a valiant crew, 15  
 And many other of great name and worth  
 And towards London do they bend their power,  
 If by the way they be not fought withal

*Der* Well, hie thee to thy lord, I kiss his hand  
 My letter will resolve him of my mind 20  
 Farewell [Exeunt

15 *And Rice ap Thomas*] Ff, *Rice vp Thomas* Qq 1-5, *Rice ap Thomas* Q 6  
 16 *And*] Ff, *With* Qq *other*] Ff, *mos* Qq 1 6, *more* Qq 7, 8, *others* Warburton  
*great name*] Ff, *noble fame* Qq 17 *do they*] Ff, *they do* Qq *power*] Ff,  
*course* Qq 19 *Well* *hand*] Ff, Qq substantially as 6 8 above (see notes  
 thereon) 20 *My letter*] Ff, *These letters* Qq, *Those letters* Capell

nearly five thousand men, had been at Lichfield, but, on Richmond's arrival, "to avoid all suspicion on king Richard's part," moved further up the London road to Atherstone. Oxford and Sir James Blunt had come from France with Richmond. Sir James had been Oxford's gaoler at the castle of Hammes, since, in Edward IV's reign, the Earl had rebelled, and had been taken at St Michael's Mount by Sir John Fortescue. Now Oxford,

Fortescue, and Blunt found themselves all on the same side. Stanley's conduct, though not ingenuous, was naturally guided by his fear for his son George's life, and it was not till the day of Bosworth that he openly declared himself, although, at a private interview with Richmond "in a little close" at Atherstone, he consulted with him as to the means of giving battle to Richard.

## ACT V

### SCENE I — *Salisbury An open place*

*Enter the SHERIFF, and BUCKINGHAM, with halberds, led  
to execution*

*Buck* Will not King Richard let me speak with him?

*Sher* No, my good lord, therefore be patient

*Buck* Hastings, and Edward's children, Grey, and Rivers,

Holy king Henry, and thy fair son Edward,

Vaughan, and all that have miscarried 5

By under-hand corrupted foul injustice,

If that your moody discontented souls

Do through the clouds behold this present hour,

Even for revenge mock my destruction!

This is All-Souls' day, fellow, is it not? 10

*Sher* It is

*Buck* Why then, All-Souls' day is my body's doomsday

This is the day which, in King Edward's time,

I wish'd might fall on me, when I was found

*Salisbury*] Pope *An open place*] Capell *Enter the Sheriff and Buck*  
*ingham*] Rowe, *Enter Buckingham* Qq, Ff *with halberds*] Ff, omitted Qq  
2 *Sher*] Ff, *Rat* Qq (and so 11) *good*] Ff, omitted Qq 3 *Grey,*  
*and Rivers*] Ff, *Rivers, Gray* Qq 6 *corrupted foul*] Ff, *corrupted, foule* Qq  
10 *fellow*] Ff, *fellows* Qq 11 *It is*] Ff, *It is my Lord* Qq 12 *Why*  
*doomsday*] omitted Pope 13 *which*] Ff, *that* Qq

1 Buckingham was brought to Salisbury after his capture at Shrewsbury. There he confessed the whole conspiracy, "trusting, because he had truelie and plainelie reuealed and confessed all things that were of him required, that he should haue licence to speake to the king which (whether it were to sue for pardon and grace, or whether he being brought to his presence, would haue sticked him with

a dagger as men then iudged) he sore desired and required." His request was in vain, and "vpon All soules daie, without arreigment or iudgement, he was at Salisburie, in the open market place, on a new scaffold, beheaded and put to death." Of Buckingham's possible intention of killing Richard, Shakespeare speaks in *Henry VIII.* 1. 1. 193-99.

False to his children and his wife's allies 15  
 This is the day wherein I wish'd to fall  
 By the false faith of him whom most I trusted.  
 This, this All-Souls' day to my fearful soul  
 Is the determin'd re-pite of my wrongs  
 That high All-seer, which I dallied with, 20  
 Hath turn'd my feigned prayer on my head,  
 And giv'n in earnest what I begg'd in jest  
 Thus doth he force the swords of wicked men  
 To turn their own points in their masters' bosoms  
 Thus Margaret's curse falls heavy on my neck 25  
 "When he," quoth she, "shall split thy heart with sorrow,  
 Remember Margaret was a prophetess"  
 Come, lead me, officers, to the block of shame,  
 Wrong hath but wrong, and blame the due of blame  
[Exeunt

SCENE II.—*The camp near Tamworth*

*Enter* RICHMOND, OXFORD, BLUNT, HFRBFRT, *and others,*  
*with drum and colours*

*Richm* Fellows in arms, and my most loving friends,  
 Bruis'd underneath the yoke of tyranny,

15 *and*] Ff, Q 8, or Qq 17 17, *whom* trusted] Ff, *I trusted* most  
 Qq, 18 *This* soul] omitted Pope 19 *respice*] *despite* Qq 7, 8,  
*respect* Warburton 20 *which*] Ff, *that* Qq, *whom* Capell 23 *swords*] Ff,  
*sword*] Qq 3 8 24 *own*] omitted Qq 3-8 25] Ff, *on* Qq *bosoms*] Ff,  
*bosome* Qq 25 *Thus*] Ff, *Now* Qq *falls* neck] Ff, *is fallen upon*  
*my head* Qq, *falls* head Pope 28 *lead me, officers*] Ff, *sirs, convey*  
*me* Qq 29 *Exeunt*] *Exeunt* Buckingham *with Officers* Ff, omitted Qq

Scene II

*The camp near Tamworth*] Hanmer, Camb *Enter* colours ] Ff,  
*Enter Richmond with drums and trumpets* Qq

19 *the determin'd respite of my* act would have thus "a more full and  
*wrongs*] the time to which the punish- striking conclusion, and the fifth act  
 ment of my evil practices was respited will comprise the business of the impor-  
 (Johnson, following Hanmer) For tant day, which put an end to the com-  
 "wrongs" in this sense, compare petition of York and Lancaster "  
*Midsummer-Night's Dream*, II i. 240  
 24 *in*] into. Compare III vii 128  
 above

Scene II

29 Johnson wished to add this scene 1. *The camp near Tamworth*] Rich-  
 to the foregoing act, abandoning a monnd's army moved up a line parallel  
 division due "to the judgment or cap to Watling Street from Lichfield to  
 rice of the first editors" The fourth Tamworth, while Stanley, pretending

Thus far into the bowels of the land  
 Have we march'd on without impediment,  
 And here receive we from our father Stanley 5  
 Lines of fair comfort and encouragement  
 The wretched, bloody, and usurping boar,  
 That spoil'd your summer fields and fruitful vines,  
 Swills your warm blood like wash, and makes his trough  
 In your embowell'd bosoms—this foul swine 10  
 Is now even in the centre of this isle,  
 Near to the town of Leicester, as we learn

8 *summer fields*] Ff, *somer fieldes* Q 1, *summer-fields* Q 2, *sommer-field* Qq  
 3-8 10 *embowell'd*] Ff, *unboweld* or *imboweld* Qq 11 *Is*] Ff, *Lies* Qq  
*centre*] Centry F 1 12 *Near*] Ne're F 1

fight, lay in front of them at Atherstone Richard was at this time in Nottingham or at the royal park of Bestwood, close by Between Lichfield and Tamworth, Richmond was joined by Sir Walter Hungerford and Sir Thomas Bourchier, who had deserted from Brakenbury's forces at Stony Stratford. The army arrived at Tamworth without Richmond, who had lingered behind them, distressed by moody doubts, and, losing his way as evening fell, had spent the night in nervous anxiety at a small village. He rejoined his troops next morning, characteristically explaining his absence as designed "to receive some glad message from certeine of his pruiue friends and secret allies." The next day he made another lonely journey to Atherstone, where he met his step-father (see note on iv v 10-18 above)

3 *bowels*] centre Mr Craig notes Gilbert, *Voyage*, 1583 (Payn, *English Voyagers*, p 175) "Many voyages have been pretended, yet hitherto never any throughout accomplished by our nation of exact discovery into the *bowels* of those ample and vast nations"

5, 6 Probably an allusion to the "glad message," which (see note on line 1) Richmond had made the excuse for his separation from his army near Tamworth. The chroniclers make no mention of a definite communication from Stanley, but Sir William Stanley, on joining Richmond at Stafford, must have made his brother's plans clear

6, 7 Shakespeare may have remem-

bered the figure of the vine in Psalm lxxx "The wild boar out of the field doth root it up and the wild beasts of the field devour it"

9 *Swills*] Malone and Aldis Wright remark on the change of tense from past to present, "not uncommon in animated description." But the sense of the passage requires the change. What Richmond says is the boar, who in time past destroyed your summer fields and fruitful vines (i.e. the young princes and the whole royal stock), is now turning against you yourselves, and is swilling your own blood in the very bowels of the land. Lines 10, 11 further explain the metaphor. The past tense of "spoil'd" in line 8 requires that "summer fields and fruitful vines" should refer to that royal "harvest" (11 u 116) which Richard had laid waste, and not to the material crops which his march from Nottingham was endangering. See another metaphor drawn from the harvest in line 15 below

*wash*] Mr Craig notes from Cotgrave, "Lavailles swillings, hog's wash, washings for swine"

10 *embowell'd*] The same as "disembowell'd," or, in legal language, "drawn." Compare *I Henry IV* v iv 109

12 *Leicester*] Richard arrived in Leicester from Nottingham, where he had resided much during 1484 and 1485. On 20th August "he (inuirowed with his gard), with a frowning countenance and cruell visage, mounted on a great white courser, and followed with his

From Tamworth thither is but one day's march  
 In God's name, cheerly on, courageous friends,  
 To reap the harvest of perpetual peace  
 By this one bloody trial of sharp war ! 15  
*Of* Every man's conscience is a thousand men,  
 To fight against this guilty homicide  
*Herb* I doubt not but his friends will turn to us  
*Blunt* He hath no friends but what are friends for fear, 20  
 Which in his dearest need will fly from him  
*Richm* All for our vantage Then, in God's name, march !  
 True hope is swift, and flies with swallow's wings,  
 Kings it makes Gods, and meaner creatures kings  
 [Exeunt.]

SCENE III — *Bosworth Field*

*Enter KING RICHARD in arms, with NORFOLK, the EARL OF SURREY, and others*

*K Rich* Here pitch our tent, even here in Bosworth field  
 My Lord of Surrey, why look you so sad ?

14 *cheerly*] Q 1, Ff, *cheers* Qq 2-8 17 *Oxf*] Ff, 1 *Lo* Qq *men*] Ff,  
*swordes* Qq. 18 *this guilty*] Ff, *that bloudie* Qq 19 *Herb*] *Her* Ff,  
 2 *Lo* Qq *turn*] Ff, *flie* Qq 20 *Blunt*] Ff, 3 *Lo* Qq *what*] Ff,  
 Q 8, *who* Qq 17 21 *dearest*] Ff, *greatest* Qq *fly*] Ff, *shrinks* Qq  
 24. *makes*] Qq 6-8, Ff, *make* Qq 1-5. *Exeunt*] *Exeunt Omnes* Ff, *Exit*  
 Q 1, omitted Qq 2-8

## Scene III

SCENE III] *Pope Bosworth Field*] *Pope Enter others*] *Camb*,  
*Enter King Richard, Norfolke, Ratcliffe, Catesbie, with others* Qq, *Enter*  
*King Richard in Armes, with Norfolke, Ratcliffe, and the Earle of Surrey* Ff  
 1 *tent*] *tenies* Qq 2 *My Surrey*] Ff, *Whse, how now Catesbie* Qq  
*look you*] Ff, *lookst thou* Qq *sad*] *bad* Q 1

footmen, the wings of horssemen coast-  
 ing and ranging on euerie side, and  
 keeping this arraie, he with great  
 pompe entered the towne of Leicester  
 after the sunne set "

## Scene III.

*Bosworth Field*] Richard marched  
 westward from Leicester "to a place  
 meet for two battels to incounter, by a  
 village called Bosworth, and there he  
 pitched his field on a hill called Anne  
 Beame [Ambien], refreshed his soul  
 diers, and tooke his rest " Richard's

camp seems actually to have been  
 pitched about three miles south of  
 Market Bosworth. Ambien Hill lay  
 between him and Richmond, who,  
 marching eastwards from Atherstone,  
 had encamped at White Moors, about  
 the same distance S.W. of Bosworth.  
 Lord Stanley lay south of the ground  
 between the armies, while Sir William  
 Stanley was opposite him, on the north.  
 "Thus there were four hosts placed as  
 regards one another not unlike whist  
 players " (Gardner, p. 235)

2 *My Lord of Surrey*] The explana-  
 tion of Qq reading lies probably in the

*Sur* My heart is ten times lighter than my looks

*K Rich* My Lord of Norfolk!

*Nor* Here, most gracious liege

*K Rich* Norfolk, we must have knocks ha! must we not? 5

*Nor* We must both give and take, my loving lord

*K Rich* Up with my tent! here will I lie to-night.

But where to-morrow? Well all's one for that

Who hath descried the number of the traitors?

*Nor* Six or seven thousand is their utmost power 10

*K Rich* Why, our battalia trebles that account

Besides, the king's name is a tower of strength,

Which they upon the adverse faction want

Up with the tent! Come, noble gentlemen,

Let us survey the vantage of the ground 15

Call for some men of sound direction

Let's lack no discipline, make no delay,

For, lords, to-morrow is a busy day [Exeunt

3 *Sur*] Ff, *Cat* Qq 4 *K Rich* My Lord *liege*] Ff, *King* *Nor-*  
*folke, come hither* Qq 5 *K Rich*] Ff, omitted Qq *Norfolk* *not*] one  
line as Qq, *Norfolke* *knocks* *Ha* *not* 2 (two lines) Ff 6 *loving*]  
Ff, *gracious* Qq 7 *here*] Ff, Qq 7, 8, *there, here* Qq 1-6 8 *all's*]  
Ff, *all is* Qq 9 *traitors*] Ff, *foe* Qq 10 *utmost power*] Ff, *greatest*  
*number* Qq 11 *battalia*] Ff, *battalion* or *battarlon* Qq 13 *faction*] Ff,  
*partie* Qq *want*] *went* Ff 14 *the tent! Come, noble*] Ff, *my tent there,*  
*valiant* Qq 15 *ground*] Ff, *field* Qq 17 *lack*] Ff, *want* Qq

scarcity of actors, and the consequent suppression of this immaterial part in the stage version of the play

5 *knocks*] Compare *Henry V* III II 3, 8

8 This line probably ought to be marked "aside"

11 *battalia*] There is no reason for altering this word to "battalion" It is the same word as "battle," of which we have noted a possible example in I III 130 above, and see below, line 24, with which compare the passage quoted in the note on "Bosworth Field" at the beginning of this scene "Battalion" is, strictly speaking, the more correct term for an army in order of battle Machiavelli, *Arte della Guerra*, lib II, uses *battaglione* as equivalent to the Roman legion, and

*battaglia* to the subdivision of the legion, the cohort "Io voglio che noi dividiamo il nostro battaglione in dieci battaglie" Compare Berners' *Froissart*, I 18 "There was ordained three great battles afoot, and to every battle two wings of five hundred men of arms," etc

16 *men of sound direction*] men, as Mr Craig ("Little Quarto" ed, p 265) explains it, of sound capacity in direction Compare *Henry V* III II 68, 76, etc, *Othello*, I III 300, II III 128, for "direction" in the sense of military command *New Eng Dict* quotes Massinger, *Bashful Lover*, 1655, II 4 —

"The enemy must say we were not wanting

In courage or direction"

Compare I *Henry IV* IV III 17

*Enter, on the other side of the field, RICHMOND, SIR WILLIAM BRANDON, OXFORD, and others. Some of the soldiers pitch Richmond's tent*

*Ruim* The weary sun hath made a golden set,  
 And by the bright tract of his fiery car 20  
 Gives token of a goodly day to-morrow.  
 Sir William Brandon, you shall bear my standard  
 Give me some ink and paper in my tent  
 I'll draw the form and model of our battle,  
 Limit each leader to his several charge, 25  
 And part in just proportion our small power  
 My Lord of Oxford, you, Sir William Brandon,  
 And you, Sir Walter Herbert, stay with me  
 The Earl of Pembroke keeps his regiment  
 Good Captain Blunt, bear my good-night to him, 30

aft 18 *Scene changes to another part of Bosworth field* Theobald *Enter*  
*tent* [Camb (fr Capell), *Enter Richmond with the Lordes &c* Qq, 2 *Enter*  
*Richmond, Sir William Brandon, Oxford, and Dorset* Ff 19 *set*] If, *sete*  
 Q 1, *seate* Qq 2-5, *seat* Qq 6-8 20 *tract*] Ff, *tracks* Qq 21 *token*]  
 Ff, *signall* Qq 22 *Sir you*] Ff, *Where is Sir*, *he* Qq 23 26  
*Give power*] as Ff, see aft 44 for Qq 26 *power*] Ff, *strength* Qq  
 27, 28 *My Lord . me*] Ff, omitted Qq. 28 *you*] *your* F 1. 29  
*keeps*] Ff, *keeps* Qq

20 *tract*] trace Compare *Timon of Athens*, I i 50, on which Mr Deighton remarks that there is no etymological connection between "tract" and "track" The verb "to tract" is not uncommon See Greene, *Orlando Furioso* (Dyce, 90) —

"when bright Phoebus mounteth up  
 his coach,  
 And *tracts* Aurora in her silver  
 steps",

Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, II vi 39 —

"As Shepheards curre, that in darke  
 eveninges shade  
 Hath *tracted* forth some salvage  
 beastes trade"

Spenser also uses the substantive, *ibid*  
 VI xii 22

*fiery car*] Shakespeare's references to the car of Phoebus were doubtless derived from the description in Golding's *Ovid*, book 2 See *Cymbeline*, v v 190, *Antony and Cleopatra*, IV viii 29

29 *The Earl of Pembroke*] Richmond's uncle, Jasper of Hatfield,

second son of Owen Tudor and Queen Katherine He was created Earl of Pembroke in 1453, and, on Henry VII's accession, Duke of Bedford Always faithful to the house of Lancaster, he had presented his nephew Richmond, when a boy of ten, to Henry VI, and, after Tewkesbury, had taken him to Brittany He aided his nephew in his earlier attempt on England, and it was in his country that Henry made his successful landing at Milford There seems to be no account of his conduct at Bosworth in any of the primary authorities for the story of the battle

*keeps*] Compare Beaumont and Fletcher, *Woman Hater*, IV 2 "I will retire henceforth, and *keep* my chamber, live privately, and die forgotten", Fletcher, *Wit without Money*, I i "And tho' I have no state, I *keep* the streets still" Shakespeare several times uses the verb intransitively, e.g. *Troilus and Cressida*, IV v 278

And by the second hour in the morning  
 Desire the earl to see me in my tent  
 Yet one thing more, good captain, do for me—  
 Where is Lord Stanley quarter'd, do you know?

*Blunt* Unless I have mista'en his colours much, 35  
 Which well I am assur'd I have not done,  
 His regiment lies half a mile at least  
 South from the mighty power of the king

*Richm* If without peil it be possible,  
 Sweet Blunt, make some good means to speak with him, 40  
 And give him from me this most needful note

*Blunt* Upon my life, my lord, I'll undertake it,  
 And so God give you quiet rest to-night!

*Richm* Good night, good Captain Blunt Come, gentlemen,  
 Let us consult upon to-morrow's business 45  
 Into my tent! the dew is raw and cold

[*They withdraw into the tent*]

*Enter to his tent, KING RICHARD, NORFOLK, RATCLIFF,  
 CATESBY, and others*

*K Rich* What is't o'clock?

*Cat* It's supper-time, my lord, it's nine o'clock

33 captain me] Ff, *Blunt before thou goest* Qq 34 do you] Ff,  
 doest thou Qq 35 colours] quarters Warburton 37 lies] let Qq 3, 5,  
 hath Qq 4, 6-8 40 Sweet him] Ff, *Good captainne Blunt beare my*  
 good night to him Qq 41 note] Ff, *scrowle* Qq 42 life] selfe Ff 2 4  
 43. And to night!] Ff, omitted Qq 44 Good gentlemen] Good  
*Blunt Come Gentlemen* (two lines) Ff, *Farewell good Blunt* Qq aft  
 44 Qq insert 23 26, omitted above 45 Let us] Ff, *Come, let vs* Qq 46 my]  
 Ff, our Qq *They withdraw*] Ff, omitted Qq aft 46 *Scene*  
*changes back to King Richard's tent* Theobald to his tent] Capell, Camb  
 and others] &c Qq 1, 2, omitted Qq 3-8, Ff 47 is't o'clock] is't a Clocke Ff,  
 is a clocke Qq 48 It's o'clock] Ff, *It is size of [of the Qq 3-8] clocke,*  
 full supper time Qq, It's lord, It's o'clock Pope (continuing 47)

40 make some good means] contrive  
 some good opportunity So *All's Well*  
*that Ends Well*, v 1 35, and see *Two*  
*Gentlemen of Verona*, II vii 5, *Merry*  
*Wives of Windsor*, II ii 189

48 nine o'clock] Steevens preferred  
 Qq reading with the just criticism that  
 "a supper at so late an hour as nine  
 o'clock, in the year 1485, would have  
 been a prodigy" Aldis Wright  
 recognises, however, that the time is

after sunset on 21st August, and adopts  
 Ff reading Nares quotes Harrison,  
*Description of England*, 1577 "With  
 us, the nobilitie, gentrie, and students  
 doo ordinarilie go to dinner at eleven  
 before noone, and to supper at five,  
 or between five and sixe at afternoone"  
 It is, perhaps, unnecessary to add that,  
 after a day's march and the subsequent  
 encampment, supper would probably  
 be deferred considerably

- K Rich* I will not sup to-night  
 Give me some ink and paper 50  
 What, is my beaver easier than it was?  
 And all my armour laid into my tent?  
*Cat* It is, my liege, and all things are in readiness.  
*K Rich* Good Norfolk, hie thee to thy charge,  
 Use careful watch, choose trusty sentinels 55  
*Nor* I go, my lord.  
*K Rich* Stir with the lark to-morrow, gentle Norfolk  
*Nor* I warrant you, my lord [Exit  
*K Rich* Catesby!  
*Cates* My lord?  
*K. Rich* Send out a pursuivant at arms 60  
 To Stanley's regiment bid him bring his power  
 Before sun-rising, lest his son George fall  
 Into the blind cave of eternal night [Exit Catesby  
 Fill me a bowl of wine Give me a watch

49, 50. *I to night Give paper* two lines as *lf* one line in *Qq*  
 54 *charge*] *charge, away* Capell 55 *sentinels*] *Sentinels* *lf*, *centinell* *Qq*  
 58. *Exit*] *lf*, omitted *Qq* 59 *Catesby*] *Qq*, *Ratcliffe* *lf* 60 *Cates*] *Pope, Rat* *Qq*, *lf* 63 *Exit Catesby*] *Camb*, omitted *Qq*, *lf* 64 *To*  
*Ratcliffe* *Pope, To Catesby* Capell *watch*] *watch light* Keightley conj

51 *beaver*] properly the face guard of the helmet, as *Hamlet*, I ii. 230, 2 *Henry IV* iv i 120 Knight, and, after him, Fairholt, *Costume in England*, (ed Dillon, ii 45), figure an armet, or helmet with removable beaver, of the time of Philip and Mary "In ordinary helmets, the beaver, when up, displays the face, but to do that, it falls down to the chin" (Fairholt) The earliest example in England is said to be the beaver in the effigy of Thomas, Duke of Clarence (d 1421), in St Michael's Chapel of Canterbury Cathedral In this passage the beaver is probably used for the whole helmet. Compare *Henry IV* iv i 104

63 Compare the phrase used by Queen Elizabeth, II ii. 46 above The occurrence of this Marlowe like and grandiloquent image in the midst of so much action and plainness of speech is rather noticeable Both passages recall similar phrases in the Senecan plays—e.g. *Medea* 740 Et

Chaos cæcum, atque opacam Ditis umbrosi domum [precor], *ibid* 9 Noctis æternæ chaos Adversa superis regna, *Herc Fur* 610 noctis æternæ chaos 64 *watch*] a watch light or candle Steevens says, in answer to a doubt of Johnson's as to whether line 77 does not contain a repetition of this order "A watch, i.e. guard, would certainly be placed about the royal tent, without any request of the king concerning it I believe, therefore, that particular kind of candle is here meant, which was anciently called a *watch*, because, being marked out into sections, each of which was a certain portion of time in burning, it supplied the place of the more modern instrument by which we measure the hours" Mr. Craig gives a reference ("Little Quarto" ed p 258) to an example from Decker, *Bel-Man of London* (Smeaton, 90) "I that all this while had stood in a corner (like a watching candle) to see all their villanies"

Saddle white Surrey for the field to-morrow 65

Look that my staves be sound, and not too heavy

Ratcliff!

Rat My lord?

K *Rich* Saw'st thou the melancholy Lord Northumberland?

Rat Thomas the Earl of Surrey, and himself, 70

Much about cock-shut time, from troop to troop

Went through the army, cheering up the soldiers.

K *Rich* So, I am satisfied Give me a bowl of wine

I have not that alacrity of spirit

56, 67 *heavy Ratcliff*] Rowe, Camb, *heavy Ratcliffe* Qq, *heavy Ratcliff*  
all one line) Ff 69 *Saw'st thou*] Qq, *Saw st* Ff 71 *about*] *like* Qq 6-8  
73 *I am*] *I'm* Capell, Pope

65 *white Surrey*] The name is Shakespeare's invention. He took the hint, no doubt, from the "great white courser" on which, according to the chroniclers, Richard had entered Leicester.

66 *staves*] *s* = the staves, or wooden shafts of the lances. See below, line 342, and compare the metaphor in *Much Ado About Nothing*, v. i. 138.

69 *melancholy*] Malone explains this epithet by the inactivity of Northumberland, "which stood still with a great companie, and intermitted not in the battell." Henry Percy, fourth Earl of Northumberland, had been an adherent of Richard. It is probable, however, that he came to an understanding with Richmond not long before Bosworth: his wife was a sister of Richmond's supporter, Sir Walter Herbert. At any rate, he submitted himself to the conqueror after the battle, and "was incontinentlie receued into fauour and made of the councill." There are indications that, after his death near Thirsk in 1489, Northumberland's conduct at Bosworth was regarded in the North with scant respect. Richard, noticing his follower's moodiness and thoughtfulness before the critical moment of treachery, might well apply to him the epithet "melancholy."

71 *cock shut time*] twilight. The old explanation was that a cock shut was a large net, used to snare woodcocks. Nares says that it was "stretched

across a glade, and so suspended upon poles as to be easily drawn together" by a cord, called by Dame Juliana Berners, *Treatyse on Fysshynge*, 1496, a "cockeshote corde." It was generally spread in the evening twilight, when woodcocks came out to feed, and thus "cock shut time" became a synonym for twilight. *New Eng Dict*, however, rejects this derivation, and explains the word as "perhaps the time when poultry go to rest and are shut up." Schmidt also suggests this sense. *New Eng Dict* quotes Florio, 1598: "*Cane e lupo Cock shut*, or twilight, as when a man cannot discern a dog from a wolfe." Stevens quotes several examples, *e.g.*, Jonson, *The Satyr*,—

"Mistress, this is only spite

For you would not yesternight

Kiss him in the cock-shut light", Middleton, *The Widow*, iii. 1. "Come, come away then a fine cock shoot evening." Tollet, while recognising that there was a net known as a "cock shut," regarded "cock shoot" as implying the flight of the woodcock, and "cock shoot time" as the time of evening at which that flight took place. *New Eng Dict* defines "cock shoot" as "a broad way or glade in a wood, through which woodcocks, etc., might dart or shoot so as to be caught by nets stretched across the opening," and admits this as an alternative derivation of the phrase. Probably the older dictionary makers applied the term for the glade to the net stretched across it.

Nor cheer of mind that I was wont to have 75  
Set it down Is ink and paper ready?

*Rat* It is, my lord

*K Rich* Bid my guard watch Leave me  
Ratcliff, about the mid of night come to my tent  
And help to arm me Leave me, I say

[*Exeunt Ratcliff and the other attendants*]

*Enter DERBY to RICHMOND in his tent, Lords and others attending*

*Der* Fortune and victory sit on thy helm! 80

*Richm* All comfort that the dark night can afford  
Be to thy person, noble father-in-law!  
Tell me, how fares our loving mother?

*Der* I, by attorney, bless thee from thy mother,  
Who prays continually for Richmond's good 85  
So much for that The silent hours steal on,  
And flaky darkness breaks within the east.  
In brief, for so the season bids us be,  
Prepare thy battle early in the morning,  
And put thy fortune to the arbitrament 90  
Of bloody strokes and mortal-staring war

76 *Set*] *So, set Capell, There, set Pope* 77, 78 *Leave me Ratcliff*] and  
*leave me Pope* 78 *mid*] *midst Qq 6 8* 79 *arme me*] *arm me, Ratcliff*  
*Capell* *me*] *omitted Ff 3, 4* *Leave me*] *Leave me now Pope* *Exeunt*  
[*Camb, King Richard retires into his tent Exeunt Ratcliff and Catesby.*  
*Malone, Exit Ratcliff Qq, Exit Ratcliff Ff* *alt 79 SCENE IV Pope (ed*  
*2) Lords attending*] *Camb 80 sit*] *set Q 1 83 Tell me*] *Tell me, I*  
*pray Collier fares*] *fares it with Hamner loving*] *Qq 1, 2, noble Qq 3 8,*  
*Ff mother*] *mother now Keightley conj 86 that The*] *Ff, that the*  
*Qq 1, 2 91 mortal-staring*] *hyphenated Steevens, mortal-fearing Capell,*  
*mortal scaring Malone conj, mortal stabbing Staunton conj*

80 Pope's subdivision of this scene into separate little scenes is noted above, here and at the other dividing points. In his first edition his scenes are numbered wrong. Scene III occurs twice, at v iii 1 and here, and the subsequent scenes are numbered accordingly (Scene IV line 119, Scene V line 224, Scene VI line 272, Scene VII v iv 1 and v 5). The scene, however, in spite of its double character, is indivisible. The tents of the rivals are on either side of the stage, and the interest shifts from one to the other. When the ghosts appear, they obvi-

ously take their position between the two tents, which are thrown open in front to display the sleeping generals, and they address their remarks to each in turn.

87 *flaky darkness breaks*] i.e. darkness breaks into flakes of cloud, as the dawn rises. *New Eng Dict* quotes Sidney, Psalm cxxxv 3 "In flaky mists, the reaking vapors rise." Mr. Craig thinks that Shakespeare may have derived the epithet from Golding's *Ovid*, iii fol 34 (b) "The flake clouds all grieslie black."

91 *mortal staring war*] Steevens

I, as I may—that which I would I cannot—  
 With best advantage will deceive the time,  
 And aid thee in this doubtful shock of arms  
 But on thy side I may not be too forward, 95  
 Lest, being seen, thy brother, tender George,  
 Be executed in his father's sight  
 Farewell the leisure and the fearful time  
 Cuts off the ceremonious vows of love  
 And ample interchange of sweet discourse, 100  
 Which so long sund'red friends should dwell upon  
 God give us leisure for these rites of love!  
 Once more, adieu be valiant, and speed well!  
*Richm* Good lords, conduct him to his regiment  
 I'll strive with troubled noise to take a nap, 105  
 Lest leaden slumber peise me down to-morrow,

96 *brother, tender*] *tender brother* Q 6 97 *his*] *thy* Q 4 98 *leisure*] *lack of leisure* Anon ap Camb 101 *sund'red*] *sundried* Qq 1, 2, *sundried* Qq 3, 4, *sundered* Qq 5, 6 102 *rites*] *Ff, rights* Qq 105 *with troubled noise*] *Ff, with troubled thoughts* Qq, *troubled with noise* Grant White

explains "war that looks big, or stares fatally on its victim." Compare "grim-visag'd war," 1 i 9. The present epithet is rather harsh, but none of the many alternative readings is as simple and effective. Schmidt takes "mortal living" at iv iv 26 above as a similar epithet, and hyphens the two words. Mr Craig ("Little Quarto" ed p 271) says "the idea is of War personified with a fierce, savage look in his eye," and gives several instances of the Elizabethan use of "stare." He parallels from Shakespeare "wall ey'd wrath" (*King John*, iv iii 49) and *Othello*, v ii 37, 38.

93 More (ap Holinshed, iii 753) calls Stanley "this wile fox." The reason which he here gives to Richmond is recognised by the chroniclers as the true motive of his actions.

96 *tender George*] Aldis Wright notes that George Stanley was a grown man. The epithet "tender" seems to be derived from the chroniclers' account of the end of the battle. Richard had given over Lord Strange in custody to the keepers of his tents, "which, when the field was doone, and their maister slaine, and proclamation made

to know where *the child* was, they submitted themselves as prisoners to the lord Strange, and he gentlie received them, and brought them to the new proclaimed king." But the passage seems to indicate that "child" here is equivalent to "young nobleman," as in Spenser and the ballad quoted in *King Lear*, iii iv 187, and that Shakespeare did not catch this meaning.

98 *leisure*] Compare line 239 below. The word means, here and in many other passages of Shakespeare, not "time to spare," but "the time at a man's disposal." Johnson's explanation, "want of leisure," is hardly necessary. For "leisure" in the special sense, see line 102 below.

105 *with troubled noise*] This seems to be the right reading. "Thoughts" may have arisen through an error in a stage MS or on the stage itself. "Troubled" is for "troublesome." Compare 1 ii 39, iii vii 189.

106 *leaden slumber*] Malone quotes *Lucrece*, 124. Compare *Julius Cæsar*, iv iii 268.

*peise*] weigh. The same word as "poise." Compare French *pèser*, and see *King John*, ii i 575. Compare

When I should mount with wings of victory  
Once more, good night, kind lords and gentlemen

[*Exeunt all but Richmond*]

O Thou, whose captain I account myself,  
Look on my forces with a gracious eye 110  
Put in their hands thy bruising lions of wrath,  
That they may crush down with a heavy fall  
The usurping helmets of our adversaries  
Make us thy ministers of chastisement,  
That we may praise thee in thy victory ! 115  
To thee I do commend my watchful soul,  
Ere I let fall the windows of mine eyes  
Sleeping and waking, O, defend me still ! [*Sleeps*]

*Enter the Ghost of PRINCE EDWARD, son to Henry  
the Sixth*

*Ghost* [*To K Rich*] Let me sit heavy on thy soul to-morrow !  
Think how thou stab'dst me in my prime of youth 120  
At Tewkesbury despair therefore, and die !  
[*To Richm*] Be cheerful, Richmond, for the wronged souls  
Of butcher'd princes fight in thy behalf  
King Henry's issue, Richmond, comforts thee

108 *Exeunt* .] *Exeunt. Manet Richmond* Ff, *Exunt* or *Exeunt* Qq  
113 *helmets*] *helmet* Qq 6-8 115 *thy*] Qq 3 5, Ff, *the* Qq 1, 2, 6-8 118  
*Sleeps*] Ff, omitted Qq aft 118 SCENE V *Between the Tents of Richard and*  
*Richmond They sleeping* Pope *Prince*] Ff, *young Prince* Qq *Henry*] Harry Q 1  
*Sixth*] *sixt*, to R: Qq 1, 2 120 *stab'dst*] *Camb*, *stabst* Qq,  
*stab'st* Ff 1, 2, *stabb'st* Ff 3, 4, *stabb'dst* Rowe 121 *despair therefore*] *therefore despair* Pope 122 *Be* *souls*] one line as Qq, *Be Richmond, For* *Soules* (two lines) Ff

*Merchant of Venice*, III ii 22, and Mr Pooler's note Steevens quotes parallels from late sixteenth century authors, among them Christopher Middleton, *Legend of Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester*, 1600 "Nor was her schooles *peis'd* down with golden waights" The substantive "*peise*" is used to mean a weight Compare Pecoock, *Repressor*, 1455, l 19 "certis neuere saue in late daies was eny clok telling þe hours of þe dai & nyȝt bi *peisse* & bi stroke", and see Nares, s v

111 *bruising irons*] s e maces, which were usually made of iron

115 *thy victory*] the victory which is in truth thine This seems the preferable reading.

118 The forms which Richard's visions took are not specified by the chroniclers According to them, "it seemed to him being asleepe, that he did see diuerse images like terrible duels, which pulled and haled him, not suffering him to take anie quiet or rest."

*Enter the Ghost of HENRY THE SIXTH*

*Ghost [To K Rich]* When I was mortal, my anointed body 125  
 By thee was punched full of deadly holes  
 Think on the Tower, and me despair, and die!  
 Harry the Sixth bids thee despair and die!  
*[To Richm]* Virtuous and holy, be thou conqueror!  
 Harry, that prophesied thou shouldst be king, 130  
 Doth comfort thee in thy sleep live and flourish!

*Enter the Ghost of CLARENCE*

*Ghost [To K Rich]* Let me sit heavy in thy soul to-morrow!  
 I, that was wash'd to death with fulsome wine,  
 Poor Clarence, by thy guile betray'd to death—  
 To-morrow in the battle think on me, 135  
 And fall thy edgeless sword despair, and die!  
*[To Richm]* Thou offspring of the house of Lancaster,  
 The wronged heirs of York do pray for thee  
 Good angels guard thy battle! live, and flourish!

*Enter the Ghosts of RIVERS, GREY, and VAUGHAN*

*Ghost of Riv [To K Rich]* Let me sit heavy in thy soul to-morrow— 140

Rivers, that died at Pomfret! despair, and die!

*Ghost of Grey [To K Rich]* Think upon Grey, and let thy soul despair!

*Ghost of Vaughan [To K Rich]* Think upon Vaughan, and, with guilty fear,

Let fall thy lance despair, and die!

126 *deadly*] Q 1, omitted Qq 2-8, Ff 128 *Harry*] *Henry* Ff 2-4 131  
*in thy sleep live*] *in sleep live* thou Rowe 132 *stif*] *set* Q 1 *in*] Qq 1 4,  
 Ff, on Qq 5, 6, 8, one Q 7 (and so 140) 133 *with*] *in* Qq 3, 4 140 *Ghost*  
*of Riv* [To K Rich] *Riv* Qq 3 8, Ff, *King* Qq 1, 2 144 *lance*] *hurtless*  
*lance* Capell, *pointless lance* Collier MS *despair*] *Richard, despair* Pope

132 *in thy soul*] Compare *Richard*  
 II 1 11 50

133 *fulsome*] cloying, especially  
 applicable to the thick, sweet wine in  
 which Clarence's body was thrown  
*New Eng Dict* cites Harrison, *De*  
*scription of England*, 11 6 "Our ale  
 is more thicke, *fulsome*, and of no con-  
 tinuance" Steevens objected that  
 Clarence was dead before he was

thrown into the wine, so that he could  
 hardly be said to find the wine "ful-  
 some," or to be "washed to death"

136 *fall*] let fall, drop See note  
 on 1 11 353 above The line is repeated  
 at line 164

144 *lance*] Perhaps some epithet has  
 dropped out, like those suggested by  
 Capell and Collier

*All [To Richmond]* Awake, and think our wrongs in Richard's  
bosom 145

Will conquer him! Awake, and win the day!

*Enter the Ghost of HASTINGS.*

*Ghost [To K Rich]* Bloody and guilty, guiltily awake,  
And in a bloody battle end thy days!  
Think on Lord Hastings despair, and die!  
*[To Richm]* Quiet untroubled soul, awake, awake! 150  
Arm, fight, and conquer, for fair England's sake!

*Enter the Ghosts of the two young PRINCES*

*Ghosts [To K Rich]* Dream on thy cousins smothered in the  
Tower

Let us be lead within thy bosom, Richard,  
And weigh thee down to ruin, shame, and death!  
Thy nephews' souls bid thee despair and die! 155  
*[To Richm]* Sleep, Richmond, sleep in peace, and wake  
in joy  
Good angels guard thee from the boar's annoy!  
Live, and beget a happy race of kings!  
Edward's unhappy sons do bid thee flourish.

*Enter the Ghost of LADY ANNE*

*Ghost [To K Rich]* Richard, thy wife, that wretched Anne  
thy wife, 160

That never slept a quiet hour with thee,  
Now fills thy sleep with perturbations  
To-morrow in the battle think on me,  
And fall thy edgeless sword despair, and die!

145 *Awake* . bosom] one line as Qq, *Awake, And Bosome* (two lines) Ff  
aft 146-151 *Enter sake!*] arranged as Qq 3 8, Ff, Qq 1, 2 transpose with  
152-59 149 *despair*] and *despair* Pope, so *despair* Collier MS 150 *Quiet*  
.. *awake*] one line as Qq, *Quiet* . soule, *Awake, awake* Ff 152 *Dream*  
.. *Tower*] one line as Qq, *Dreams Cousins Smothered* . *Tower* (two  
lines) Ff 153 *lead*] Q 1, *laid or layd* Qq 2 8, Ff 155 *souls bid*] Qq,  
F 4, *soule bids* Ff 1 3 156 *Sleep joy*] one line as Qq, *Sleepe Richmond*  
*Sleepe Joy* (two lines) Ff aft 159 *Lady Anne*] Camb, *Ladie Anne his wife*  
Qq 1, 2, *Queene Anne his wife* Qq 3 8, *Anne his wife* Ff 160 *Richard* . .  
*Anne thy wife*] one line as Qq, *Richard, thy Wife, That* . . . *Anne thy Wife*  
(two lines) Ff 162 *perturbations*] *perturbations* Q 1

[*To Richm*] Thou quiet soul, sleep thou a quiet sleep 165  
 Dream of success and happy victory!  
 Thy adversary's wife doth pray for thee

*Enter the Ghost of BUCKINGHAM*

*Ghost* [*To K Rich*] The first was I that help'd thee to the crown,  
 The last was I that felt thy tyranny  
 O! in the battle think on Buckingham, 170  
 And die in terror of thy guiltiness!  
 Dream on, dream on, of bloody deeds and death  
 Fainting, despair, despairing, yield thy breath!  
 [*To Richm*] I died for hope ere I could lend thee aid  
 But cheer thy heart, and be not thou dismay'd! 175  
 God and good angels fight on Richmond's side,  
 And Richard fall in height of all his pride!

*The Ghosts vanish King Richard starts out of his dream*

*K Rich* Give me another horse! bind up my wounds!  
 Have mercy, Jesu!—Soft! I did but dream  
 O coward conscience, how dost thou afflict me! 180

165 *Thou sleep*] one line as Qq, *Thou soule, Sleepe sleepe* (two lines) Ff 168 *The first . crown*] one line as Qq, *The first was I That Crowne* (two lines) Ff 174 *I died aid*] one line as Qq, *I dyed hope Ere Ayde* (two lines) Ff *for hope*] *for holpe* Theobald conj, *forholpe* Steevens conj, *fore done* Tjrwitt conj 177 *fall*] Ff, *fals* Qq aft 177 *The Ghosts vanish*] Rowe, Camb

174 *for hope*] The meaning may be, "I died *for hoping* to give you aid, before I could actually give it." This is the interpretation suggested by Steevens. Aldis Wright's explanation, "I died as regards hope," is equally good, if not better. In that case the passage means, "Before I could give thee aid, I was dead so far as hope was concerned, but be not *thou* without hope." There is also much to be said for Steevens' conjecture "*forholpe*," and for the whole idea that "*for —*" is here a privative prefix. The passage cited by Dyce from Greene, *James IV* 1598, v 6 (Dyce, 217) "Some then will yield when I am dead *for hope*," is, however, in favour of the received text and of Wright's explanation.

178 The speech, full of self-questioning argument, which follows,

is perhaps the weakest passage in the play. It seems to mark a stage in Shakespeare's development at which he was unequal to the psychological skill which such a speech required, and it may stand out as a conspicuous failure, because it demanded more from him than any other speech in the play. The attempt to portray the king's mingled emotions is thoroughly in keeping with the statement of the chronicles, that the "strange vision not so suddenlie strake his heart with a sudden feare, but it stuffed his head and troubled his mind with manie busie and dreadful imaginations." The phrase "coward conscience" (line 180) recalls *Hamlet*, III : 83, part of a speech which is a triumph in the very field in which this is a first effort.

The lights burn blue It is now dead midnight.  
 Cold fearful drops stand on my trembling flesh  
 What do I fear? myself? there's none else by  
 Richard loves Richard, that is, I am I  
 Is there a murderer here? No Yes, I am 185  
 Then fly What, from myself? Great reason why?  
 Lest I revenge What, myself upon myself?  
 Alack, I love myself Wherefore? for any good  
 That I myself have done unto myself?  
 O, no! alas, I rather hate myself 190  
 For hateful deeds committed by myself  
 I am a villain yet I lie, I am not  
 Fool, of thyself speak well fool, do not flatter  
 My conscience hath a thousand several tongues,  
 And every tongue brings in a several tale, 195  
 And every tale condemns me for a villain  
 Perjury, perjury, in the high'st degree,  
 Murder, stern murder, in the dir'st degree,  
 All several sins, all us'd in each degree,

181 *It is now*] Q 1, *It is not* Qq 2 8, Ff, *Is it not* Rowe 183 204 *What*  
*to myself?*] Ritson proposed to put in margin 183 *What do I fear?*  
*myself?*] *What do I fear my self?* Qq 2 8, *What? do I fear my self?* Ff  
 184 *Richard* . *I am I*] omitted Pope am] and Q 1 186 *fly*] *flye*?  
 Ff 2-4 *reason why?*] Ff, *reason why?* Q 1, *reason why?* Q 2, *reason*  
*why*, Qq 3-8 186 93 *Then fly* flatter] Pope put in margin 187  
*What*] omitted Capell 188 *Alack*] omitted Pope 189 *I*] omitted  
 Qq 6 8 197 *Perjury, perjury*] Qq 1, 2, *Persuade* Qq 3-8, Ff, *Perjury,*  
*foul perjury* Collier MS *the*] omitted Pope

181 *The lights burn blue*] Brand, *Popular Antiquities*, iii 69, quotes Grose. "If, during the time of an apparition, there is a lighted candle in the room, it will burn extremely blue this is so universally acknowledged, that many eminent philosophers have busied themselves in accounting for it, without once doubting the truth of the fact" Steevens quotes Lyly, *Galathea*, 1592 "I thought there was some spirit in it because it burnt so blue, for my mother would often tell me when the candle burnt blue, there was some ill spirit in the house" Compare *Julius Caesar*, iv iii 275

*now*] This is one of several cases where the editor of F 1 seems, at this

point in the play, to have been without MS guidance, and to have relied on the later Qq alone Another example follows at line 183 In these cases Q 1 supplies us with the right reading

184 Pope was perhaps justified in rejecting this feeble line to the margin But the words "I am I" bring out, in Richard's extremity, his unfailing belief in the doctrine "I am myself alone," already enunciated at 3 *Henry VI* v vi 83

186 *Great reason why?*] Ff, whose emendation at line 183 was less successful, seem here to have hit upon the right reading For another emendation of Ff, in default of MS authority, see line 200 below

Throng to the bar, crying all, "Guilty! guilty!" 200  
 I shall despair There is no creature loves me,  
 And, if I die, no soul will pity me  
 Nay, wherefore should they, since that I myself  
 Find in myself no pity to myself?  
 Methought the souls of all that I had murder'd 205  
 Came to my tent, and every one did threat  
 To-morrow's vengeance on the head of Richard

*Enter RATCLIFF*

*Rat* My lord!  
*K Rich* 'Zounds! who is there?  
*Rat* My lord, 'tis I The early village-cock 210  
 Hath twice done salutation to the morn,  
 Your friends are up, and buckle on their armour  
*K Rich* O Ratchiff, I have dream'd a fearful dream  
 What thinkest thou? will our friends prove all true?  
*Rat* No doubt, my lord  
*K Rich* O Ratchiff, I fear, I fear! 215  
*Rat* Nay, good my lord, be not afraid of shadows  
*K Rich* By the apostle Paul, shadows to-night  
 Have struck more terror to the soul of Richard  
 Than can the substance of ten thousand soldiers  
 Armed in proof, and led by shallow Richmond! 220

200 *Throng*] Qq 1, 2, *Throng all* Qq 3, 8, Ff *to the] to th' Ff crying*  
*all] all crying* Pope 201 *shall] will* Pope 202 *will] Qq 1, 2, shall*  
 Qq 3, 8, Ff 203, 204 *Nay* *to myself?]* Pope put in margin 205  
*had] Q 1, Ff, omitted Qq 2, 6, have* Qq 7, 8 206 *Came] Came all* Qq 3, 6  
 209 *'Zounds! who is]* Qq, *Who's* Ff 210 *My lord] Qq 7, 8, Ratchiff,*  
*my Lord* Qq 1, 6, Ff 213-15 *O Ratchiff* *my lord] Qq, omitted Ff*  
 214 *thinkest]* Capell, Camb, *thinkst* Qq 215 *O] omitted Pope* O  
*fear]* Collier replaces by 213

209 *'Zounds]* For Ff reading com  
 pare note on I iv 117 above

210 *My lord]* I have ventured to  
 leave out the unnecessary "Ratchiff"  
 at the beginning of the line, which was  
 most likely a printer's error, originating  
 in Q 1 and emended in no following  
 edition until Q 7 Had any MS been  
 to hand at this point, the editor of F 1  
 would probably have made this correc-  
 tion

213 The chroniclers say that, to  
 avoid any appearance of fear of his

enemies (see lines 217-220), the king  
 "recited and declared to his familiar  
 freends in the morning his wonderfull  
 vision and fearefull dream" The  
 omission of lines 213, 214 in Ff is  
 obviously due to the printer, who mis-  
 took the "O Ratchiff" in the latter half  
 of line 215 for that at the beginning of  
 line 213, and proceeded accordingly.  
 As the passage stands in Ff, Ratchiff  
 has not sufficient information to justify  
 his words in line 216

'Tis not yet near day    Come, go with me,  
Under our tents I'll play the eaves-dropper,  
To hear if any mean to shrink from me    *[Exeunt]*

*Enter the Lords to RICHMOND, sitting in his tent*

*Lords* Good morrow, Richmond!

*Richm* Cry mercy, lords and watchful gentlemen,    225  
That you have ta'en a tardy sluggard here

*Lords* How have you slept, my lord?

*Richm* The sweetest sleep and fairest-boding dreams  
That ever enter'd in a drowsy head,  
Have I since your departure had, my lords    230  
Methought their souls, whose bodies Richard murder'd,  
Came to my tent and cried on victory  
I promise you, my heart is very jocund  
In the remembrance of so fair a dream  
How far into the morning is it, lords?    235

*Lords* Upon the stroke of four

*Richm* Why, then 'tis time to arm and give direction

*His Oration to his Soldiers*

More than I have said, loving countrymen,  
The leisure and enforcement of the time

221 'Tis] Qq, Ff, It is Pope    222 eaves dropper] F 4, eave dropper Q 1, ewse dropper Q 2, ewse-dropper Q 3, ewse dropper Q 4, ewse dropper Qq 5-8, Ease dropper Ff 1-3    223 hear] Qq 3 8, Ff, see Qq 1, 2    mean to shrink] means to shrink Q 4, man shrinks Ff 3, 4    aft 223 SCENE VI Warburton Pope (ed 1) misprinted SCENE V, (ed 2) misprinted SCENE IV    sitting tent] Ff, omitted Qq    224 Lords] Qq, Richm Ff    225 Cry mercy] Cry you mercy Ff 2 4, I cry you mercy Pope    228 The dreams] one line as Qq, The sleepe, And Dreames (two lines) Ff    farrest-boding] hyphened Theobald    232 cried on victory] cried out, Victory Pope, cried On! Victory Warburton    233 heart] Ff, soule Qq    237 Arms and comes forth Capell    aft 237 His Soldiers] To his Troops, who now gather about the Tent Capell

226 Cry mercy] The full form is "I cry you mercy" see 1 iii 235 above The pronoun is omitted, as when we say "Thank you"

231, 232 Richmond's dreams are a dramatic interpolation which find no warrant in the chroniclers' accounts

238 "When the earle of Richmond knew by his foreriders that the king

was so neere imbatelled, he rode about his armie from ranke to ranke, & from wing to wing, giuing comfortable words to all men, and that finished (being armed at all peeces, sauing his helmet) mounted on a little hill, so that all his people might see and behold him perfectlie, to their great reioicing" (Holinshed, iii. 757)

Forbids to dwell upon yet remember this 240  
 God and our good cause fight upon our side,  
 The prayers of holy saints and wronged souls,  
 Like high-rear'd bulwarks, stand before our faces  
 Richard except, those whom we fight against  
 Had rather have us win than him they follow 245  
 For what is he they follow? truly, gentlemen,  
 A bloody tyrant and a homicide,  
 One rais'd in blood, and one in blood establish'd,  
 One that made means to come by what he hath,  
 And slaughter'd those that were the means to help him, 250  
 A base foul stone, made precious by the foil  
 Of England's chair, where he is falsely set,  
 One that hath ever been God's enemy  
 Then, if you fight against God's enemy,  
 God will in justice ward you as his soldiers, 255  
 If you do sweat to put a tyrant down,  
 You sleep in peace, the tyrant being slain,  
 If you do fight against your country's foes,  
 Your country's fat shall pay your pains the hire,  
 If you do fight in safeguard of your wives, 260  
 Your wives shall welcome home the conquerors,  
 If you do free your children from the sword,

240 *upon*] on Pope 244 *Richard except*] Qq 3-8, Ff, *Richard, except*  
 Qq 1, 2 250 *slaughter'd*] slandered Q 4 251 *foil*] Qq 1, 2, *soile* Qq  
 3-5, *soyle* Qq 6-8, Ff 1 3, *soyl* F 4 256 *sweat*] Qq 1, 2, *sweare* Qq 3 8, Ff

247 *homicide*] The word is taken 1 iii 265-67, Beaumont and Fletcher,  
 from Holinshed "an *homicide* and *Faithful Shepherdess*, 1 3 —  
 murderer of his owne blood or pro-  
 genie" "Yet, if I may believe what others

249 *made means*] Compare line 40  
 above Here a sinister meaning is  
 given to the phrase

251 *foil*] A thin leaf of metal placed  
 under a precious stone to relieve its  
 brilliancy See Drayton, *Eng Her*  
*Epp*, Mary to Brandon —

"Which [a precious stone] then  
 appears more orient and more  
 bright,

Having a *foil* whereon to show its  
 light"

Metaphors from the jewel and its foil  
 are common Compare *Richard II*

My face has *foile* enough",  
 Chapman, etc, *Eastward Ho*, act iv

"I will charge 'hem and recharge 'hem,  
 rather than authority should want *foil*  
 to set it off" The history of the read-  
 ing here is obvious See note on  
 "now," line 181 above

255 *ward*] protect Q 8 mistakenly  
 printed "reward"

256 *sweat*] Holinshed has "There-  
 fore labour for your gaine, & *sweat* for  
 your right," which is fairly conclusive  
 as to the right reading

Your children's children quits it in your age  
 Then, in the name of God and all these rights,  
 Advance your standards, draw your willing swords! 265  
 For me, the ransom of my bold attempt  
 Shall be this cold corpse on the earth's cold face,  
 But, if I thrive, the gain of my attempt  
 The least of you shall share his part thereof  
 Sound drums and trumpets boldly and cheerfully, 270  
 God and Saint George! Richmond and victory!

[*Exeunt*

*Re-enter* KING RICHARD, RATCLIFF, *Attendants and*  
*Forces*

*K Rich* What said Northumberland as touching Richmond?

*Rat* That he was never trained up in arms

*K Rich* He said the truth And what said Surrey then?

*Rat* He smil'd and said "The better for our purpose" 275

*K Rich* He was in the right, and so indeed it is

[*The clock striketh*

Tell the clock there Give me a calendar

Who saw the sun to-day?

*Rat* Not I, my lord

*K Rich* Then he disdains to shine, for, by the book,

He should have brav'd the east an hour ago 280

263 *quits*] Qq, Ff, *quit* Pope 270 *boldly*] *bold* Staunton *and*  
 omitted Pope 271 *Exeunt*] *Shouts &c*, and *Exeunt* Capell, omitted Qq, Ff  
 aft. 271 *SCENE VII* Pope *Re-enter* ] Camb, *Enter King Richard, Rat*  
*&c* Qq, *Enter King Richard, Ratcliffe, and Catesby* Ff 276 *in the*] *'th*  
 Pope *The clock striketh*] after *there* in 277 Qq, Ff 277, 278 *Tell*  
*my lord*] arranged as Pope, Camb, *Tell . there Give to day?* *Rat*  
*Not I my lord* (3 lines) Qq, Ff.

263 *quits*] There is no reason for altering the old plural, which occurs in all the printed copies.

265 *Advance*] raise Compare i ii 40 above Holinshed has, "And therefore, in the name of God and St. George, let euerie man couragiouslye aduance forth his standard!" Compare Milton, *Paradise Lost*, v 588 "Ten thousand thousand Ensignes high *advanc'd*"

267 Richmond's words in Holinshed are "You shall find me this day rather a dead carrion vpon the cold ground, than a free prisoner on a carpet in a ladies chamber"

277 *Tell the clock*] Count the strokes of the clock Compare "as one tells twenty," i iv 118 above, and see *The Tempest*, ii i 289

279 *the book*] the calendar which he has just consulted

A black day will it be to somebody  
Ratcliff!

*Rat* My lord?

*K Rich* The sun will not be seen to-day,  
The sky doth frown and lour upon our army  
I would these dewy tears were from the ground 285  
Not shine to-day? Why, what is that to me  
More than to Richmond? for the self-same heaven  
That frowns on me looks sadly upon him

*Enter NORFOLK*

*Nor* Arm, arm, my lord! the foe vaunts in the field  
*K Rich* Come, bustle, bustle! Caparison my horse 290  
Call up Lord Stanley, bid him bring his power.  
I will lead forth my soldiers to the plain,  
And thus my battle shall be ordered  
My foreward shall be drawn out all in length,  
Consisting equally of horse and foot, 295  
Our archers shall be placed in the midst  
John Duke of Norfolk, Thomas Earl of Surrey,  
Shall have the leading of this foot and horse  
They thus directed, we will follow

281, 282 *A black somebody Ratcliff*] arranged as Johnson, etc., *A blacke some bodse Rat* (one line) Qq 1-6, *A blacke somebody Rat-cliffe* (one line) Ff, *A black somebody—Ratcliff*,— (one line) Capell 288 *looks*] *looke* Q 6, aft 288 *Enter Norfolk*] *Re enter Norfolk* Camb 294 *shall be drawn out all*] Q 1, *shall be drawne* Qq 2 8, Ff, *battell shall be drawn* Hanmer 298 *this*] Qq 1, 2, *the* Qq 3-8, Ff 299 *we*] *we ourself* Pope *follow*] *follow them* Collier MS

281 *A black day somebody*] Mr Craig points out that this seems to be a proverbial expression, and compares *2 Henry IV* v iv 14. See also *2 Henry VI* v vi 85 "I will sort a pitchy day for thee"  
285 *from*] away from, off Compare *Antony and Cleopatra*, II vi 30, and see note on III v 32 above  
290 *Caparison*] The caparison of a horse was, strictly speaking, the rich covering or housing which was worn by the spare horse at a battle or tournament (Demmin, *Arms and Armour*, English translation, 1894, p 349) The armed horse was often covered with a caparison of cloth  
292-301 Shakespeare follows Holinshed closely Richard, "bringing all his men out of their campe into the plaine, ordered his fore ward in a marvellous length, in which he appointed both horsmen and footmen and in the fore front he placed the archers like a strong fortified trench or bulworke Ouer this battell was capteine, Iohn, duke of Norffolke, with whome was Thomas earle of Surrie, his sonne After this long vant gard, followed king Richard himselfe with a strong companie of chosen and approued men of warre, hauing horssemen for wings on both sides of his battell"

In the main battle, whose puissance on either side 300  
 Shall be well winged with our chiefest horse  
 This, and Saint George to boot! What think'st thou,  
 Norfolk?

No! A good direction, warlike sovereign  
 This found I on my tent this morning

[*He showeth him a paper*]

K Rich [Reads] "Jockey of Norfolk, be not so bold, 305  
 For Dickon thy master is bought and sold"  
 A thing devised by the enemy!  
 Go, gentlemen, every man unto his charge  
 Let not our babbling dreams affright our souls  
 Conscience is but a word that cowards use, 310  
 Devis'd at first to keep the strong in awe,  
 Our strong arms be our conscience, swords our law!  
 March on, join bravely, let us to't pell-mell,  
 If not to heaven, then hand in hand to hell!

*His Oration to his Army*

What shall I say more than I have inferr'd? 315  
 Remember whom you are to cope withal,  
 A sort of vagabonds, rascals, and runaways,

300 whose puissance] which Pope 301 well winged] hyphened Ff  
 302 This Norfolk] one line as Qq, This boote What Norfolk  
 (two lines) Ff boot] booties Qq 1, 2 think'st thou, Norfolk] Ff, thinkst  
 thou Norffolke Q 1, thinkst thou Nor Qq 2 5, thinkst thou not Qq 6 8  
 304 This] This paper Pope He paper] Qq, omitted Ff, Giving a  
 Scrowl Rowe 305 K Rich [Reads] Capell, Camb so] too Capell  
 307 A thing] King A thing Qq, Ff 308 every man unto] Qq, every man  
 to Ff, go each man to Pope 310 Conscience is but] Qq 1, 2, Conscience s  
 Qq 3-8, For Conscience is Ff, aft 313 His Army] Qq, omitted Ff, turn  
 ing to his Troops Capell 317 rascals, and] rascals Ff 2 4, of rascals Pope

302 Saint George to boot!] Saint as likely, by a press error, altered from  
 George to aid us as well On "boot" "so" to "to"  
 see note at iv. iv 65 above 313 pell-mell] So King Lear, iv. iv  
 303 direction] order of battle Com 119, and see Mr Craig's note (Arden  
 pare line 16 above ed. 1901, p. 198)  
 304. morning] probably a trisyllable, 315 I have inferr'd] i.e. the argu-  
 like the older form "morweninge." ments I have stated already  
 305. so bold] The line in the 317 sort] number, company "Ye  
 chroniclers runs "Iacke of Norffolke see further how a companie of traitors,  
 be not too bold", and Q 6, perhaps in theeves, outlawes, and runnagates of  
 accordance with this version (which is our owne nation, be aiders and par-  
 certainly the better), or, which is quite takers of his feat and enterpryse" see

A scum of Bretons, and base lackey peasants,  
 Whom their o'er-cloyed country vomits forth  
 To desperate adventures and assur'd destruction 320  
 You sleeping safe, they bring to you unrest,  
 You having lands and blest with beauteous wives,  
 They would restrain the one, distain the other  
 And who doth lead them but a paltiy fellow,  
 Long kept in Bretagne at our mother's cost? 325  
 A milk-sop, one that never in his life  
 Felt so much cold as over shoes in snow!  
 Let's whip these stragglers o'er the seas again,  
 Lash hence these overweening rags of France,  
 These famish'd beggars, weary of their lives, 330  
 Who, but for dreaming on this fond exploit,  
 For want of means, poor rats, had hang'd themselves!  
 If we be conquer'd, let men conquer us,  
 And not these bastard Bretons, whom our fathers

318 *Bretons*] Capell, Camb, *Brittains* or *Brittaines* Qq, Ff 320 *adventures*  
*entures* Capell *assur'd*] omitted Pope 321 *to you*] Q 1, *you to* Qq 2 8,  
 1f 323 *restrain*] *disstrain* Hanmer (fr Warburton) 325 *Bretagne*]  
 Hanmer, Camb, *Brittaine* Qq, *Britayne* Ff 1, 2, *Britain* Ff 3, 4 *our mother's*]  
*his mother's* Theobald conj, Pope, *our brother's* Capell 326 *milk sop*] Ff  
 3, 4, *milkesop* Qq 1-5, *milkesope* Q 6, *milke sop* Ff 1, 2, Qq 7, 8 334 *these*]  
*those* Rowe *bastard Bretons*] Capell, *bastard Britains* (or *Brittaines*, etc.)  
 Qq, Ff 1, 2, *bastard Britains* Ff 3, 4, *bastard Britons* Pope

*Richard II* iv 1 246 Compare  
 Berners' *Froissart*, i 146 "We are  
 here within, a small sort of knights and  
 squires", A M, *Captivity of John Fox*,  
 ap Hakluyt (Arber, *Eng Garner*, i  
 206) "Which the same John Fox  
 seeing, delivered unto them a sort of  
 files, which he had gathered together  
 for this purpose"

318 Holinshed has "What a number  
 of beggerlike Britans and faint-hearted  
 Frenchmen be with him arruied to  
 destrone us, our wives and children"  
 The epithet "lackey" may be intended  
 to convey an Englishman's contempt  
 for Frenchmen

323 *restrain*] i.e. hold back from  
 us  
*distain*] stain, defile So *Troilus and*  
*Cressida*, i iii 241

325 *our mother's*] Holinshed (ed 2)  
 has "brought up by my moother's  
 means, and mine, like a captive in a

close cage, in the court of Francis duke  
 of Britaine" Halle and Holinshed (ed  
 1) have "my brothers meanes," which  
 is nearer the truth Malone explains  
 "our brother" as Charles the Bold of  
 Burgundy, who was Richard's brother  
 in law Here Shakespeare has copied  
 his original too closely The phrase  
 which follows, "and neuer saw armie,  
 nor was exercised in martiall affaires  
 by reason whereof he neither can, nor  
 is able by his owne will or experience  
 to guide or rule an hoast," was prob-  
 ably the origin of the statement (line  
 273) which Shakespeare quotes as  
 coming from Northumberland "Milk-  
 sop" in line 326 is the term of contempt  
 in Holinshed compare "homicide,"  
 line 247 Aldis Wright compares  
 Iago's contempt for Cassio, *Othello*, i  
 1 20 27 326 *milk sop*] Compare *1 Henry IV*  
 ii iii 35, 36

Have in their own land beaten, bobb'd, and thump'd, 335  
 And in record left them the heirs of shame  
 Shall these enjoy our lands? lie with our wives?  
 Ravish our daughters? [*Drum afar off*] Hark! I hear  
 their drum  
 Fight, gentlemen of England! fight, bold yeomen!  
 Draw, archers, draw your arrows to the head! 340  
 Spur your proud horses hard, and ride in blood!  
 Amaze the welkin with your broken staves!

*Enter a Messenger*

What says Lord Stanley? will he bring his power?

*Mess* My lord, he doth deny to come

*K Rich* Off with his son George's head!

345

336 in] Qq 1, 2, on Qq 3 8, Ff 338 Ravish . drum] one line as Qq '  
*Ravish daughters* *Hearke*, *Drumme* (two lines) Ff 339 *Fight*  
 Qq 1, 2, 8, *Right* Qq 3 7 *bold*] Q 1, *boldly* Qq 2 8, Ff aft 343 *Enter a*  
*Messenger*] Ff, omitted Qq 344 *come*] *come to you* Capell 345 *Off*  
*Off instantly* Hammer

335 *bobb'd*] As Aldis Wright points out, to "bob" is much the same as to beat or thump, with an additional spice of contempt in the word. See Mr Deighton's note on *Troilus and Cressida*, II 1 76, and Mr Craig's note in "Little Quarto" ed of this play, pp 289, 290. A very common meaning of the word is "to cheat or fool" compare *Othello*, V 1 16, *Troilus and Cressida*, III 1 75, Fletcher and Massinger, *Spanish Curate*, 1622, v 2 —

"Though I were angry yesterday with you all,

And very angry, for methought ye *bobb'd* me",

and "Ye shall be *bobb'd*, gentlemen" For the substantive "bob" and the phrase "to give the bob" see *As You Like It*, II vii 55; Greene, *Menaphon* (Arber, 85) "He smiled in his sleeve to see howe kindly hee had given her the *bobbs*", Fletcher, *Wit without Money*, v, 1 "These are fine *bobs*, i' faith!"

342 *Amaze the welkin*] Frighten the sky, lest it be hit by the broken splinters of the lance shafts. The conceit is explained by Malone's quotation from W. Smith, *The Hector*

*of Germany, or The Palsgrave*, 1615 "Spears flew in splinters half the way to heaven," and by *Coriolanus*, IV v 115 Compare *King John*, V ii 172 343-47 Richard had sent a pursuivant to Stanley, bidding him bring his company forward, "which thing if he refused to doo, he sware, by Christes passion, that he would strike off his sonnes head before hee dined. The lord Stanleie answered the purseuant that, if the king did so, he had more sonnes alive, and, as to come to him, he was not then so determined. When king Richard heard this answer, he commanded the lord Strange incontinent to be beheaded which was at that verie same season, when both the armies had sight ech of other" Richard's councillors, however, advised him to spare Lord Strange till after the battle "So (as God would) king Richard brake his holie oth, and the lord was delivered to the keepers of the kings tents, to be kept as prisoner" The abrupt order in line 345 may have suggested Cibber's famous addition after IV iv 534 above, "Off with his head, So much for Buckingham."

*Nor* My lord, the enemy is past the marsh  
 After the battle let George Stanley die  
*K Rich* A thousand hearts are great within my bosom  
 Advance our standards, set upon our foes,  
 Our ancient word of courage, fair Saint George, 350  
 Inspire us with the spleen of fiery dragons!  
 Upon them! Victory sits on our helms

[*Exeunt*

SCENE IV — *Another part of the field*

*Alarum* excursions *Enter NORFOLK and forces fighting, to him CATESBY*

*Cates* Rescue, my lord of Norfolk, rescue, rescue!  
 The king enacts more wonders than a man,  
 Daring an opposite to every danger  
 His horse is slain, and all on foot he fights,  
 Seeking for Richmond in the throat of death 5  
 Rescue, fair lord, or else the day is lost!

350 *fair*] *fare* Q 2 352 *helms*] Qq 1, 2, 4, 8, *helpes* Qq 3, 5, 6, 7, Ff  
*Exeunt*] Rowe, *Drums, and Exeunt* Capell, omitted Qq, Ff

Scene IV

SCENE IV] Capell, SCENE VIII Pope, scene continued Ff *Another*  
*field*] Capell, Camb *Enter Norfolk*] Capell, Camb, *Enter Catesby*  
 Qq, Ff 1 *Rescue* *rescue*] one line as Qq, *Rescue* *Norfolke, Rescue,*  
*rescue* (two lines) Ff

346 A "great marsh" separated both armies Richmond, in his advance, left this on his right, and thus put the sun at his back, and in the faces of his enemies This statement of the chroniclers seems to imply that the subject of lines 278 88 above is due to the invention of the dramatist "When king Richard saw the earles companie was passed the marsh, he did command with all hast to set vpon them"

351 *spleen of fiery dragons*] Compare *King John*, II i 68 Mr Craig remarks that the expression "to fight like a dragon" seems to have been proverbial, and refers to *Coriolanus*, IV vii 23

352 *helms*] The variation in Ff is worth noticing Apart from the fact that first hand MS authority was evidently wanting, and that copies of

neither of the earliest quartos were available, it is clear that Q 4 was not referred to by the editor Q 3 or Q 5 was thus the alternative copy of the play which he must have used in seeking earlier authority for the readings of Q 6

Scene IV

3 *Daring an opposite*] Malone quotes Marston, *Antonio and Mellida* "Myself, myself, will dare all *opposites*" An "opposite" is an enemy, adversary, as *Twelfth Night*, III iv 293, *King Lear*, V iii 42 Tyrwhitt, who proposed to read "Daring and opposite," probably regarded the phrase as meaning "daring in his opposition to every danger" Wherever Richard meets an opposite on the field, he dares him a *l'outrance*

*Alarums Enter KING RICHARD*

*K Rich* A horse! a horse! my kingdom for a horse!

*Cates* Withdraw, my lord, I'll help you to a horse

*K Rich* Slave, I have set my life upon a cast,

And I will stand the hazard of the die! 10

I think there be six Richmonds in the field,

Five have I slain to-day instead of him

A horse! a horse! my kingdom for a horse!

[*Exeunt*

SCENE V — *Another part of the field*

*Alarum Enter KING RICHARD and RICHMOND, they fight*  
*KING RICHARD is slain Retreat and flourish R. enters*  
*RICHMOND, DERBY bearing the crown, with divers other*  
*lords*

*Richm* God and your arms be prais'd, victorious friends!

The day is ours, the bloody dog is dead

*Der* Courageous Richmond, well hast thou acquit thee

7 *Alarums* ] Ff, omitted Qq 13 *Exeunt* ] Theobald, omitted Qq, Ff

Scene v

SCENE V ] Dyce, Ff, Pope, Capell, etc., continue scene. Another  
 field ] Dyce, Camb *Retreat and flourish* ] Ff, then retreat being sounded Qq  
*Re-enter Richmond* ] Camb, *Enter Richmond* Qq, Ff 1 *God friends* ] one  
 line as Qq, *God Armes Be Friends* (two lines) I f. 3 *Der* ] Stan  
 Pope 3, 4 *Courageous royalty* ] two lines as Qq, *Courageous Ri. h*  
*mond, Well Loe Heere Royalties* (three lines) Ff

13 The chronicles contain no mention of the loss of Richard's horse. This famous line was possibly suggested by the statement that "when the losse of the battell was imminent and apparant, they brought to him a swift and a light horse, to conueie him awaie." The "six Richmonds in the field" are also without authority. Richard knew the earl at once "by certaine demonstrations and tokens, which he had learned and knowen of others that were able to giue him full information." He put spurs to his horse, and, riding out of his part of the host, "like a hungrie lion ran with speare in rest toward him." To make his way to his enemy, he killed Sir

William Brandon and overthrew Sir John Cheney. The single combat which followed was stopped by the arrival of Sir William Stanley's reinforcements. These surrounded and overpowered Richard, isolating him from his army, and "he himself, manfullie fighting in the middle of his enemies, was blame." Steevens mentions various imitations of Richard's cry for a horse, and quotes Heywood, *Iron Age* —

"a horse, a horse!  
 Ten kingdoms for a horse to enter  
 Troy!"

The line is reproduced by Marston, *What you Will*, act II (quoted by Reed).

Lo, here this long usurped royalty  
 From the dead temples of this bloody wretch 5  
 Have I pluck'd off, to grace thy brows withal  
 Wear it, enjoy it, and make much of it  
*Richm* Great God of Heaven, say amen to all !  
 But, tell me, is young George Stanley living?  
*Der* He is, my lord, and safe in Leicester town, 10  
 Whither, if it please you, we may now withdraw us  
*Richm* What men of name are slain on either side?  
*Der* John Duke of Norfolk, Walter Lord Ferrers,  
 Sir Robert Brakenbury, and Sir William Brandon  
*Richm* Inter their bodies as become their births 15  
 Proclaim a pardon to the soldiers fled,  
 That in submission will return to us,  
 And then, as we have ta'en the sacrament,  
 We will unite the white rose and the red  
 Smile Heaven upon this fair conjunction, 20  
 That long have frown'd upon their enmity !  
 What traitor hears me, and says not amen?  
 England hath long been mad, and scarr'd herself,  
 The brother blindly shed the brother's blood,  
 The father rashly slaughter'd his own son, 25  
 The son, compell'd, been butcher to the sire

4 *royalty*] Q 1, *rosalties* Qq 2-8, Ff 7 *enjoy it*] Qq 1, 2, omitted Qq 3 8, Ff  
 11 *if it please you*] Qq 2-8, *it is please you* Q 1, (*if you please*) Ff, *if you so*  
*please* Pope *if withdraw us*] *if you please, we will withdraw us now*  
 Keightley conj 13, 14 *John Brandon*] Qq print in italics 13 *Der* ]  
 Ff, omitted Qq *Lord*] *the Lord* Pope *Ferrers*] Capell, *Ferris* Qq, Ff  
 14 *Brakenbury*] *Brookenbury* Qq 1, 2, *Brokenbury* Qq 3-8, Ff *and*] omitted  
 Pope 15 *become*] Qq, Ff, *becomes* Rowe, Camb 25 *rashly*] *madly*  
 Capell

4 *royalty*] So *1 Henry IV* iv iii 55  
 Holinshed has "When the lord Stan-  
 leie saw the good will and gladnesse  
 of the people, he tooke the crowne of  
 king Richard (which was found amongst  
 the spoile in the field), and set it on the  
 earles head, as though he had beene  
 elected king by the voice of the people"  
 10, 11 Lord Strange was on the  
 field, with the keepers of the king's  
 tents "The same night, in the euen-  
 ing, king Henrie with great pompe  
 came to the town of Leicester"

12 *men of name*] Compare *Much*  
*Ado About Nothing*, i i 7

13, 14 Qq print these lines in italics  
 and assign them to no speaker  
 In addition to those slain Holinshed gives  
 the name of "Sir Richard Radcliffe"  
 Sir William Brandon was Richmond's  
 standard-bearer See note on v iv 13  
 above

15 *become*] If this is not a misprint  
 of the early editions, it is a case of an  
 impersonal verb being attracted into  
 the number of its object

All this divided York and Lancaster,  
 Divided in then due division,  
 O, now let Richmond and Elizabeth,  
 The true succeders of each royal house, 30  
 By God's fair ordinance conjoin together !  
 And let their heirs, God, if Thy will be so,  
 Enrich the time to come with smooth-fac'd peace,  
 With smiling plenty and fair prosperous days !  
 Abate the edge of traitors, gracious Lord, 35  
 That would reduce these bloody days again  
 And make poor England weep in streams of blood !  
 Let them not live to taste this land's increase,  
 That would with treason wound this fair land's peace !  
 Now civil wounds are stopp'd, peace lives again 40  
 That she may live long here, God say amen !

[*Exeunt*

32 *their*] Qq 1, 2, 8, *thy* Qq 3 7, Ff 33 *smooth fac'd*] Ff, *smooth faste*  
 Qq 1-3, 5, *smooth fast* Q 4, *smooth fac't* Qq 6 8 41 *I re*] *heare* Qq 1 3,  
 5 7 *Exeunt*] Ff, omitted Qq

27 *this*] Johnson wished to change  
 to the relative "that" But it is the  
 objects divided, and not the causes of  
 division, which can be conjoined to  
 gether

35 *Abate*] blunt, depress, lower  
 Aldis Wright quotes 2 *Henry IV* 1 1

117, where the metaphor is very com-  
 plete The more usual word is "re-  
 bate" See *Measure for Measure*, 1 iv  
 60, Iodge and Greene, *Looking-Glass*  
*for London* (Dyce, 117) "Could not  
 rebate the strength that Rasni  
 brought"

## APPENDIX I

I iv 257-68 Ff admit six lines which are not in Qq, five of which (or, rather, four and a half) are inserted between Clarence's appeal in line 256, "Relent, and save your souls," and the first murderer's repetition of the word "Relent" (1) It is quite obvious that the force of the repetition, and of Clarence's subsequent comments upon it, is thus destroyed (2) The reading

Would not intreat for life, as you would begge  
Were you in my distresse

is awkward, as it makes Clarence say over again what he already has said In his extremity, however, he might be excused for repeating himself, as Queen Elizabeth already has been excused for her grammar, I iii 62-9 above The advantage of Ff reading is that Clarence, attempting to work on the feelings of both murderers, is repulsed by the first, and then turns to the second for compassion, with such effect that, when the fatal blow is about to descend, the second murderer warns the victim The reading adopted in the text has these drawbacks (1) it places Clarence's appeal to both murderers after the first murderer's refusal to relent, (2) it pieces together the two appeals, and (3) separates the words "as you would beg distress" in a way for which there is no warrant in the original text On the other hand, (1) the refusal of the first murderer is not absolute, and Clarence might still attempt to soften him, (2) the appeal, producing no effect upon him, might be broken off, and a special appeal be begun to the second murderer (3) brings us to the root of the whole matter We assume that the editor of F I used a copy of Q, probably Q 6, that he checked it by comparison with a MS of the play, that he noted down in the margin or between the lines of the printed book the variations which he preferred from the MS, and that, having done so, he sent his corrected copy of Q to the printer In the present case, he would have crowded his margin with a number of lines which are not in Qq, and it is easy to see that

the printer would have found some difficulty in gathering the method of their arrangement and insertion. He would have taken the course which seemed to him most probable, and, as the editor probably never saw a printer's proof of the text, the arrangement retained in Ff is, on this hypothesis, that of the printer. If this does not actually vindicate Tyrwhitt's conjecture, it at any rate vindicates his right to make it, and the sense, as it stands, is excellent. In addition to the arrangements mentioned in the collation, we may notice that Theobald followed Ff, proposing the emendation "Ah! you would beg," which was accepted by Warburton and Johnson. Johnson, however, wished to transfer "Which of you       distress" to the end of the passage. After the words "what beggar pities not?" one of the murderers should repeat "A begging prince!", and then Clarence should amplify his illustration with the new lines. "Upon which provocation," adds Johnson, "the villain naturally strikes him." The provocation seems very slight. Spedding agrees with Johnson as to the place of the lines, but observes that the murderer's cry, "A begging prince!" is not wanted, and would read the end of the new lines thus: "Would not entreat for life? As you would beg. Were you in my distress—— 2 Look behind," etc. Collier eked out the imperfect line from his MS thus: "Would not entreat for life? As you would beg, Were you in my distress, so pity me."

## APPENDIX II

II 1 66-68 Two difficulties are involved (1) The word "all" in line 67, apparently referring to two people only, so that we should expect "both", (2) the omission of the extra line inserted in Ff With regard to (1), a judicious re-arrangement of stops surmounts the difficulty thus

Of you, Lord Rivers and Lord Grey, of you  
That all without desert have frown'd on me,  
Dukes, earls, lords, gentlemen, indeed of all

Spedding proposed to read line 66 in Ff thus "Of you [*to Grey*] and you, Lord Rivers,—and of Dorset, That all," etc Pickersgill took "all" as an adverb, and "all without desert" as meaning "altogether without desert" cf II iv 48 If "all" be taken in this sense, the flatness of its repetition at the end of line 68 is somewhat lessened (2) Spedding was ready to accept the line, "Of you Lord Woodvill, and Lord Scales of you" as Shakespeare's, but without any cogent reason apart from its appearance in Ff Pickersgill thought that it was original, but was omitted in Qq, because it repeated the form of line 66, so that the editor of F 1 in restoring it, felt it necessary to change the form in the latter case Malone, however, long ago pointed out that there was no such person as Lord Woodville if the title refers to anybody, it can refer only to Rivers Rivers also, as Malone might have added, was the only person who could have been addressed as Lord Scales, since this actually was his style, from the time of his marriage with Elizabeth, daughter and heiress of the seventh Lord Scales, and Baroness Scales and Neucelles in her own right, until he succeeded to his father's earldom in 1469 If we accept the line, then, we have to imagine Gloucester begging the pardon of a man whom he already has addressed by his proper title, not only under a second style, but also under a third which does not belong to him This may be in keeping with Richard's usual irony, but, on this occasion, if he had used his opportunity to taunt his enemy so obviously with his many

great preferments, he could hardly have achieved his object of lulling his suspicions and effecting, as he did, an apparent reconciliation. This Shakespeare must have seen. It is not impossible that he made a mistake about the titles "Lord Grey" in Qq is, of course, an inaccuracy. But it is difficult to think that the line, whose point, if it has any, must defeat the intention of Gloucester's speech, can have appeared in Shakespeare's original MS—at any rate, in such a form that the editor of F I, if he had access to that MS, would have been able to reproduce it correctly. The position of the line is awkward, whether we take it as it stands, or assume that the printer has transposed it with the line before. Its meaning and point are doubtful and unsatisfactory. My own conclusion is that the editor of F I found, in the margin of the MS which he used, some notes intended as the beginning of an alteration of line 66, that the words "Woodville" and "Scales" were among them, and that, wishing to preserve as much of Shakespeare's text as could be recovered, he assumed that a line had been dropped and so worked in a new line composed of these fragments. The difficulty of "all" was thus settled, but the printer, working with the interlined copy of Q, made a mistake as to the order of the lines, and so perpetuated the state of things which the new line was intended to remove.

## APPENDIX III

### READINGS OF THE FOLIO IN ACT II SCENE IV

THE stage-direction at the opening of II iv and the first three lines of the scene are of high importance with respect to the methods adopted by the editor of F 1

(a) Ff read "Enter Arch-bishop" Qq read "Enter Cardinall" In III 1 Qq again read "Enter Cardinall" Ff read "Enter Loid Cardinall" The impression which these passages leave is that the archbishop, introduced by Ff in II iv was not a cardinal, but a distinct person from the Cardinal of III 1 and Qq In III 1 it is unquestionable that the prelate employed to persuade Elizabeth to give up the Duke of York was Thomas Bouchier, Cardinal of San Ciriaco and Archbishop of Canterbury But the prelate who, as in this scene, delivered up the great seal to the queen-dowager, was Thomas Rotherham, Archbishop of York, and not a cardinal He fell into disgrace with Richard on account of his conduct about the seal The fact that he and Bouchier bore the same Christian name caused some confusion among the historians More, by an oversight, made "the archbishop of Yorke" the prelate who advised Elizabeth, as in III 1, to give up the Duke of York, and speaks of him as "our reuerend father here present, the lord cardinall" Halle saw the error, and substituted "Cauntorburye" and "the reuerend father my lord Cardinall archebishop of Cauntorbury," in the places mentioned above However, Holinshed followed More's account It is clear that, in the present passage, either Shakespeare himself, or the editor of F 1, intended the Archbishop and the Cardinal to be, as they were, different persons Probably Shakespeare is responsible for this Scarcity of actors may have led to the union of the two parts, which thus may have passed into Qq as one The editor of F 1 probably restored them from his MS copy of the play

(b) The opposed readings are —

Qq *Car* Last night I heare they lay at Northampton  
 At Stonistratford will they be to night,  
 To morrow or next day, they will be here

Ff *Arch* Last night I heard they lay at Stony Stratford,  
 And at Northampton they do rest to night  
 To morrow, or next day they will be heere

Ff reading, while improving the defective metre, is generally supposed to be in harmony with history. Edward V, after sleeping a night at Stony Stratford, was actually taken back by Gloucester to Northampton. If we can satisfy ourselves that Ff reading is (1) a distinct metrical improvement, (2) intentionally consonant with the true details of time and place in the historical account of the affair, and (3) the original reading of the passage, it should no doubt be adopted in preference to Qq.

(1) The metrical improvement is obvious. If we lay stress on the first syllable of "Northampton," it is just possible to make Qq reading scan. We still speak of Berkhamstead, Wenhaston, where the second syllable might seem to demand the chief accent. But I can find no instance in Shakespeare's time in which the accent of Northampton is thrown so far back. Pope read the passage, "I heard they lay the last night at Northampton", Capell, "Last night, I hear, they rested at Northampton". Reed followed Ff, and Steevens, recognising the historical difficulty, wrote, "Where sense cannot claim a preference, a casting vote may be safely given in favour of sound".

(2) The historical facts of Edward V's journey to London are as follows. On his way from Ludlow, he passed through Northampton, and went on with his train to Stony Stratford. Gairdner (p. 49) says that Rivers and Lord Richard Grey rode back to Northampton to salute Gloucester, who was expected there the same day (April 29). More's statement is that Rivers stayed behind, perhaps for the above reason, and probably because the whole train could not have been accommodated at Stony Stratford. Gloucester, having joined forces with Buckingham, as he came south from York, arrived at Northampton soon after the king had left. More's account is that they were very friendly with Rivers, but, after he was gone to bed, they held a long council with some of their most privy friends. They got hold of the keys of the inn, picketed the road to Stony Stratford, and anticipated Rivers' household in getting to horse, explaining that they were anxious to be the first to greet the king that day. When Rivers in person asked for an explanation of their movements, they accused him of

wishing to estrange them from the king and compass their downfall, and, without more ado, put him in ward. When they reached Stony Stratford, the king was about to depart. He received them graciously and without suspicion, but, in his presence, they picked a quarrel with Grey and cast reflections on his absent brother Doiset, accusing them of conspiracy with Rivers to rule the king and realm. In spite of Edward's readiness to uphold the honesty of his relations, the dukes there and then arrested Grey, Sir Thomas Vaughan, and Sir Richard Hawte, and took the whole party back to Northampton, in order to bring the prisoners together and take further counsel. They dined at Northampton, where Gloucester behaved encouragingly. But, before he set out again for London, he either directed or provided for the despatch of the prisoners to various strongholds in the north of England.

It does not appear that the king, with his new guardian, stopped another night at Northampton. The arrest of the lords took place on 30th April. It was on 4th May that Gloucester and the king arrived in London, which is sixty-six miles from Northampton.

In London the news became common property about midnight of 30th April. The tidings were announced to Archbishop Rotherham by a messenger from the Lord Chamberlain Hastings. He immediately went to the queen, whom he found preparing to go into sanctuary, and committed the great seal to her charge. When he returned to York House in the dawn of 1st May, he "might in his chamber window see all the Thames full of boats of the Duke of Gloucester's servants, watching that no man should go to sanctuary, nor none could pass unsearched." In the course of the day, the Archbishop, fearing that he had acted precipitately, sent to the sanctuary at Westminster for the great seal, and so recovered it. The day was one of disquiet. Hastings did his best to quiet the rising tumult, and the common people were satisfied by the arrival of some of Gloucester's servants with the baggage of the arrested lords, in which arms and armour were included. The duke's men explained, "Lo, here be the barrels of harnesses that these traitors had privily conveyed in their carriage to destroy the noble lordes withall." The intelligence of the mob could draw no other inference from this palpable testimony.

(3) We must not expect Shakespeare, of course, to be in complete accordance with the details of history. The interview in II. iv. clearly is derived from that which took place early on 1st May between Rotherham and the queen. If the chroniclers' accounts are correct, (1) Rotherham knew all before he

went to the queen, (2) a messenger from Hastings had reached him at York House, (3) the queen had received the news at least as soon, and was preparing to go to Westminster when Rotherham arrived. But in Shakespeare, (1) Rotherham knows nothing all he can do is to calculate the point on the road which the party has reached, (2) the news arrives during the interview, and (3) the queen thereupon decides to go to sanctuary, and takes the great seal with her.

Shakespeare, therefore, makes it impossible for Rotherham to know of any change of route on the king's journey. Qq reading represents exactly the natural calculations of a man who knew the ordinary halting-places on the road from the north, and had no reason to suppose that they had been changed in this case. So far as Rotherham knew, the coronation was to take place on 4th May. The king would therefore arrive in London on 2nd May or 3rd May. On 29th April he would naturally spend the night at Northampton. What actually had happened was that he had passed through Northampton without stopping, probably because Rivers wished to keep ahead of Gloucester. Of this movement, as of its sequel, Rotherham was unaware. Ff, on the other hand, assume that Rotherham knew of the unusual change of route, but without feeling any curiosity about it, or awaking any interest in his hearers. They assume that, while aware of the fact, he had no idea of the division of the party which made Rivers' arrest an easy matter, or of the junction of the dukes with the king. In short, he says, as if it were the most natural thing in the world, that the party has stopped a night at one place, and then has gone thirteen miles back to spend a night at another, which it had passed through the day before. Ff reading is thus dramatically inaccurate, even if its accuracy as to the king's real movements be allowed.

We need not suppose, of course, that Shakespeare troubled himself about the actual hour of the scene as it took place in history. He simply compressed into one scene a sequence of necessary events, giving them their true dramatic relief. An imaginary meeting between the queen and Rotherham is made the occasion for the discovery of Gloucester's action. Before the messenger arrives with his startling news, Rotherham is ignorant that anything has happened. It is utterly impossible, therefore, unless we assume a slip of the tongue, that he can put Stony Stratford before Northampton.

Shakespeare may have written the passage in Ff. That, in this instance, he made a careless comparison of his authorities with the dramatic exigencies of the passage, is not unlikely.

That the editor of F 1 found the more metrical reading in the MS which he used is highly probable. But Qq already had altered it, at the expense of regular metre, it is true, but with advantage to the truth of drama. The variation in Qq was probably used on the stage, and, whether it was made by Shakespeare himself or by the actors, it is the only reading which has any consistency with the facts of the scene.

My conclusion, then, is that, while Ff have a metrical advantage over Qq, and their reading may have been originally written by Shakespeare, it does not represent a reading to which Shakespeare could or would have adhered consistently. And this because it is at variance with the probabilities of the drama, and is not quite free in itself from historical error.

I may add a summary of previous editors' conclusions. Malone very justly says, "By neither reading can the truth of history be preserved, and therefore we may be sure that Shakespeare did not mean in this instance to adhere to it." At the opposite pole is Grant White's unqualified praise of Ff reading: it has, he says, "on its side authority, rhythm, and—according to the chronicles which Shakespeare followed—historical truth." Equally short-sighted is Delius' defence of Ff as the result of Shakespeare's work with "the authorities open before him." On his theory, Qq would introduce a piratical emendation. The Cambridge editors adopt Qq reading, assuming the supposed coincidence between Ff and history to be accidental, but discovering an inconsistency between lines 1, 2 and line 3. Spedding refuted the latter notion, but upheld Ff on the usual historical assumption, estimating Qq reading as a correction "by some one whose topographical knowledge was superior to his historical." Pickersgill's view is closely allied, though with a slight difference in detail, to the view which I have taken.

## APPENDIX IV

### ON THE READINGS AT III. IV. 80 AND III. V. 12-21

(1) AT III. iv. 80 Qq read "some see it done" at the end of a line. Ff introduce a new line "*Louell and Ratcliffe, looke that it be done*"

(2) In III. v. 12-21 I have adopted Ff reading substantially. For the variations in Qq, see collation *ad loc.* The difficulty which Qq introduce is in their stage directions, corresponding to that after line 21, "Enter Catesby with Hastings' head". The conspirators, according to Theobald, are standing on the wall of the Tower, and Catesby is told to "overlook" the walls, i.e. to look down and see whether any one is coming. Only four lines later, Gloucester calms Buckingham's pretended agitation at the sound of a drum, with the words "O, O, be quiet, it is Catesby", and Catesby thereupon enters with Hastings' head. The supposition on which this entry of Catesby, inconsistent even with dramatic probability, can be defended, is that Catesby, overlooking the walls and seeing Hastings' executioners approaching, hastens from the scene, receives the head from them, and reappears bearing it. Even so, the interval is very short indeed between his disappearance and return.

Ff make Catesby introduce the mayor, and remain on the scene. Buckingham hears the drum, Gloucester tells Catesby to overlook the walls, and Ratcliff and Lovel, the executioners deputed in III. iv. 80, enter with the head of Hastings.

The probable explanation of the difference lies in the circumstance that Qq require only one actor on the stage to fill the parts which Ff allot to three. A scarcity of actors very conceivably may have led to a grouping of the parts in the stage version. And here is one of many signs that the original of the Qq text of the play is to be found in such a version and re-arrangement for stage purposes of Shakespeare's text.

However, by the introduction of Ratcliff, Ff reading involves a fresh difficulty. Following the chroniclers, it puts Ratcliff (III. iii.) in charge of the execution of the lords at

Pontefract, on the same day that Hastings suffers in London (III iv 49, 50, etc.) Ratcliff is thus in two widely distant places at once, Pontefract being 179 miles by road from London. The discrepancy would not be noticed by a casual spectator of the play, who would see each scene complete in itself, and would not remember details of place and time. But we cannot imagine Shakespeare making the mistake wilfully. If he did it involuntarily, he would have found it out on revising the play.

Theobald retained Catesby, as Qq had laid down the part, in III v. In III iv he read "Lovel and Catesby, look that it be done." This is in accordance with the stage-directions of Qq, which assign III iv 96, 97 to Catesby and III iv 104 to Lovel. But in Ff, III iv 96, 97 are given to Ratcliff.

To alter Ff reading substantially would be, as the Cambridge editors point out, to take liberties with the text. It is a great improvement on Qq in the point of metre and rhythm. Thus, in the absence of any indication of a satisfactory alternative, Ratcliff must be kept in both passages. It is noticeable that, in III iv, he speaks only two lines, which might well be given to Lovel, while, in III v, he says nothing, and is not included in Gloucester's instructions at the end of the scene. Both in Qq and Ff, Lovel alone is necessary to Hastings' execution. The chroniclers make no specific mention of the ministers employed to carry out this sentence. It is not likely that Catesby would have taken an active part in it. He had been Hastings' trusted servant, and, in a play so rhetorical as this, he hardly would have been allowed to die without some word of reproach to the traitor who bids him make haste that the duke may have his dinner.

The only possible conclusion seems to be that, at III iv 80, Shakespeare wrote "Ratcliffe" in a moment of forgetfulness, and continued the error in III v, that, on the stage, the mistake in III iv was recognised, and, in III v, the parts were cut down from motives of economy, that Qq reproduced his alteration, and that Ff, correcting the misplacement of the lines and the rough prose of Qq, returned, in this case also, to the earlier reading, in spite of its drawbacks.